
AL-BAHER
2024
CONNECT
PLUS
هدية مجانية
نسخة تجريبية للمدرسين
غير مخصصة للبيع
4th
Primary
Second Term
Parents' Guide
بتصريح و تحت إشراف
MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TECHNICAL EDUCATION
وزارة التربية والتعليم والتعليم الفني

# Contents

# SCOPE AND SEQUENCE

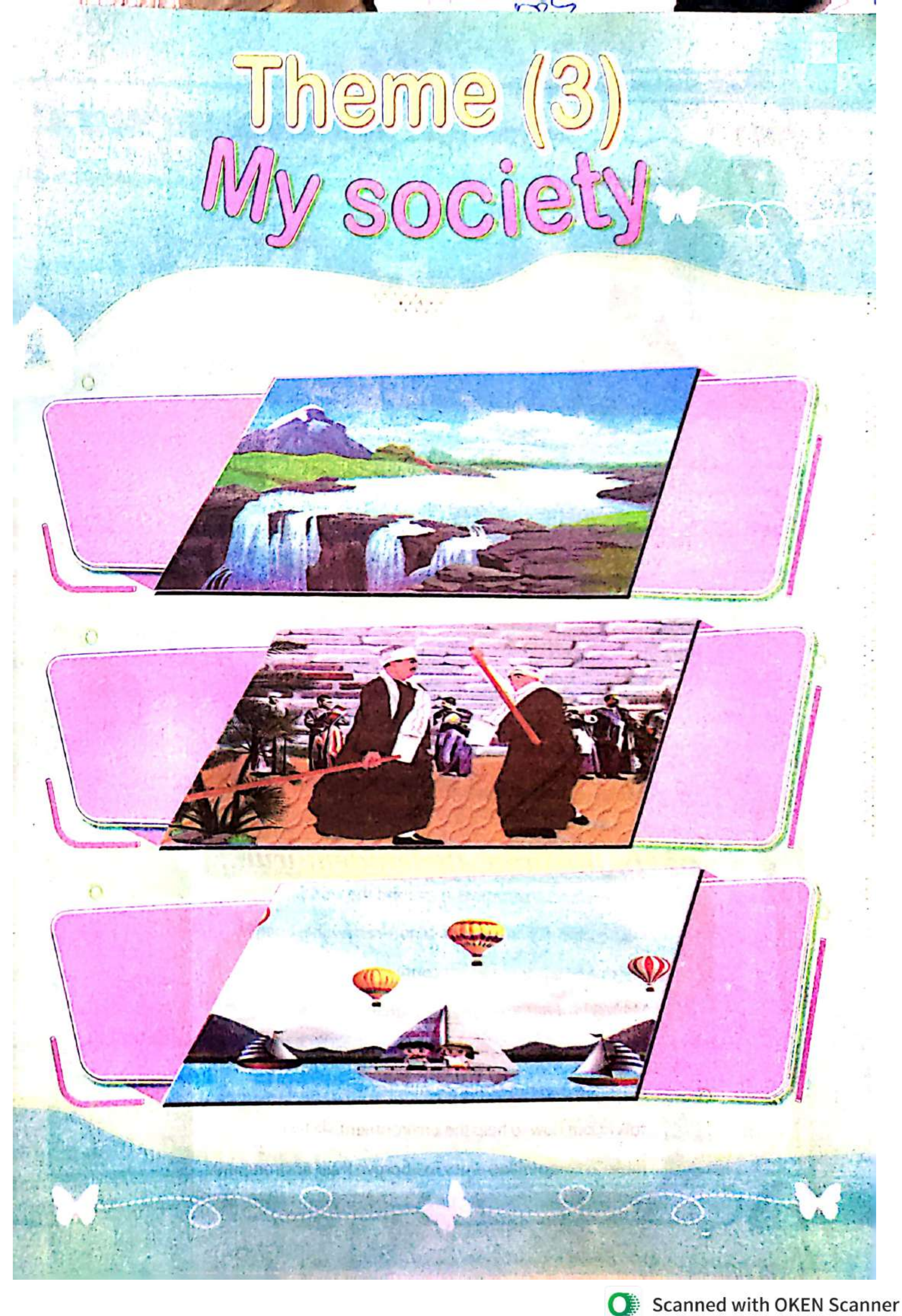
## Theme (3) My society

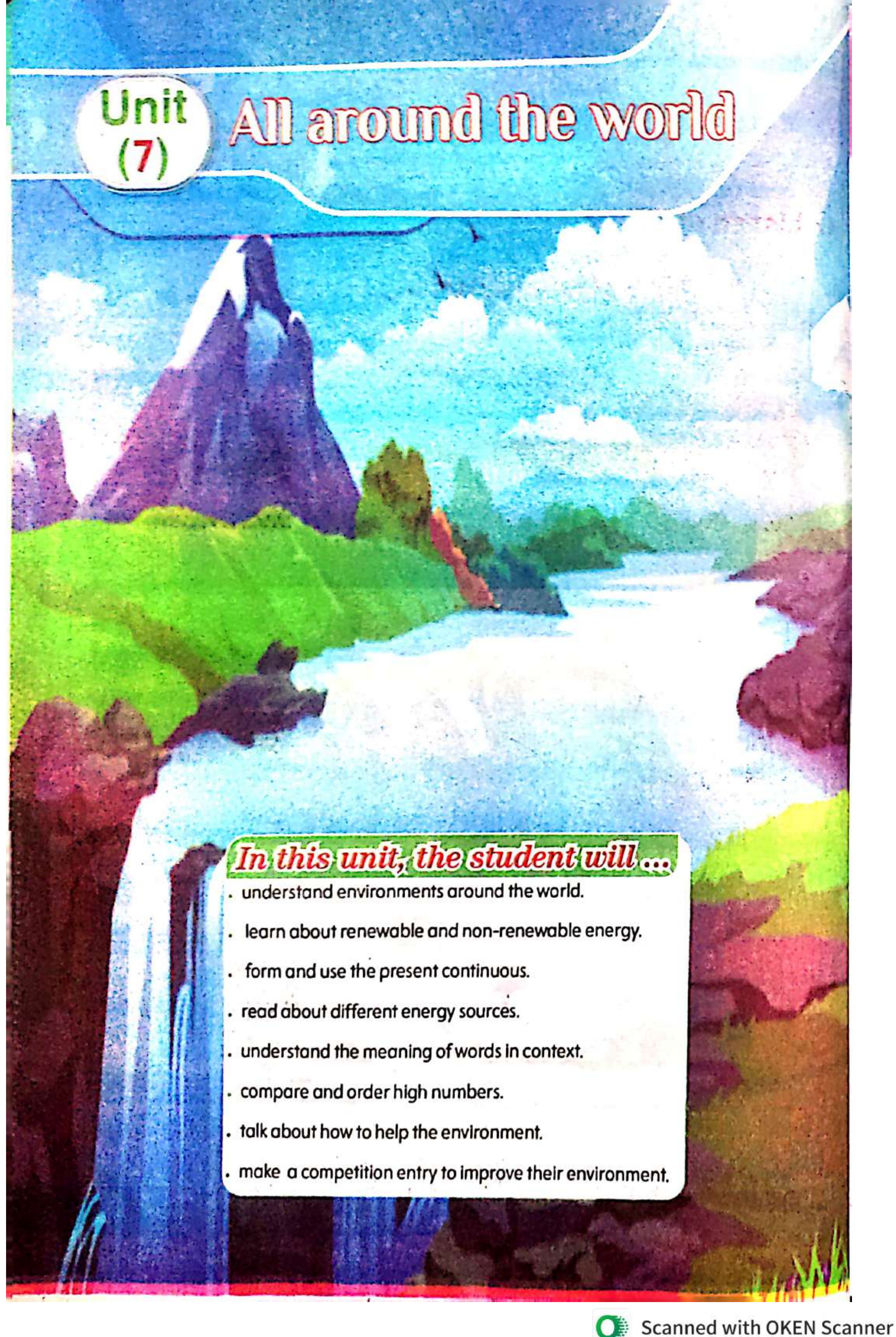
| | Unit 7<br>All around the world | Unit 8<br>Customs and traditions | Unit 9<br>Our culture |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Vocabulary** | **Environments around the world:** coastal, desert, mountainous, polar, rainforest, rural, urban<br>**A clean world:** air pollution, carbon dioxide, climate change, emissions, fuel, water pollution<br>**Renewable and non-renewable energy:** generate, geothermal energy, hydroelectricity, kilowatt, solar energy, store, tidal energy, tide, waterwheels, wind turbines | **Festivals and celebrations:** celebration, celebrate, charity, creation, fairgrounds, fast, feast, sacrifice, observe, prayer, sunset, sunrise<br>**Traditional food:** beans, garlic, herbs, pastry, olive oil, spices, vinegar<br>**Traditional clothes:** buttons, galabeya, hizam, kaftan, linen, loose, sandals, sleeves, striped<br>Traditional hospitality: guest, host, generous, feast<br>**Fables and folklore:** character, conflict, plot, resolution, secret, setting | Cultural heritage: agriculture, ancient Egypt, archaeologist, calendar, civilization, cruise, identity, irrigation monument, site, temple<br>Cultural artifacts.<br>board game, bury, carve, clay, counter, engraving, mask, perfume, pottery, tool, vase<br>Drawing bar charts; bar chart, horizontal, vertical |
| **Language** | - Today we're talking about pollution.<br>- What are we doing to stop it?<br>- Scientists are finding new ways to travel and to use fuels.<br>- Context as clue to the meaning of a new word or phrase | We always eat it with bread.<br>It never has any meat in it.<br>We often eat hawowshi with salad.<br>I can easily show you, too!<br>Grandma cooked very well.<br>Today I'm talking to Dr Samir.<br>What are they wearing now? | Akil and Ottah were happy.<br>Sara saw a senet game.<br>The children were playing a game.<br>The archaeologist was digging when<br>She found an old box.<br>Sequencers: first, then, next, finally |
| **Reading** | **Descriptions of environments,** a scientific report about **energy sources: a text about how our environment allows different energy sources** | **A text about festivals:** a story about traditional recipes; a text about cultural traditions in Egypt | A text about heritage:; a story about an ancient game; fact files about museum artifacts |
| **Writing** | A report about hydroelectricity at the High Dam | A tourist brochures about your region giving facts and opinions | interesting facts about ancient artifacts; a report about an ' archaeological site |
| **Speaking** | Talking about changes we can make to help the planet | Describing what people are wearing | Talking about famous sites in Egypt and what you can see there |
| **Listening** | A podcast about ways to reduce pollution: a conversation about how to help the environment | A radio program about what people wore in the past; a description of the Abu Simbel Sun Festival | A description of traditional agriculture in Egypt; a text about tourism and archaeology in Egypt |
| **Life skills** | **Problem solving, accountability:** the importance of helping the environment | **Collaboration: giving reasons for opinions** | Critical thinking: understanding the importance of cultural heritage |
| **Values** | **Appreciation of science**<br>**Respect for the environment** | **Participation** | **Appreciation of science** |
| **Issues and challenges** | **Citizenship**<br>**Environmental responsibility** | **Citizenship** | **Citizenship** |
| **Integrated cross curriculum topics** | **Math:** comparing and ordering high numbers | **Literature:** fables and folklore | **Math:** bar charts |
| **Review 1** | | | |
| **Non-fiction reader: Shipwrecks** | | | |

# Theme (4) I'm a responsible person

| | Unit 10<br>Connecting the world | Unit 11<br>On the road! | Unit 12<br>A global challenge |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Vocabulary** | **Means of communication:** blog, instant message, electronic device, email, presentation, social media account, social media platform, vlog, website<br>**Technology:** electric car, scrubber, smog-free tower | **Transportation:** airplane, cab, canal, canoe, destination, ferry, mule, on foot, on time, rocket, steam train, streetcar, subway, traffic, traffic lights, traffic jam, trip, wagon, walking, waterway.<br>**A cleaner urban environment:** bike, path, green spaces, garbage, recycle, recycling bins, reduce, resident, reuse, roof, trash, volunteer, water vapor<br>Comparative and superlative adjectives | **Geology and weathering:** acid rain, atmosphere, deforestation, drought, erosion, flood, glacier, landslide, tsunami, water shortage<br>**Parts of a newspaper:** body, caption, headline, lead-in<br>**International agreements:** conference, pact, treaty<br>**Food production:** beef, diversity, food miles, food waste, lentils, chickpeas, wheat, burger |
| **Language** | You should check your work.<br>You shouldn't forget punctuation.<br>**Punctuation marks:** periods, commas and question marks<br>I don't have any free time today, but I am free this weekend.<br>She doesn't like reading or writing.<br>I like poetry and fiction. | The coast is greener than the desert.<br>The Nile is the longest river in the world.<br>Kareema is unhappy.<br>I dislike playing tennis, but I like football. | The drought will cause a water shortage. We won't burn fossil fuels.<br>Will you recycle these newspapers later?<br>Tarek will buy an electric car if he saves enough money.<br>If he buys an electric car, Tarek will help the environment.<br>My dad was at a conference last week so he is really tired.<br>The leaders went to a conference, but they didn't sign a treaty. |
| **Reading** | A story about someone using social media: a letter to an editor | An informative text about city transportation; a text about the history of transportation, a plan for an ideal city | A text about an eco-friendly house,a newspaper report about how nations are working together to slow climate change |
| **Writing** | A latter to the editor of a school newspaper | Writing expressions to give an opinion,planning an ideal city | Writing a newspaper report about the causes of climate change and how people are working together to prevent it, planning and shopping for a plant based meal |
| **Speaking** | Giving advice about how to write a story; suggesting solutions to the problems of pollution, giving a presentation about how technology can help air pollution, planning a new social media platform for kids | Discussing and describing transportation where you live and in your country: the advantages and disadvantages to types of transportation; performing a radio show about transportation | Talking about climate changes: identifying facts and opinions; role-playing hew to shop responsibly; presenting a plan for a plant-based meal |
| **Listening** | A talk about the reliability of social media; a story about publishing your own story; a podcast about different technological solutions to problems in Egypt | A conversation about a visit to a science museum: a radio show about different types of transportation around the world | A text about geology, erosion and weathering, a conversation about the connection between global warming and food |
| **Life skills** | **Verbal and non-verbal Communication:** identifying forms of communication | **Decision making:** choosing greener forms of transport | Productivity: the effects of food production |
| **Values** | **Honesty, integrity** | **Independence** | **Respect the environment** |
| **Issues and challenges** | **Globalisation** | **Globalisation** | **Globalisation** |
| **Integrated cross curriculum topics** | **ICT:** keyboard skills | **Social studies:** traffic signs and rules | Science: Earth's geologic processes |
| **Review 2** | | | |

**Non-fiction reader:** Amir takes action


Theme (3)
My society



# Unit (7) All around the world

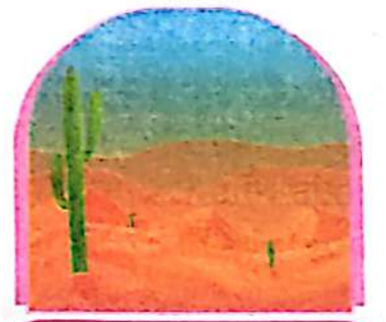
## *In this unit, the student will ...*

- understand environments around the world.
- learn about renewable and non-renewable energy.
- form and use the present continuous.
- read about different energy sources.
- understand the meaning of words in context.
- compare and order high numbers.
- talk about how to help the environment.
- make a competition entry to improve their environment.

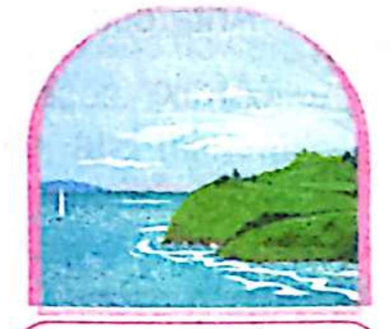



**Listen and repeat.**

## Environments البيئات



desert
بيئة صحراوية



coastal
بيئة ساحلية



mountainous
بيئة جبلية



urban
بيئة (مدنية / حضرية)



polar
بيئة قطبية



rainforest
بيئة استوائية



rural
بيئة ريفية



rocky
بيئة صخرية

Help your child identify different environments.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على البيئات المختلفة.

## Extra Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| reptiles | زواحف | The Nile Delta | دلتا النيل |
| swamps | مستنقعات | sparsely populated | قليلة السكان |
| dry | جاف | densely populated | مكتظة بالسكان |
| continent | قارة | metropolitan | عاصمي (متعلق بالعاصمة) |
| traffic | المرور | Antarctic | منطقة القطب الجنوبي |
| mammals | ثدييات | Arctic | منطقة القطب الشمالي |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

**Regular verbs** أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| breathe | يتنفس | breathed |
| survive | ينجو / يعيش | survived |
| cover | يغطي | covered |
| rain | تمطر | rained |

**Irregular verbs** أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| find | يجد | found |
| get | يحصل على | got |
| make | يصنع | made |
| have | يملك / لديه | had |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| lots of | كثير من | have to | يجب أن |
| special ways | طرق خاصة | travel around | يسافر حول |
| survive without | يتعايش بدون | at the top of | على قمة |
| on every continent | في كل قارة | different kinds of | أنواع مختلفة من |

### Did you know ?

The Amazon covers 40% of South America and is the world's largest rainforest. The second largest is the Congo in Africa.



تغطي غابة الأمازون 40% من مساحة أمريكا الجنوبية، وهي أكبر غابة مطيرة في العالم. ثاني أكبر دولة هي الكونغو في أفريقيا.



Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Did you know ?

It is harder to get enough oxygen when you breathe at the top of a high mountain. If you aren't used to being in the mountains, it can make you sick!



من الصعب الحصول على ما يكفي من الأكسجين عندما تتنفس على قمة جبل عالٍ. أذا لم تكن معتادًا على التواجد في الجبال، فقد يجعلك ذلك تشعر بالتعب!

## Read, then answer the questions.

### ① rainforest

There are lots of trees, plants and flowers here. Lots of animals live in these places. For example, there are insects, birds, reptiles, and mammals. It often rains and the temperature is hot.



يوجد الكثير من الأشجار والنباتات والزهور بها. يعيش الكثير من الحيوانات في هذه الأماكن. على سبيل المثال، هناك حشرات وطيور وزواحف وثدييات. غالبًا ما تمطر وتكون درجة الحرارة عالية هناك.

### ② coastal

This environment is where the land is next to the sea. In some places there are beaches with sand, and sometimes there are swamps and forests. The Nile Delta is an example, and so is the Red Sea.



هذه البيئة هي المكان الذى تكون فيه الأرض بجوار البحر. في بعض الأماكن توجد شواطئ ذات رمال وأحيانًا توجد مستنقعات وغابات. دلتا النيل مثال على ذلك وكذلك البحر الأحمر.

### ③ desert

It is very dry in this environment. The animals and plants that live here have to find clever ways to survive without a lot of water. You can find these environments on every continent, and they can be hot or cold.



الطقس جاف جدًا في هذه البيئة. يجب على الحيوانات والنباتات التي تعيش فيها إيجاد طرق للبقاء على قيد الحياة دون الكثير من الماء. توجد هذه البيئات في كل قارة. ويمكن أن تكون حارة أو باردة.

### ④ rural

There aren't many houses or buildings here, so this place often has more animals and plants. Not many people live here, so it is sparsely populated.
It can have lots of different kinds of weather, but it's a quiet place to live.



لا يوجد العديد من المنازل والمباني بها. لذلك غالبًا ما تحتوي هذه البيئة على المزيد من الحيوانات والنباتات. لا يعيش الكثير من الناس فيها لذلك فهي قليلة السكان. يمكن أن يكون بها الكثير من حالات الطقس المختلفة. لكنها مكان هادئ للعيش فيه.

Help you child understand environments around the world.
ساعد طفلك أن يفهم البيئات المختلفة حول العالم.

### 5 polar



There are two of these environments in the world: The Arctic and the Antarctic. It is cold and windy here, with a lot of ice. Some animals have found ways to live here, but there aren't any trees or flowers.

هناك نوعان من هذه البيئات في العالم: القطب الشمالي والقطب الجنوبي. الجو بارد وعاصف في هذه البيئة، وبها الكثير من الجليد. تجد بعض الحيوانات طرقًا للعيش فيها ولا توجد أي أشجار أو أزهار.

### 6 urban



This is a metropolitan area which is densely populated. Most people in the world live in this kind of environment. There are lots of buildings, and there can be a lot of traffic, too.

هذه المنطقة حضرية وكثيفة السكان. يعيش معظم الناس في العالم في هذه البيئة. يوجد الكثير من المباني. ويمكن أن يكون هناك الكثير من حركة المرور أيضًا.

### 7 mountainous



It can be difficult for people to live and travel in this high environment. They are very beautiful places, but they can be cold, with lots of rain or snow, and the weather can change quickly. The animals and plants that live here have to find special ways to survive.

قد يكون من الصعب على الناس العيش والسفر في هذه البيئة المرتفعة. إنها أماكن جميلة جدًا، لكن يمكن أن تكون باردة، مع هطول الكثير من الأمطار أو الثلوج، ويمكن أن يتغير الطقس بسرعة. يتعين على الحيوانات والنباتات التي تعيش بها إيجاد طرق خاصة للبقاء على قيد الحياة.

**Read and write T (True) or F (False).**

1) There is always a beach in a costal environment. ( )
2) There are polar environments on every continent. ( )
3) An urban environment is a quiet place to live. ( )



Help you child understand environments around the world.
ساعد طفلك أن يفهم البيئات المختلفة حول العالم.

# Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and complete.

1. There are lots of ............... , plants and flowers in the rainforest.
2. Lots of ............................................ live in the rainforest.
3. It often ............................................ in the rainforest.
4. The ............................................ is hot there.

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

weather - plants - sparsely - rural

There aren't many houses or buildings in the 1)..................... environment so this place often has more animals and 2)................. . Not many people live there, so it is 3)................ populated. It can have lots of different kinds of 4)..............., but it's a quiet place to live.

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

The coastal environment is where the land is next to the sea. In some places there are beaches with sand, and sometimes there are swamps and forests. The Nile Delta is an example, and so is the Red Sea.

The desert is very dry. The animals and plants that live here have to find clever ways to survive without a lot of water. You can find these environments on every continent, and they can be hot or cold.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The desert environment is very ............................ .

   a) wet  b) rainy  c) snowy  d) dry

2. The Nile Delta is a ............................ environment.

   a) desert  b) coastal  c) urban  d) rural

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Mention two examples of the coastal environment? .....................
4. What is the weather like in the desert? .....................

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## 4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. is - a quiet - The - to - place - live - environment - rural - .

...........................................................................................

2. is - a beach - There - always - environment - a coastal - in - .

...........................................................................................

3. kind of - do - you - What - in - live - environment - ?

...........................................................................................

## 5 Choose the correct answer.

1. The .................................................... environment has little water.
   a) country b) desert c) coastal d) rural
2. The ...................... environment is noisy and has a lot of traffic.
   a) urban b) rural c) coastal d) polar
3. There are no trees or flowers in the ...................... environment.
   a) rural b) urban c) coastal d) polar
4. It's hard for people and animals to survive in a ...... environment.
   a) coastal b) mountainous c) urban d) rural
5. There are often more animals than people in a ........ environment.
   a) rural b) urban c) coastal d) polar

## 6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

**Rainforest environment**

Guiding words:

(Rainforest - rains - hot - insects and birds - temperature)

...........................................................................................

...........................................................................................

...........................................................................................

...........................................................................................



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.




# LANGUAGE

## Definitions

| | |
|---|---|
| climate change | when the weather and temperature change over a long period of time تغير المناخ |
| air pollution | when the air is dirty; this can make people or animals sick تلوث الهواء |
| water pollution | when water is dirty because of chemicals or plastic تلوث الماء |
| fuel | this is something we burn to make heat or power وقود |
| carbon dioxide | a gas in the atmosphere known as $CO_2$. It can be dangerous when there is too much in the air غاز ثاني أكسيد الكربون |
| emissions | these are made, for example by factories, cars and lorries, they can cause air pollution إنبعاثات |

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| forest fires (WB) | حرائق الغابات | recycled plastic | بلاستيك معاد تصنيعه |
| chemicals (WB) | مواد كيميائية | volcanic eruptions (WB) | ثوران بركاني |
| pollution | تلوث | podcast | إذاعة صوتية |
| atmosphere | الغلاف الجوي | factories | مصانع |
| dirty | ملوث / قذر | garbage | قمامة / مهملات |
| heat | حرارة | article | مقال |
| gas | غاز | amazing | رائع / مدهش |
| ocean | محيط | power | طاقة |

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.





## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة | | Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Present** | **Past** | **Present** | **Past** |
| talk يتكلم | talked | learn يتعلم | learnt / learned |
| try يحاول | tried | drive يقود | drove |
| appear يظهر | appeared | burn يحترق | burnt |
| use يستخدم | used | wear يرتدي | wore |
| pick up يلتقط | picked up | throw يرمي | threw |
| cause يسبب | caused | put يضع | put |
| wait ينتظر | waited | do يفعل | did |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | |
|---|---|
| because of بسبب | go into يذهب إلى الداخل |
| known as معروف بـ | in the air في الهواء |
| full of مليء بـ | to make heat لتوليد الحرارة |
| over a long period of time على مدى فترة طويلة من الزمن | |

### Look, listen and read.



**Woman 1 :** Hello, and welcome to our Clean World podcast! We live in an amazing world, but the things that people do can damage the environment. Today we're talking about pollution? What is it, and what are we doing to stop it?

أهلا ومرحبًا بكم في نشرتنا الصوتية عن "عالمنا النظيف"! نحن نعيش في عالم مذهل لكن الأشياء التي يفعلها الناس ممكن أن تدمر البيئة. سنتحدث اليوم عن التلوث. ماهو التلوث وماذا نفعل لإيقافه؟

**Woman 2 :** There are two main types of pollution - air pollution and water pollution. Air pollution is caused by the things that



Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

people do, such as driving cars and trucks, or making things in factories. When we burn fuels, it makes carbon dioxide emissions. Over a long time, this can lead to climate change, because there is too much carbon dioxide in the atmosphere. Things in the natural world, such forest fires, or volcanic eruptions, can also cause air pollution. Chemicals from factories or farms go into rivers or the sea to cause water pollution. There is also a problem with plastic pollution - there's a lot of plastic garbage in rivers and oceans, and this is very bad for the animals that live there.

هناك نوعان أساسين من التلوث؛ تلوث الهواء وتلوث الماء. يحدث تلوث الهواء بسبب الأشياء التي يفعلها الناس، مثل قيادة السيارات والشاحنات أو صناعة الأشياء في المصانع. عندما نحرق الوقود، يصدر انبعاثات ثاني اكسيد الكربون . وعلى المدى الطويل يمكن أن يؤدى هذا لتغير المناخ لأنه يوجد الكثير من ثاني اكسيد الكربون في الغلاف الجوي. الأشياء التي في العالم الطبيعي مثل حرائق الغابات أو الثورات البركانية يمكنها أيضًا أن تسبب تلوث الهواء . الكيماويات الصادرة من المصانع أو المزارع التي تصل إلى الأنهار أو البحر يمكنها أن تسبب تلوث المياه. هناك أيضًا مشكلة التلوث الناتج عن البلاستيك. فهناك الكثير من القمامة البلاستيكية في الأنهار والمحيطات وهذا ضار جدًا للحيوانات التي تعيش هناك.

**Woman 1 :** Today, we know more about pollution than we used to, and we know how important it is to reduce it. Scientists are finding new ways to travel and to use fuels. We can also change the things we do - for example, we can walk, cycle or use public transportation instead of using cars. We also need to think about how we can use less plastic. Lots of people are trying to make our world a cleaner place!

اليوم، اصبحنا نعرف عن التلوث أكثر مما كنا نعرفه من قبل، ونعلم مدى أهمية الحد منه. يجد العلماء طرقًا جديدة للسفر واستخدام الوقود. يمكننا أيضًا تغيير الأشياء التي نقوم بها - على سبيل المثال، يمكننا المشي او ركوب الدراجة أو استخدام وسائل النقل العام بدلاً من استخدام السيارات. نحتاج أيضًا إلى التفكير في كيفية استخدام كمية أقل من البلاستيك. يحاول الكثير من الناس جعل عالمنا مكانًا أنظف!







# Language

## The Present Continuous Tense

زمن المضارع المستمر

### Form:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| I | + | am | |
| He / She / It / A singular noun | + | is | + (v+ing) |
| We / You / They / A plural noun | + | are | |

- I'm walking to school.
- He is waiting for the bus.
- They're driving electric cars.

### Usage:

- To express an action that is happening now.

تستخدم للتعبير عن حدث يحدث الآن (لحظة الكلام).

### Spelling rules:

⇨ Verbs that end with (e), we omit (e) before adding (ing).

take → taking        drive → driving

⇨ Verbs that end with (one vowel + one consonant), we double the consonant before adding (ing).

swim → swimming        put → putting

### Keywords:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| now الآن | Listen! استمع! | at the moment في هذه اللحظة |
| Look! انظر! | today اليوم | at present في الوقت الحاضر |



Help your child identify and use the present continuous tense. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على و يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر.

## Negative:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| I | + am | | |
| He / She / It / A singular noun | + is | + not + (v+ing) | |
| They / We / You / A plural noun | + are | | |

- I am not using recycled bags.
- They aren't walking to school.
- He isn't watching a TV program.

## Yes / No question:

Is + (he / she / it / a singular noun) + (v+ing)...?

- Is he walking to school?

Yes, he is. No, he isn't.

Are + (they / we / you / a plural noun) + (v+ing)...?

- Are they watching a TV program?

Yes, they are. No, they aren't.

## Wh- question:

Q.W + is + (he / she / it / a singular noun) + (v+ing)...?

- What is he doing now?

He is driving an electric car.

Q.W + are + (they / we / you / a plural noun) + (v+ing)...?

- What are you doing?

I am walking to school.

Help your child identify and use the present continuous tense. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على و يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر.

## 1 Choose the correct answer.

1. Today, we're ........................ about pollution.
   a) talk   b) talks   c) talking   d) talked
2. What ........................ doing to stop pollution?
   a) are we   b) we are   c) have we   d) can we
3. I am ........................ to school now.
   a) walk   b) walked   c) walking   d) walks
4. Now, he ........................ for the bus.
   a) wait   b) waited   c) is waiting   d) waits
5. What is he ........................ now?
   a) does   b) do   c) did   d) doing

## 2 Look and write a sentence in the present continuous.



Hana / watch / a TV program

........................



I / walk / to school

........................



Tarek / listen to / a podcast

........................



They / wear / gloves

........................



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

# Activities

## 1 | Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

putting - dirty - picking - wearing

These people are helping to stop pollution. They are on a beach and they are 1).......................... up garbage. The garbage can be 2).............................. ,so they are 3)...................... gloves. They are 4)......................... the plastic in bags, so it doesn't go into the sea.

## 2 | Choose the correct answer.

1. Scientists ...................................... new ways to travel and to use fuels.
   a) is finding  b) are finding  c) finding  d) finds
2. They are .......................................... to make our world a cleaner place.
   a) tries  b) try  c) tried  d) trying
3. I ............................................................................ using recycled plastic.
   a) am  b) is  c) are  d) were
4. Today, we ...................................................... about climate change.
   a) learned  b) learn  c) learning  d) are learning
5. Are they ........................................................................................ electric cars?
   a) drive  b) drives  c) driving  d) drove
6. Look! Hana ....................................................................................... a TV program.
   a) watch  b) is watching  c) watching  d) watched
7. What are you ....................................................................................... ?
   a) reads  b) reading  c) read  d) to read
8. She is .............................................................................................. gloves.
   a) wear  b) wears  c) wearing  d) wore

........................................ picking up garbage?

a) You are b) Are you c) He is d) She is

10 They aren't ........................................ plastic in bags.

a) puts b) putting c) put d) to put

11 They ........................................ picking up the garbage.

a) isn't b) aren't c) don't d) doesn't

12 Now, I ........................................ in an electric car.

a) travel b) traveled c) am traveling d) travels

13 Are you ........................................ an article about climate change?

a) read b) reads c) reading d) to read

14 We're ........................................ the beach because it is full of plastic

a) cleans b) cleaned c) clean d) cleaning

15 Scientists are ........................................ new forms of renewable energy

a) discover b) discovering c) discovered d) discovers

## 3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 are - What - discussing - they - ?

........................................................................................

2 about - We - pollution - talking - are - .

........................................................................................

3 school - walking - I - to - am - .

........................................................................................

4 about - learning - They - climate change - are - .

........................................................................................

5 is - What - stop - he - doing - pollution - to - ?

........................................................................................

## 4 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

**Pollution**

Guiding words:

(air pollution - carbon dioxide - dirty - water pollution - chemicals)



Help your child deal with such questions.

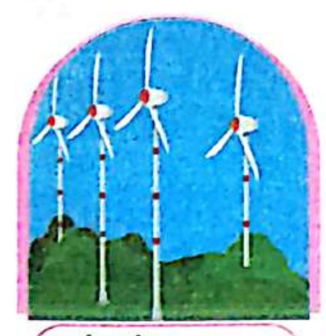
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.




# ENERGY AROUND US

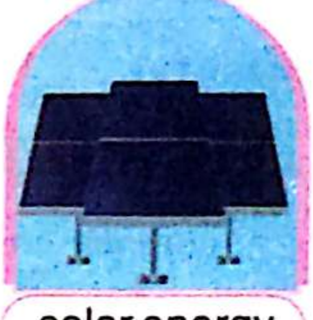
**Listen and repeat.**

## Renewable energy طاقة متجددة


wind energy
طاقة الرياح


tidal energy
طاقة المد والجزر


geothermal energy
الطاقة الحرارية (المنبعثة من باطن الأرض)


solar energy
الطاقة الشمسية

## Non-renewable energy طاقة غير متجددة


oil
بترول


coal
فحم


fossil fuels
وقود حفري



gas
غاز

### Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| kind | نوع | natural resources | مصادر طبيعية |
| remains | بقايا | electrical energy | طاقة كهربية |
| electricity | كهرباء | future | مستقبل |
| solar panels | ألواح شمسية | movement | حركة |
| generate energy | يولد طاقة | moving water | المياه الجارية |

Help your child identify renewable and non-renewable energy. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الطاقة المتجددة وغير المتجددة.

## Definitions

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **turbine (n)** | a machine to make energy | توربين |
| **tide (n)** | when the level of the sea gets higher or lower | المد والجزر |
| **generate (v)** | to make something | يولد |
| **store (v)** | to keep something | يخزن |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

### *Regular verbs* أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| heat | يسخن | heated |
| release into | يُطلق في | released into |
| store | يخزن | stored |
| generate | يولد | generated |

### *Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| keep | يحفظ | kept |
| run out | ينفد | ran out |
| shine | يلمع / يشرق | shone |
| blow | تهب | blew |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| on the long run | على المدى الطويل | release into | يتم تحريره في |
| on Earth | على كوكب الأرض | run out | ينفد |
| such as | مثل | make electricity | يولد كهرباء |
| under the ground | تحت الأرض | get more of | يحصل على المزيد من |
| a period of time | فترة من الوقت | throughout the day | على مدار اليوم |
| go up and down | يرتفع وينخفض | | |



Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



## Read the text.

Fossil fuels are things like coal, gas, and oil. These are burned in factories or used to make homes and buildings warm. However,They are non-renewable: when they run out, we can't find or make more of them. Fossil fuels are made from the remains of very old plants and animals that lived on Earth a long time ago. When we burn them, a lot of carbon dioxide is released into the atmosphere.

الوقود الحفري هو أشياء مثل الفحم والغاز والنفط. يتم استخدامها في تشغيل المصانع أو استخدامها لتدفئة المنازل والمباني. ومع ذلك، فهي غير متجددة: عندما تنفد، لا يمكننا العثور عليها أو صنع المزيد منها. يتكون الوقود الحفري من بقايا النباتات والحيوانات القديمة جدًا التي عاشت على الأرض منذ زمن طويل. عندما نحرقها، ينبعث الكثير من ثاني أكسيد الكربون في الغلاف الجوي.



There are other kinds of energy we can use which are renewable: they don't run out. We can get renewable energy from natural resources such as the wind,the sun, water and heat inside the Earth. These kinds of energy don't make pollution, and, on the long run, they are better. There are many types of environments on Earth, and we can use different natural resources in different places. For example, a hot desert is a good place to get solar energy from the sun, and there are large farms with lots of solar panels that can make clean electricity. A coastal environment can get a lot of wind, so some places have a lot of wind turbines in the sea, close to the coast.

هناك أنواع أخرى من الطاقة التي يمكننا استخدامها وهي متجددة: فهي لا تنفد. يمكننا الحصول على الطاقة المتجددة من الموارد الطبيعية مثل الرياح والشمس والماء والحرارة داخل الأرض. هذه الأنواع من الطاقة لا تسبب تلوث، وهي أفضل على المدى الطويل. هناك أنواع عديدة من البيئات على الأرض، ويمكننا استخدام موارد طبيعية مختلفة في أماكن مختلفة. على سبيل المثال، تعد الصحراء الحارة مكانًا جيدًا للحصول على الطاقة الشمسية من الشمس، ويوجد مزارع كبيرة مزودة بالكثير من الألواح الشمسية التي بإمكانها إنتاج كهرباء نظيفة. يمكن أن تتعرض البيئة الساحلية للكثير من الرياح، لذلك يوجد في بعض الأماكن الكثير من توربينات الرياح في البحر بالقرب من الساحل.



Help your child read about different energy sources. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن مصادر الطاقة المختلفة.





In some places, the sea goes up and down throughout the day. This is called a tide. In places where the tides are very big and strong, we can use tidal energy from the moving water to make electricity. Wind and wave turbines work by movement. The wind or water make turbines move, and this moving energy generates electrical energy. You can store this energy, so if the sun isn't shining or the wind isn't blowing,we will still have electricity! In other places, it is very hot under the ground. These are good places for geothermal energy, as the ground can heat water. In the future, we need to get more of our energy from renewable sources, and less from non-renewable sources.

وفي بعض الأماكن، يرتفع منسوب البحر وينخفض طوال اليوم. وهذا ما يسمى بالمد والجزر. في الأماكن التي يكون فيها المد والجزر كبيرًا وقويًا جدًا، يمكننا استخدام طاقة المد والجزر من المياه المتحركة لإنتاج الكهرباء. تعمل توربينات الرياح والأمواج بالحركة. تعمل الرياح أو الماء على تحريك التوربينات، وهذه الطاقة المتحركة تولد طاقة كهربائية. يمكنك تخزين هذه الطاقة، لذلك إذا لم تكن الشمس مشرقة أو لم تهب الرياح، فسيظل لدينا كهرباء! وفي أماكن أخرى، يكون الجو حارًا جدًا تحت الأرض. وهذه أماكن جيدة للطاقة الحرارية الأرضية، حيث يمكن للأرض تسخين المياه. في المستقبل، نحتاج إلى الحصول على المزيد من طاقتنا من المصادر المتجددة، والقليل من المصادر غير المتجددة.

**Answer the following questions.**

1) What are fossil fuels made from?

.............................................................................................................

2) Why is a coastal environment a good place for wind energy?

.............................................................................................................

## Reading Tips!

- Sometimes when we read a text, we find words which we don't understand. Look at the rest of the words in the sentence carefully. They can help you understand the new word.

أحيانًا عندما نقرأ نصًا نجد كلمات لا نستطيع فهمها. انظر لباقي الكلمات في الجملة بعناية فهذا يساعدك على فهم الكلمة الجديدة.

- Look at how a new word is used in a sentence and decide if it is a verb or a noun. This helps you guess the meaning of new words.

انظر إلى استخدام الكلمة الجديدة في الجملة وحدد إذا كانت اسم أم فعل، سيساعدك هذا على تخمين معنى الكلمات الجديدة.



Help your child read about different energy sources. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن مصادر الطاقة المختلفة



# Activities

## 1 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

remains - renewable - What - oil

Sara : How many kinds of energy are there?

Toka : There are two kinds: 1) .................................... and non-renewable.

Sara : 2)........................................................................................... are fossil fuels?

Toka : They are things like coal, gas and 3)..................................................... .

Sara : What are fossil fuels made from?

Toka : They are made from the 4)............. of very old plants and animals.

## 2 Read the following text and answer the questions.

There are many types of environments on Earth, and we can use different natural resources in different places. For example, a hot desert is a good place to get solar energy from the sun, and there are large farms with lots of solar panels that can make clean electricity. A coastal environment can get a lot of wind. In some places, the sea goes up and down throughout the day. This is called a tide. In places where the tides are very big and strong, we can use tidal energy from the moving water to make electricity. Wind and wave turbines work by movement. The wind or water make turbines move, and this moving energy generates electrical energy. In other places, it is very hot under the ground. These are good places for geothermal energy, as the ground can heat water.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "types" means ......................................................... .

   a) kinds  b) write  c) call  d) make

2. A coastal environment can get a lot of ................................................. .

   a) snow  b) ice  c) wind  d) sun

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where can you find solar panels? .......................................................

4. Give examples of natural resources? ...................................................

## 3 Choose the correct answer.

1. Fossil fuels are ........................................ energy.
   a) modern b) renewable c) new d) non-renewable
2. Solar energy comes from the ........................................
   a) wind b) sun c) water d) moon
3. ............ energy uses the movement of the sea to make energy.
   a) Tidal b) Solar c) Wind d) Geothermal
4. To ........................................ is to keep something
   a) make b) play c) store d) stare
5. We use ........................................ to make electricity
   a) cars b) turbines c) planes d) bridges

## 4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. are - fossil - What - fuels - from - made - ?

........................................................................................................

2. store - You - can - energy - electrical - .

........................................................................................................

3. doesn't - Renewable - out - energy - run - .

........................................................................................................

4. get - from - resources - We - can - renewable - natural - energy -

........................................................................................................

## 5 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

**Energy around us**

Guiding words:

(renewable energy - solar energy - wind energy - run out - clean - non-renewable - pollution - coal - gas)





Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.




# WRITING: HOW TO WRITE A REPORT

## Key vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| waterwheel | ساقية | source | مصدر |
| features | مميزات / سمات | location | موقع |
| hydroelectricity | طاقة كهرومائية | report | تقرير |

## Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| country | دولة | flooding | فيضان / طوفان |
| heat | حرارة | hydropower | الطاقة الكهرومائية |
| machine | آلة | underground | تحت الأرض |
| steam | بخار | Iceland | دولة أيسلندا |
| kilowatt | كيلو وات | spring | ينبوع |
| volcano | بركان | The High Dam | السد العالي |
| holes | فتحات / ثقوب | mechanical | الطاقة الميكانيكية |
| generator | مولد كهربائي | Greek | يوناني / أغريقي |
| farming | الزراعة | both | كلاهما |
| tunnel | نفق | reservoirs | خزانات |

## Definitions

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| location | a place or a position | موقع |
| kilowatt | a unit for measuring electrical power | كيلو وات |
| waterwheel | a wheel with buckets used to raise water | ساقية الماء |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

***Regular verbs*** أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| finish | ينتهي | finished |
| change | يتغير | changed |
| turn | يحول - يدور | turned |

***Irregular verbs*** أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| mean | يعني - يقصد | meant |
| build | يبني | built |
| come up | يصعد | came up |

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.





## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| more than | أكثر من | come from | يأتي من |
| make electricity | يولد كهرباء | stop... from | يمنع.....من |
| change to | يتحول إلى | the location of | موقع |
| mechanical energy | طاقة ميكانيكية | water tunnels | أنفاق مائية |
| come up (came up) | يرتفع | making food | صناعة الطعام |

### Look, listen and read.

## Report: Geothermal energy, Iceland

**Why Iceland?** لماذا أيسلندا؟

Iceland is a cold country, but it has more than 600 hot springs and 200 volcanoes. There is a lot of hot water underground, and this is used to heat homes and to make electricity.

آيسلندا بلد طقسها بارد، لكن بها أكثر من ٦٠٠ ينبوع ساخن و ٢٠٠ بركان، يوجد الكثير من الماء الساخن تحت الأرض، ويستخدم لتدفئة المنازل وتوليد الكهرباء.

**How does it work?** كيف يعمل؟

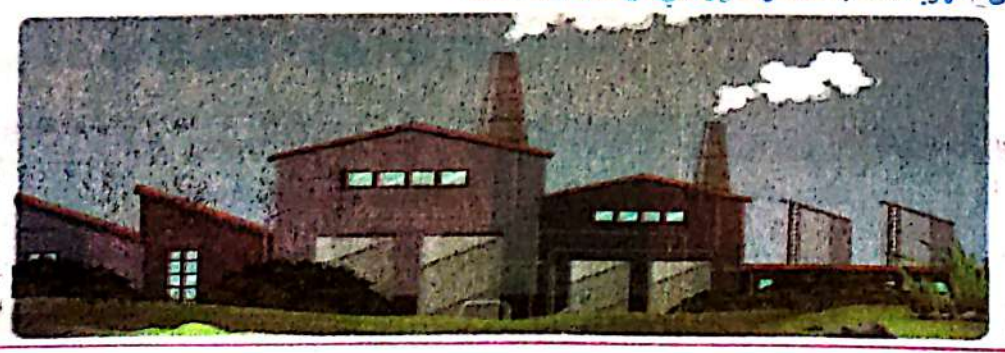
When water gets hot, it makes steam. Engineers in Iceland can make holes down to the hot water underground. Then steam comes up and it moves turbines to make electricity.

عندما يسخن الماء، ينتج عنه بخارًا. يمكن للمهندسين في آيسلندا عمل ثقوب تصل إلى المياه الساخنة تحت الأرض. ثم يتصاعد البخار ويقوم بتحريك التوربينات لتوليد الكهرباء.

**Why is it important?** لماذا هو مهم؟

100% of its electricity and heat comes from renewable sources.

١٠٠ ٪ من الكهرباء المنتجة منه والحرارة تأتي من مصادر متجددة.





Help your child read about geothermal energy in Iceland. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن الطاقة الحرارية في آيسلندا.




**A report** is a way to give information about a topic. It often has these features.

التقرير: هو طريقة لإعطاء معلومات عن موضوع و غالبًا ما يكون له هذه السمات.

- A title : this tells you what the report is about.

العنوان الرئيسي: وهذا يخبرك عن موضوع التقرير.

- Photos : these illustrate the report and make it look interesting. A photo can help explain what you mean.

الصور: وهي توضح التقرير وتجعله شيقًا، الصورة تساعدك على شرح ما تقصده.

- Subtitles : these break down the information into smaller sections by topic.

العناوين الفرعية: تُجزأ المعلومات لأقسام أصغر.

- Facts and figures : a report uses these to show that information is true.

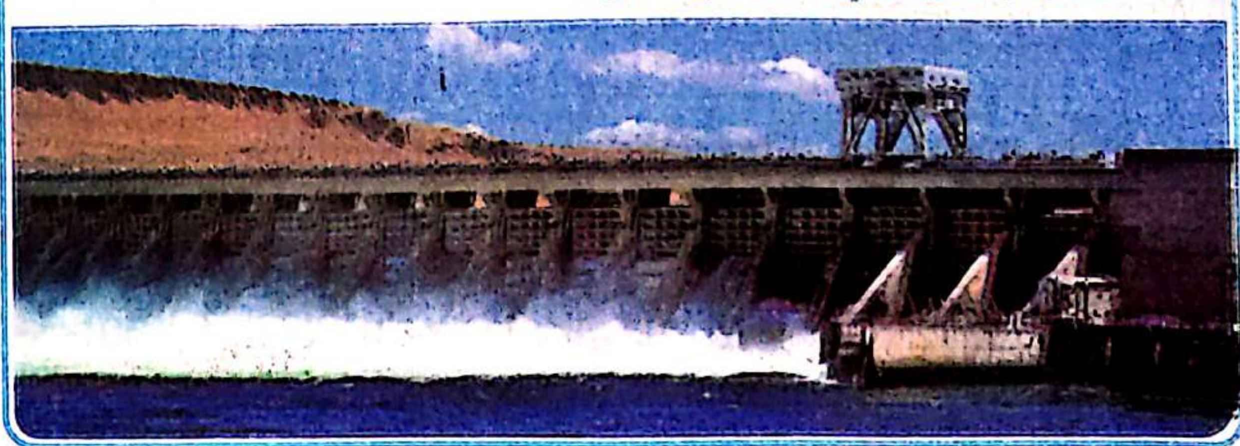
الحقائق والأشكال: وتستخدم في التقرير لتوضيح صحة المعلومات.

**Read the text.**

## Hydroelectricity

People have used hydroelectricity (also called hydropower ) for a very long time. Hydroelectricity means using the energy from moving water to move machines or generate electricity.

لقد استخدم الناس الطاقة الكهرومائية (وتسمى أيضًا الطاقة المائية) لفترة طويلة جدًا. الطاقة الكهرومائية تعني استخدام الطاقة الناتجة عن حركة المياه لتحريك الآلات أو توليد الكهرباء.



Help your child read about different energy sources. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن مصادر الطاقة المختلفة.





The Ancient Egyptians and Greeks used the energy in moving water to turn waterwheels. The waterwheels could move machines and these machines helped with both farming and making food.

يستخدم القدماء المصريين والإغريق الطاقة الناتجة من المياه المتحركة لتشغيل سواقي المياه. يمكن لسواقي المياه أن تحرك الآلات، وساعدت هذه الآلات في كلا من الزراعة وصنع الطعام.

Now, we can use hydroelectricity to generate electricity. A hydroelectric dam uses the energy in falling water to turn a turbine. The mechanical energy of the moving turbine is changed to electrical energy by a generator.

الآن، يمكننا استخدام الطاقة الكهرومائية لتوليد الكهرباء. يستخدم السد الكهرومائي الطاقة من المياه المتساقطة لتشغيل التوربين. يتم تحويل الطاقة الميكانيكية للتوربين المتحرك إلى طاقة كهربائية بواسطة مولد.

The High Dam was finished in 1971. It uses water from the River Nile to generate electricity. The location of Aswan made this a good place to build the dam because it could stop the River Nile from flooding. The dam has twelve large turbines inside. It generates more than 10 billion kilowatt hours of electricity a year!

تم الانتهاء من بناء السد العالي عام ١٩٧١. ويستخدم مياه نهر النيل لتوليد الكهرباء. موقع أسوان جعلها مكانًا جيدًا لبناء السد لأنه يمكن أن يمنع فيضانات نهر النيل. يحتوي السد على اثني عشر توربينًا كبيرًا بداخله. ويولد السد أكثر من ١٠ مليارات كيلووات/ساعة من الكهرباء سنويًا

**Read again and answer the questions.**

1) What is hydroelectricity mean?

..........................................................................................

2) What did the ancient Egyptians use the energy to?

..........................................................................................

3) Where is the High Dam?

..........................................................................................



*Help your child read about different energy sources.* ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن مصادر الطاقة المختلفة.




نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and complete.

1. Iceland is a .................................................... country.
2. It has more than 600 hot .................................................... .
3. There is a lot of .................................................... water underground.
4. The hot water underground is used to make .................................... .

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

waterwheels - High Dam - Hydroelectricity - electricity

People have used hydroelectricity for a very long time. 1)..................... means using the energy from moving water to generate 2)..................... . The Ancient Egyptians and Greeks used the energy in moving water to turn 3)..................... . The 4)..................... uses water from the River Nile to generate electricity.

## 3 Choose the correct answer.

1. A .................................... tells you what the report is about.
   a) title  b) photo  c) subtitle  d) figure
2. .................... illustrate the report and make it look interesting.
   a) Titles  b) Subtitles  c) Facts  d) Photos
3. A report uses .................... to show that information is true.
   a) facts and figures  b) titles  c) photos  d) subtitles
4. When water gets hot, it makes .................................... .
   a) ice  b) snow  c) steam  d) electricity
5. 100% of Iceland's electricity and heat comes from..... sources.
   a) non- renewable  b) renewable  c) rural  d) urban

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

6. The ancient Egyptians used the energy in moving water to turn ..

a) waterwheels b) bicycles c) cars d) boats

7. A .............................................. is a unit for measuring electrical power

a) kilowatt b) kilogram c) gram d) kilometer

8. The waterwheel is a wheel with buckets used to raise ...............

a) food b) electricity c) heat d) water

9. The ............ of Aswan made it a good place to build the High Dam

a) view b) statues c) weather d) position

10. We can use hydropower to generate ..................................................

a) electricity b) water c) food d) houses

## 4 | Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. is - Iceland - country - a - cold - .

..............................................................................................................

2. has - 600 - springs - hot - Iceland - more than - .

..............................................................................................................

3. is - the High - Why - important - Dam - ?

..............................................................................................................

4. was - How - hydroelectricity - in - used - the past - ?

..............................................................................................................

5. in - finished - The High Dam - 1971 - was - .

..............................................................................................................

## 5 | Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

**Hydroelectricity**

Guiding words:

(used - in the past - generate - electricity - clean - renewable - High Dam - Aswan)



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.




# - CLIL: MATH: Comparing and ordering high numbers
# - PROJECT

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| article | مقال | public parks | حدائق عامة |
| tonne | الطن (وحدة وزن) | average | متوسط / معدل |
| humans | البشر | planet | كوكب |
| cells | خلايا | protecting | حماية |
| home | موطن | green spaces | مساحات خضراء |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| plant | يزرع | planted |
| cause | يسبب | caused |
| waste | يهدر | wasted |
| absorb | يمتص | absorbed |
| protect | يحمي | protected |

### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| give | يعطي | gave |
| understand | يفهم | understood |
| beat | يدق / يضرب | beat |
| take out | يُخرج | took out |
| think | يفكر / يعتقد | thought |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| You're right. | انت محق. | home for | موطن لـ |
| make the air cleaner | يجعل الهواء أكثر نقاءً | important to | مهم أن |
| look really nice | تبدو جميلة حقًا | That's amazing! | هذا مذهل! |
| a good way to | طريقة جيدة لكي | I think | أنا أعتقد |
| find out | يكتشف | create pollution | يسبب التلوث |

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.





## Read the story.



"Listen to this, Mom," said Nessma one day after school. "This article says that in 2019, Egypt started a project to plant one million trees in public parks and gardens all over the country. That's amazing!" "You're right," said Mom. "Do you understand why it's important to plant trees?"

قالت نسمة بعد يوم من المدرسة: "اسمعي هذا يا أمي". "يقول هذا المقال أن مصر بدأت في عام 2019 مشروعًا لزراعة مليون شجرة في الحدائق العامة والمتنزهات في جميع أنحاء البلاد. وهذا مذهل!" قالت أمي: "أنت على حق". "هل تفهمي سبب أهمية زراعة الأشجار؟"

Nessma wasn't sure. "They look really nice, don't they? They give us fruit, and they can be homes for animals.""All those things are true but trees are even more special than that," said Mom. "Some of the things that people do make carbon dioxide emissions. This causes air pollution and climate change. But forests can absorb carbon dioxide. That means they take it out of the atmosphere and make the air cleaner! Did you know that forests absorb about 2.6 billion tonnes of carbon dioxide every year?" "Wow, that's a lot of carbon dioxide!" said Nessma. "So trees are really important in protecting our planet!"

لم تكن نسمة متأكدة. "إن الأشجار تبدو جميلة حقًا، أليس كذلك؟ إنها تعطينا الفاكهة، ويمكن أن تكون بيوتًا للحيوانات." قالت أمي: "كل هذه الأشياء صحيحة، لكن الأشجار مميزة أكثر من ذلك". "بعض الأشياء التي يفعلها الناس تؤدي إلى انبعاثات ثاني أكسيد الكربون. وهذا يسبب تلوث الهواء وتغير المناخ. لكن الغابات يمكن أن تمتص ثاني أكسيد الكربون. وهذا يعني أنها تخرجه من الغلاف الجوي وتجعل الهواء أنظف! هل تعلمي أن الغابات تمتص حوالي 2.6 مليار طن من ثاني أكسيد الكربون كل عام؟ "واو، هذا كثير من ثاني أكسيد الكربون!" قالت نسمة. "لذا فإن الأشجار مهمة حقًا لحماية كوكبنا!"





Help your child identify to talk about how to help the environment. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف كيف يتحدث عن مساعدة البيئة.

# Math: Large numbers

## Listen and repeat.

Smallest

| Number | Word | Arabic |
|---|---|---|
| 1,000 | (one thousand) | ألف |
| 10,000 | (ten thousand) | عشرة آلاف |
| 100,000 | (one hundred thousand) | مائة ألف |
| 1,000,000 | (one million) | مليون |
| 10,000,000 | (ten million) | عشرة مليون |
| 100,000,000 | (one hundred million) | مائة مليون |
| 1,000,000,000 | (one billion) | مليار |

Largest

## 1 Put these numbers in order from smallest to largest.

a) 10,000 ☐
b) 1,000,000 ☐
c) 1,000 ☐
d) 100,000 ☐

## 2 Read and match.

1) 10,000,000 a) one billion
2) 1,000,000 b) one hundred million
3) 100,000,000 c) ten million
4) 1,000,000,000 d) one million

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( ) 4- ( )

Help your child compare and order high numbers.
ساعد طفلك أن يقارن ويرتب الأرقام الكبيرة.





## Listen and read.

**Nadia** : So, the first question is: What can our country do to help the environment? That's interesting. I think our country can help by using more renewable energy.

ذا فالسؤال الأول هو: ما الذي يمكن أن تفعله بلادنا لمساعدة البيئة؟ هذا شيق. أعتقد أن بلادنا يمكن
ن تساعد من خلال استخدام المزيد من الطاقة المتجددة.

**Nour** : I agree. That would be a good way to use less fossil fuel. I also think it's a good idea to plant more trees and protect the forests we have.

أتفق معك. هذه طريقة جيدة تجعل استخدامنا للوقود الحفري أقل. أعتقد أيضًا أنه من الجيد زراعة
مزيد من الأشجار وحماية الغابات التي لدينا.

**Nadia** : Yes, you're right. Forests help to protect the environment.

ت مُحقة. الغابات تساعد على حماية البيئة.

**Nour** : And what can I do to help the environment? Well, I can recycle plastic and not drop garbage.

اذا أيضًا يمكننا فعله لمساعدة البيئة؟ حسنًا، يمكنني إعادة استخدام البلاستيك وعدم إلقاء القمامة.

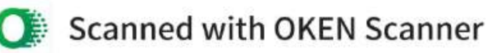
**Nadia** : Yes, we shouldn't drop garbage, but I think the most important thing is to turn off lights and not waste electricity.

م، يجب علينا ألا نلقي القمامة. لكن أعتقد الشيء الأكثر أهمية أن نغلق الأنوار وعدم إهدار الكهرباء.

Help you child listen and read.

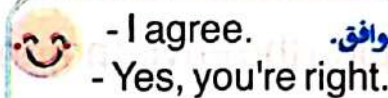
شد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.





# Expressions for replying and giving opinion

تعبيرات لإبداء الرأي والرد عليه



- I agree. موافق.
- Yes, you're right. نعم، أنت محق.

- I'm not sure. لست متأكدًا.
- But I think..... لكن أنا أعتقد .....



I disagree. غير موافق.





| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1 What can our country do to help the environment? That's interesting. I think our country can help by using more renewable energy. | 2 I agree. That would be a good way to use less fossil fuel. I also think it's a good idea to plant more trees and protect the forests we have. |
| 3 Yes, you're right. Forests help to protect the environment. | 4 And what can I do to help the environment? Well, I can recycle plastic and not drops garbage. |
| 5 Yes, we shouldn't drop garbage, but I think the most important thing is to turn off lights and not waste electricity. | |





Help your child talk about how to help the environment. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف كيف يتحدث عن مساعدة البيئة.

# Activities

## 1 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the bo

take - article - help - plant

Sara : What are you doing, Mai?

Mai : I'm reading an 1) .............. about helping the environmen

Sara : What can our country do to 2) .............. the environment

Mai : Egypt started a project to 3) .............. one million tree in public parks.

Sara : Why is it important to plant trees ?

Mai : Because they 4) .............. out carbon dioxide of th atmosphere.

## 2 Choose the correct answer.

1. I think you .............. righ
   a) is b) am c) are d) was
2. We shouldn't .............. garbag
   a) drop b) drops c) dropped d) dropping
3. Why is it important .............. plant trees
   a) in b) of c) at d) to
4. Forests can .............. carbon dioxid
   a) absorb b) store c) give d) take

## 3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. is - it - Why - to - important - trees - plant - ?

..............................................................

2. help - to - Forests - environment - protect - the - .

..............................................................

## 4 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

**How to keep the environment**

(keep - clean - plant - drop - garbage - renewable energy - protect forests - turn off lights)



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

# Review on Unit (7)

## Environments

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| coastal | ساحلية | desert | صحراوية | urban | حضرية |
| mountainous | جبلية | rural | قروية / ريفية | polar | قطبية |
| rainforest | غابة مطيرة | temperature | درجة الحرارة | difficult | صعبة |



## Pollution

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| air pollution | تلوث الهواء | water pollution | تلوث الماء |
| fossil fuels | وقود حفري | climate change | تغير المناخ |
| carbon dioxide | ثاني أكسيد الكربون | emissions | انبعاثات |



## Energy

| Renewable | متجددة | Non-renewable | غير متجددة |
|---|---|---|---|
| wind energy | طاقة الرياح | coal | فحم |
| solar energy | الطاقة الشمسية | gas | غاز |
| tidal energy | طاقة المد و الجزر | oil | بترول |
| geothermal energy | الطاقة الحرارية (المنبعثة من باطن الأرض) | | |



## Other words

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| generate | يولد | store | يخزن | absorb | يمتص |
| hydroelectricity | طاقة كهرومائية | release | يطلق | heat | حرارة |
| waterwheels | السواقي | take out | يخرج | turbine | توربين |



## Large Numbers

| | |
|---|---|
| 1,000 (one thousand) | 10,000 (ten thousand) |
| 100,000 (one hundred thousand) | 1,000,000 (one million) |
| 10,000,000 (ten million) | 100,000,000 (one hundred million) |
| 1,000,000,000 (one billion) | |

Help your child revise unit (7).
ساعد طفلك على مراجعة الوحدة السابعة .

# Language

## The Present Continuous Tense

زمن المضارع المستمر

**Form:**

Subject + am / is / are + (v + ing)

- I'm walking to school.

**Usage:** To express an action that is happening now.

**Keywords:**

| now الآن | Listen! استمع! | at the moment في هذه اللحظة |
|---|---|---|
| Look! انظر! | today اليوم | at present في الوقت الحاضر |

**Negative:**

Subject + am / is / are + not + (v + ing)

- I am not using recycled bags.

**Yes / No question:**

Is + (he/ she/ it/ a singular noun) + (v+ing)...?

- Is he walking to school? - Yes, he is. - No, he isn't.

Are + (they/ we/ you/ a plural noun) + (v+ing)...?

- Are they watching a TV program? - Yes, they are. - No, they aren't.

**Wh- question:**

Q.W + is /are + subject + (v+ing)...?

- What is he doing now? - He is driving an electric car.





# Writing Corner

## Different environments

In our world, there are different environments like coastal, desert, rural, urban and polar environments. In coastal environments, there are beaches, The Nile Delta and the Red Sea are two examples of this environment. Desert environment is very dry. The animals and plants that live there have to find ways to survive without a lot of water.

## Pollution

There are different kinds of pollution. Water pollution happens when it is dirty because of chemicals or plastic. Carbon dioxide can be dangerous when there is too much in the air. Emissions that are made by factories, cars and lorries cause air pollution. We should keep the air clean by planting more trees.

## Energy around us

There are two kinds of energy: renewable and non-renewable energy. Non-renewable energy are like coal, gas and oil. They run out. They pollute the environment. Renewable energy like solar, wind, tidal and geothermal energies . They don't run out. We can get renewable energy from natural resources. They are better than non-renewable energy.

Help your child write paragraphs.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرات.





# Activities on Unit (7)

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Our country can help by using ........................ renewable energy.
   a) more  b) less  c) little  d) the least
2. We should use ........................ fossil fuel.
   a) more  b) much  c) many  d) less
3. Our country can ........................ more trees.
   a) plant  b) destroy  c) damage  d) cut
4. We should ........................ the forests we have.
   a) cut down  b) damage  c) protect  d) eat

## 2 Listen and complete.

1. The desert is very ........................
2. Animals have to find ........................ ways to survive in the desert.
3. Desert can be ........................ or cold.
4. There are ........................ and plants there.

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

take - important - absorb - billion

Carbon dioxide emissions cause air pollution and climate change. But forests can 1)........................ carbon dioxide. That means they 2)........................ it out of the atmosphere and make the air cleaner! Did you know that forests absorb about 2.6 3)........................ tonnes of carbon dioxide every year? That's a lot of carbon dioxide, so trees are really 4)........................ in protecting our planet!


Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## 4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Iceland is a cold country, but it has more than 600 hot springs and 200 volcanoes. There is a lot of hot water underground, and this is used to heat homes and to make electricity. When water gets hot, it makes steam. Engineers in Iceland can make holes down to the hot water underground. Then steam comes up and it moves turbines to make electricity. 100% of its electricity and heat comes from renewable sources.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. The opposite of the underlined word "renewable" is .......... .
   a) hot  b) non renewable  c) cold  d) warm
2. Iceland has about .......... hot springs.
   a) 6000  b) 6600  c) 600  d) 60000

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What can engineers in Iceland make?
   ..........
4. Where do electricity and heat come from in Iceland?
   ..........

## 5 The Reader

### A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Amir helped his grandma cook dinner. ( )
2. Amir took the laundry up to the roof. ( )

### B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

3. Amir could see plastic bottles floating down on the .......... .
   a) sink  b) river  c) road  d) sea
4. Amir took the .......... up to the roof.
   a) dishes  b) bottles  c) laundry  d) bags

## 6 Choose the correct answer.

1. They are .................................... to stop pollution
   a) helps b) helped c) help d) helping
2. Look! He .................................... up the garbage
   a) picks b) picking c) is picking d) pick
3. What .................................... they discussing
   a) are b) is c) am d) do
4. We are .................................... gloves
   a) wears b) wearing c) wear d) wore

## 7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. are - talking - pollution - We - about - .

....................................................................................................

2. machine - A turbine - make - to - is - a - energy - .

....................................................................................................

## 8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

**Polar environment**

Guiding words:

Polar - cold - windy - Arctic - Antarctic - ice - any trees - flowers )

....................................................................................................

....................................................................................................

....................................................................................................

....................................................................................................

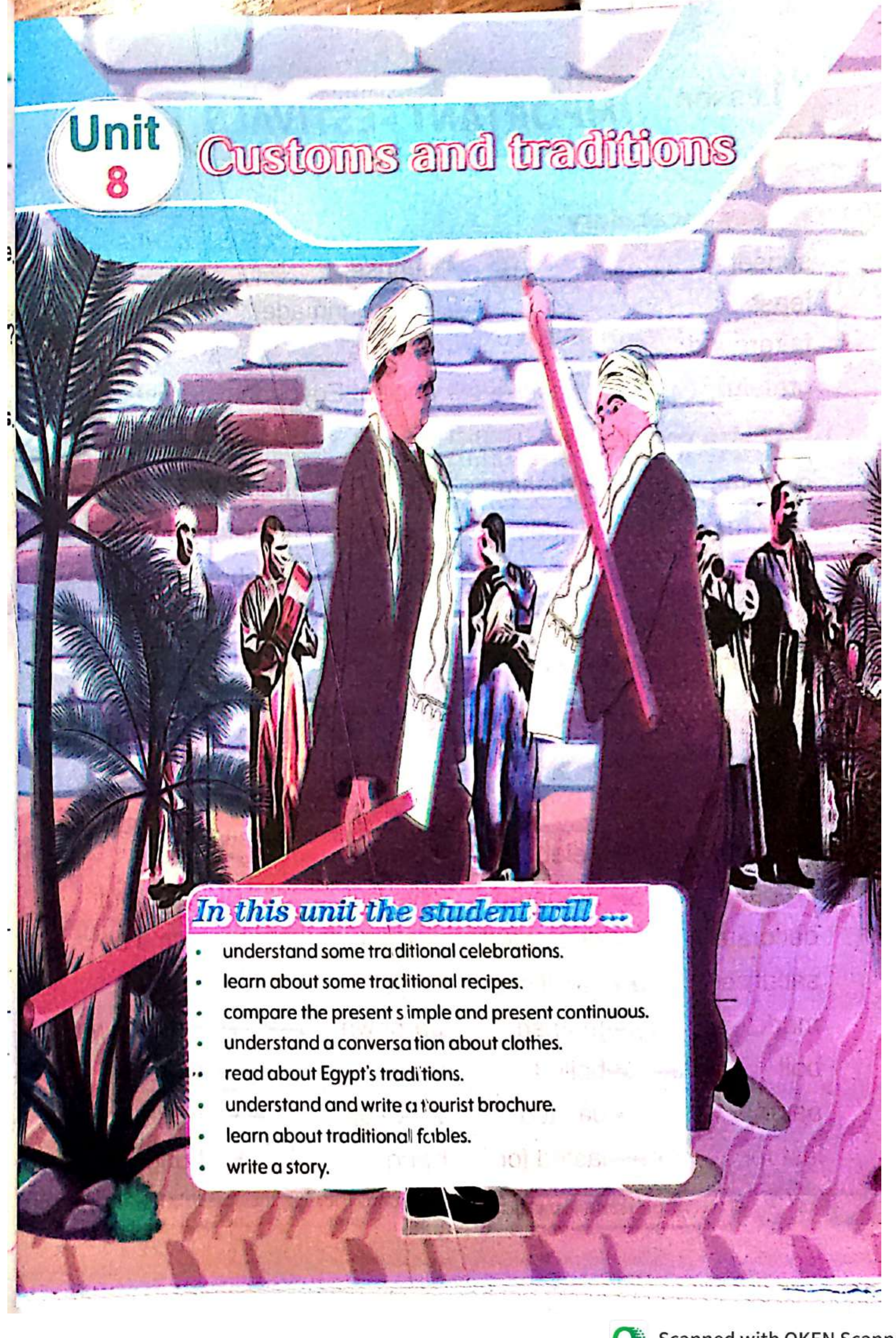
....................................................................................................

....................................................................................................



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.


Unit 8
Customs and traditions
In this unit the student will ...
understand some traditional celebrations.
learn about some traditional recipes.
compare the present simple and present continuous.
understand a conversation about clothes.
read about Egypt's traditions.
understand and write a tourist brochure.
learn about traditional fables.
write a story.




# IMPORTANT FESTIVALS

## Key vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| sunset | غروب الشمس | sunrise | روق الشمس |
| feast | وليمة | Hajj pilgrimage | ريضة الحج |
| fairground | ملاهي | prayers | لوات - مصلين |
| grateful | شاكر - ممتن | ancient Egyptians | لمصريون القدماء |

## Extra vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| customs | عادات | dream | حلم | traditional | تليدي |
| festival | عيد - مهرجان | rides | ألعاب (في الملاهي) | traditions | تاليد |
| dish | طبق - أكلة | life - lives | حياة - حيوات | celebrations | حتفالات |
| spring | فصل الربيع | lantern | فانوس | weather | لطقس |
| creation | خلق / ابتكار | warm | دافئ | sunny | شمس |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| celebrate | يحتفل | celebrated |
| prepare | يجهز | prepared |
| decorate | يزين | decorated |
| sacrifice | يضحي | sacrificed |
| mark | يميز | marked |
| boil | يغلي - يسلق | boiled |
| paint | يلون | painted |
| last for | يستمر لمدة | lasted for |

### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| spend | يقضي | spent |
| give out | يوزع | gave out |
| come up | تشرق | came up |
| stick | يلصق | stuck |
| go down | تغيب (الشمس) | went down |
| wear | يرتدي | wore |
| wake up | يستيقظ | woke up |
| hang | يعلق | hung |

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Important expressions and prepositions
تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Coptic Easter | عيد الفصح القبطي | front door | الباب الأمامي |
| get ready | يستعد | on the side of | على جانب |
| at sunrise | عند شروق الشمس | electric candle | شمعة كهربية |
| in different colors | بألوان مختلفة | make a lantern | يصنع فانوسًا |
| play music | يعزف موسيقى | glass jar | برطمان زجاج |
| mid-July | منتصف شهر يوليو | Islamic festival | عيد إسلامي |
| for the start of | مع بداية | listen to | يستمع لـ |
| spend (time) + v + ing | يقضي وقتًا | love + (v + ing) | يحب |

## Definitions

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **celebrate** | to spend time with others, being happy and having fun | يحتفل |
| **grateful** | feeling that you want to thank someone | ممتن - شاكر |
| **prayer** | important words which you say to give thanks or ask for help | دعاء - صلاة |
| **give out** | to offer something | يوزع |
| **fairgrounds** | an open area of land where people can enjoy rides | الملاهي - ساحات الألعاب |
| **sunrise** | when the sun comes up in the morning | شروق الشمس |
| **sunset** | when the sun goes down at night | غروب الشمس |
| **feast** | a large meal | وليمة (وجبة كبيرة) |

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Listen and read.

### Sham El-Nessim



I love celebrating Sham El-Nessim with my family. The festival is for the start of spring and it is very old. The ancient Egyptians also celebrated it, as a festival of creation and new life. Sham El-Nessim is always on the same day as Coptic Easter Monday.

شم النسيم: أحب الاحتفال بشم النسيم مع عائلتي. وهذا الاحتفال عبارة عن بداية الربيع وهو قديم جدًا. كما احتفل به المصريون القدماء كعيد للخلق والحياة الجديدة. ويكون شم النسيم دائمًا في نفس يوم إثنين الفصح القبطي.

Because it is the start of spring, the weather at Sham El-Nessim is usually sunny and warm. I always wake up at sunrise to get ready. Lots of people go with their family to meet friends in parks, gardens or beaches. We eat lots of nice food and play music and games. Sometimes there are fairgrounds with rides for children - they are a lot of fun!

ولأنه بداية فصل الربيع، يكون الطقس في شم النسيم عادةً مشمسًا ودافئًا. أستيقظ دائمًا عند شروق الشمس للاستعداد. يذهب الكثير من الأشخاص مع أسرهم للقاء الأصدقاء في المتنزهات أو الحدائق أو الشواطئ. نحن نأكل الكثير من الطعام اللذيذ ونعزف الموسيقى ونلعب الألعاب. في بعض الأحيان توجد ملاهي بها ألعاب للأطفال - فهي ممتعة للغاية!!

Before the day of the festival, we spend time preparing lots of different traditional food, often until sunset! We also boil eggs, then paint and decorate them in different colors to make them look beautiful.

قبل يوم المهرجان، نقضي وقتًا في إعداد الكثير من الأطعمة التقليدية المختلفة، غالبًا حتى غروب الشمس! نقوم أيضًا بسلق البيض ومن ثم طلاءه وتزيينه بألوان مختلفة ليبدو جميلاً.





Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.



## Eid Al-Adha



Eid Al-Adha usually lasts for four days, and it is a very important Islamic festival. It celebrates the time when Ibrahim listened to God in a dream. At Eid Al-Adha, many people sacrifice a sheep and eat some of its meat in a traditional dish called fatta. We give out meat to our family and friends.

عيد الأضحى: يستمر عيد الأضحى عادة لمدة أربعة أيام، وهو عيد إسلامي مهم للغاية. إنه يحتفل بالوقت الذي استمع فيه سيدنا إبراهيم إلى الله في المنام. في عيد الأضحى، يضحي الكثير من الناس بخروف ويأكلون بعض لحمه في وجبة تقليديه تسمى الفتة. نحن نوزع اللحوم على عائلاتنا وأصدقائنا.

During Eid Al-Adha, we go to the mosque for prayers and we are grateful for all the good things in our lives. We wear our best clothes for the celebrations and we visit our family and friends. We give each other presents and we have a feast together. Eid Al-Adha is during the month of Zu Elhijja when Muslims go to the Hajj pilgrimage.

خلال عيد الأضحى نذهب إلى المسجد للصلاة ونشعر بالامتنان لكل الأشياء الجيدة في حياتنا. نرتدي أفضل ملابسنا للاحتفالات ونزور عائلاتنا وأصدقائنا. نعطي بعضنا البعض الهدايا ونقيم وليمة معًا. عيد الأضحى يكون خلال شهر ذو الحجة عندما يذهب المسلمون لأداء فريضة الحج.

## Look and read.



This year for Ramadan I made a special lantern. I washed a glass jar and stuck some colored paper on the side. My mom gave me a small electric candle to put inside. I hung it on the front door of our house. It is pretty and bright in the night time!

في شهر رمضان هذا العام قمت بصنع فانوس مميز. غسلت برطمانًا زجاجيًا وألصقت بعض الورق الملون على جانبه. أعطتني أمي شمعة كهربائية صغيرة لأضعها بداخلها. لقد علقته على الباب الأمامي لمنزلنا. إنه جميل ومنير في الليل!

Help your child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.





# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer.

1. Sham El-Nessim marks the beginning of ..........
   a) spring b) winter c) Ramadan d) fall
2. We give out .......... in Eid Al-Adha
   a) meat b) fish c) rice d) onions
3. Sham El-Nessim is always on ..........
   a) Friday b) Tuesday c) Monday d) Sunday
4. I always wake up at ..........
   a) sunrise b) sunset c) afternoon d) morning
5. At Eid Al-Adha, people sacrifice a ..........
   a) cat b) sheep c) bird d) monkey
6. We go to the mosque for ..........
   a) playing b) prayers c) money d) celebrating
7. We should be .......... to Allah for all the good thing
   a) great b) grateful c) helpful d) bad
8. I made a special .......... for Ramada
   a) stick b) light c) lantern d) jar
9. Wepet Renpet celebrated flooding of the ..........
   a) lake b) sea c) Red Sea d) Nile
10. I went to the .......... and enjoyed many ride
   a) school b) library c) playground d) fairgrounds

## 2 Read and match.

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. celebrate | a) to offer something |
| 2. give out | b) where people can enjoy rides |
| 3. grateful | c) to spend time with others and have fun |
| 4. fairgrounds | d) words you say to give thanks or ask for help |



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

sacrifice - prayers - lasts - give

Eid Al-Adha usually 1)............................ for four days. Many people 2)......................................... a sheep and eat a traditional dish called fatta. We go to the mosque for 3)...................................... and be grateful to Allah.

## 4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I love celebrating Sham El-Nessim with my family. The festival is for the start of spring and it is very old. The ancient Egyptians also celebrated it, as a festival of creation and new life. Sham El-Nessim is always on the same day as Coptic Easter Monday. Because it is the start of spring, the weather at Sham El-Nessim is usually sunny and warm. I always wake up at sunrise to get ready. Lots of people go with their family to meet friends in parks, gardens or beaches. We eat lots of nice food and play music and games.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. Sham El- Nessim always comes on ..................................................
   a) Saturday b) Monday c) Friday d) Tuesday
2. Children can have fun at the ..................................................
   a) school b) hospital c) fair d) fairgrounds

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What's the general idea of the text?..................................................
4. What's the weather like at Sham El-Nessim? ..................................

## 5 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words.

**Your lantern**

Guiding words:

( Ramadan - special - jar - candle - hung - pretty )










# GRANDMA'S RECIPES

## Look, listen and read.

### Dishes
أكلات


Ful Medames
فول مدمس


Sayadeya
سمك صيادية


Fatta
فتة


Hawawshi
حواوشي

### Traditional Food
طعام تقليدي


olive oil
زيت زيتون


herbs
أعشاب


beans
فول


garlic
ثوم


spices
توابل


vinegar
خل


pastry
فطيرة (معجنات)




Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



## Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| cook book | كتاب الطهي | lamb | لحم الضأن |
| recipe | وصفة - طريقة | beef | لحم البقر |
| meals | وجبات | carefully | بعناية |
| difficult | صعب | well | جيدًا |
| tomato sauce | صلصة طماطم | easily | بسهولة |
| tomb | مقبرة | delicious | لذيذ |
| paintings | لوحات | chilli | فلفل حار |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| digest | يهضم | digested | try | يجرب | tried |
| press | يضغط | pressed | show | يبين | showed |
| bake | يخبز | baked | make | يصنع | made |
| describe | يصف | described | sit | يجلس | sat |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | |
|---|---|
| make a meal | يعد وجبة |
| her own book | كتابها الخاص بها |
| share recipes | يشارك الوصفات |
| made with | مصنوع من (مكونات) |
| take a long time | يستغرق مدة طويلة |
| baked in | مخبوز في |



Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.





## Listen and read.

### Grandma's Cook Book



Aya was visiting her grandma. Grandma was making a meal, and Aya was sitting in the kitchen looking carefully at Grandma's books. Grandma cooked very well and she had her own cook book. It described different meals and had pictures of delicious food.

كانت آية تزور جدتها. كانت الجدة تعد وجبة وكانت آية جالسة في المطبخ تنظر بعناية في كتب الجدة. تطبخ الجدة بطريقة جيدة وكان لديها كتاب طبخ خاص بها. كان يصف العديد من الوجبات وبه صور للأكل اللذيذ.

"Wow, Grandma," said Aya. "You have lots of different meals in your book!"

قالت آية «واو يا جدتي لديك الكثير من الوجبات المختلفة في كتابك!»

"Yes, I do," said Grandma. "I often share recipes with family and friends in other parts of Egypt. I like to try new things."

قالت الجدة «نعم بالفعل غالبًا ما أشارك الوصفات مع العائلة والأصدقاء في أجزاء أخرى من مصر. أحب أن أجرب أشياء جديدة.

"These look delicious! Can you make all of these?"

تبدو الوجبات لذيذة! هل تستطيعين عمل كل هذه الوجبات؟

"Yes, I can. And I can easily show you, too! What would you like to make?"

نعم، أستطيع. ويمكنني أن أريك بسهولة أيضًا! ماذا تودين أن تصنعي؟

"Hmm, that's difficult," said Aya. "There are so many recipes to choose from!"

قالت آية «همم، هذا صعب. هناك العديد من الوصفات للاختيار من بينها!»





Help your child read about different meals.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن الوجبات المختلفة.







## Read about the meals in Grandma's cook book.



**Ful Medames:** This dish uses beans cooked with lemon juice, garlic, onion, chilli and herbs. It never has any meat in it. We always eat it with bread.

فول مدمس: يتكون هذا الطبق من الفول المطبوخ مع عصير الليمون والثوم والبصل والفلفل الحار والأعشاب. لا يوجد فيه أي لحوم أبداً. نحن دائما نأكله بالخبز.



**Fatta:** Fatta has layers of rice and bread, with tomato sauce, vinegar, and meat. It takes a long time to digest, so we don't eat it very often.

فته: تتكون الفتة من طبقات من الأرز والخبز مع صلصة الطماطم والخل واللحم. يستغرق هضمه وقتًا طويلاً، لذلك لا نأكله كثيرًا.



**Hawawshi:** Hawawshi is delicious. It is made with bread and beef or lamb. The meat is cooked with onion, herbs and spices. The bread is pressed together around the meat and cooked. We sometimes eat it with salad.

حواوشي: الحواوشي لذيذ . يتكون من الخبز ولحم البقر أو لحم الضأن. يتم طهي اللحم مع البصل والأعشاب والبهارات. يتم ضغط الخبز معًا حول اللحم وطهيه. نتناوله أحياناً مع السلطة.



**Sayadeya:** People who live near the coast often make sayadeya. We use fish, which is baked in the oven with olive oil, onion, tomatoes, herbs, and spices. It's delicious!

صيادية: الناس الذين يعيشون بالقرب من الساحل غالبًا ما يطهون الصيادية. نستخدم السمك المطهي بالفرن بزيت الليمون والبصل والطماطم والأعشاب والبهارات. إنها لذيذة!

Help your child read about different meals.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن الوجبات المختلفة.





## Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

They tell us how often we do something. تخبرنا بعدد مرات حدوث الفعل.

| | |
|---|---|
| always | = at all times |
| usually | = most often |
| often | = many times |
| sometimes | = now and then |
| never | = at no time |

تي قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد (verb to be).

- We always eat hawawshi with bread. (قبل الفعل الأساسي)
- I am never late for school. (بعد verb to be)

## Adverbs of manner ظروف الطريقة

**They describe how we do something.** تصف كيف نقوم بالأشياء.

- Aya was looking carefully at Grandma's book.
- Grandma cooked very well. - I can easily show you.

### - Choose the correct answer.

1. People who live near the coast .............................. eat sayadey
   a) never b) often c) ever d) rarely
2. Grandma cooks ................................................................... , I like her foo
   a) bad b) good c) well d) happy
3. We ............................................................................ go to school on Frida
   a) always b) usually c) never d) sometimes
4. I can read English ..............................................................................
   a) easily b) easy c) good d) nice
5. We ............................................................ eat Ful medames with brea
   a) always b) never c) sometimes d) don't



Help your child learn adverbs of frequency and manner. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم ظروف التكرار والطريقة.

# Activities

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Aya was visiting her ..................................................... .
   a) brother  b) grandma  c) mom  d) dad
2. Aya was sitting in the..................................................... .
   a) kitchen  b) bedroom  c) bathroom  d) hall
3. Grandma cooked very ..................................................... .
   a) well  b) sad  c) bad  d) cold
4. Grandma had her own ............................................. book.
   a) cook  b) play  c) study  d) sing

## 2 Listen and complete.

1. Hawawshi is ..................................................... .
2. Hawawshi is made with bread and ..................................... .
3. The ............................ is cooked with onion, herbs and spices.
4. We sometimes eat it with ............................................... .

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

olive - sayadeya - fish - meat

People who live near the coast often make 1 )............................ . We use 2)......................... , which is baked in the oven with 3)......................... oil, onion, tomatoes, herbs and spices. It's delicious.

## 4 Read and match.

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Hawawshi | a. is made with beans. |
| 2. Fatta | b. is made with beef or lamb. |
| 3. Sayadeya | c. has rice, bread and meat. |
| 4. Ful medames | d. has fish, tomatoes and onions. |

## 5 Choose the correct answer.

1. People don't eat fatta very .............. because it's difficult to digest.
   a) always b) every c) never d) often
2. I ...................................................................... recipes with family and friends.
   a) take b) play c) share d) give
3. We ...................................................................... eat ful medames with bread.
   a) always b) never c) last d) just
4. At Eid Al-Adha, we always eat ..............................................................
   a) sayadeya b) ful medames c) fatta d) fish
5. Press the bread .................. around the meat to make hawawshi.
   a) carefully b) quick c) easily d) slow
6. Grandma loves cooking and she cooks ..............................................
   a) good b) lazily c) badly d) well

## 6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words.

**Your favorite dish**

Guiding words:

( fatta - rice - bread - sauce - Eid Al-Adha - digest )

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

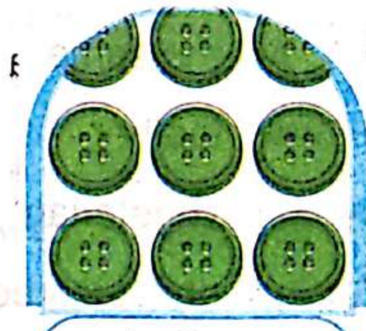


# Lesson (3) LANGUAGE

## Traditional Clothes ملابس تقليدية



T-shirt
تي شيرت



buttons
أزرار



linen
الكتان



galabeya
جلابية



hizam
حزام



sandals
صندل



jewelry
حُلي / مجوهرات

sleeve
كم

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.





## Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| kaftan | قفطان | Eid Al-Fitr | عيد الفطر |
| dress | فستان | striped | مقلم |
| skirt | تنورة (جيبة) | different | مختلف |
| warm | دافئ | the same | نفس الشيء |
| cool | معتدل البرودة | leather | جلد |
| loose | واسع - فضفاض | vegetarian | شخص نباتي |
| weekend | عطلة نهاية الأسبوع | dark colored clothes | ملابس داكنة اللون |

### Look and read.

- Sandals are a type of shoe. They are sometimes made of leather.

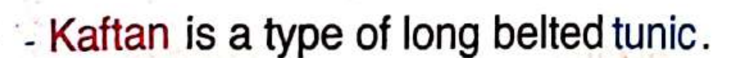


- Jewelry is a type of ornament. زينة

  It's usually made of gold. الذهب



- Kaftan is a type of long belted tunic.

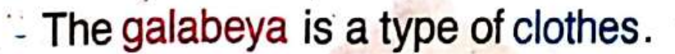


  It's always worn in Arab countries.



- The galabeya is a type of clothes.

  It has long sleeves.





- Linen keeps you cool.



- Many ancient Egyptians wore sandals made of leather.
- The ancient Egyptians wore white clothes.





Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



## Listen and read.

**Presenter:** Hello and welcome to Radio Now. What did people wear in the past, and what are they wearing now ? Today I'm talking to Dr Samir today about clothes in Egypt - Hello,Dr Samir!

أهلًا ومرحبًا بكم في «راديو الآن». ماذا كان يرتدي الناس في الماضي. وماذا يرتدون الآن؟ أتحدث اليوم مع دكتور سمير عن الملابس في مصر - مرحبًا، دكتور سمير!

**Dr Samir:** Hello!

مرحبًا!

**Presenter:** So, when we think about ancient Egyptian clothing, it's often quite simple, isn't it ?

عندما نفكر في الملابس المصرية القديمة، فغالبًا ما يكون الأمر بسيطًا للغاية، أليس كذلك؟

**Dr Samir:** Yes, that's right - we have lots of old paintings that show people wearing loose white linen. White is a good color to wear in hot weather, and loose linen clothes help to keep you cool.

نعم، هذا صحيح - لدينا الكثير من اللوحات القديمة التي تظهر أشخاصًا يرتدون الكتان الأبيض الفضفاض. يعتبر اللون الأبيض لونًا جيدًا للارتداء في الطقس الحار، كما تساعد الملابس الكتانية الفضفاضة على إبقائك معتدل الحرارة.

**Presenter:** I see - and what other things did people wear at that time?

أفهم ذلك - وما الأشياء الأخرى التي كان يرتديها الناس في ذلك الوقت؟

**Dr Samir:** Many ancient Egyptians wore sandals on their feet. These were made from leather. And they wore lots of jewelry, too. It was important to look beautiful.

ارتدى العديد من المصريين القدماء الصنادل في أقدامهم، وكانت مصنوعة من الجلد. وكانوا يرتدون الكثير من المجوهرات أيضًا. كان من المهم أن تبدو جميلًا.

**Presenter:** So how are things different today?

إذًا كيف تختلف الأمور اليوم؟

Help you child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

**Dr Samir** : Well there's a lot more color in traditional Egyptian clothing today, but many people still prefer loose clothing. In some parts of Egypt, it is traditional for men and women to wear the galabeya, which is long and loose, with long sleeves. Men sometimes wear a striped kaftan over this with a hizam, which is a colored sash around their body. Men and women also wear items on their heads such as scarves or different styles of hats. In some cities, though, men and women often wear more modern clothes, such as trousers and shirts, or dresses and skirts.

حسنًا، هناك الكثير من الألوان في الملابس المصرية التقليدية اليوم، لكن الكثير من الناس ما زالوا يفضلون الملابس الفضفاضة. وفي بعض مناطق مصر، من التقليدي أن يرتدي الرجال والنساء الجلابية، وهي طويلة وفضفاضة، ذات أكمام طويلة. يرتدي الرجال أحيانًا قفطانًا مخططًا فوقها مع حزام، وهو وشاح ملون حول أجسادهم. يرتدي الرجال والنساء أيضًا أشياء على رؤوسهم مثل الأوشحة أو أنماط مختلفة من القبعات. ومع ذلك، في بعض المدن، غالبًا ما يرتدي الرجال والنساء ملابس أكثر حداثة، مثل السراويل والقمصان، أو الفساتين والتنانير.

## Look and read.

This is Hana. Today she is wearing a blue dress. She usually wears a T-shirt and a skirt, but today is a special day. She is celebrating Eid Al-Fitr with her family.

هذه هنا. اليوم هي ترتدي فستان أزرق. هي عادةً ما ترتدي تي شيرت وتنورة (جيبة) لكن اليوم يوم مميز. فهي تحتفل بعيد الفطر مع عائلتها.

This is Adam. Today he is helping his mom make ful medames. They often eat meat but today they are making a vegetarian recipe.

هذا هو آدم. اليوم هو يساعد والدته في إعداد الفول المدمس. فهم غالبًا يأكلون اللحوم لكنهم اليوم يطهون وصفة نباتية



Help you child look and read.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ.

# Language

## The Present Simple and Present Continuous Tenses

زمن المضارع البسيط والمضارع المستمر

| Form<br>التكوين | Present Simple<br>المضارع البسيط | Present Continuous<br>المضارع المستمر |
|---|---|---|
| Usage<br>الاستخدام | It expresses something that is true, or that usually happens. | It expresses something that is happening now. |
| Affirmative<br>الإثبات | **I / We / You / They + inf.**<br>**He / She / It + inf. + s / es / ies**<br>- Men wear the galabeya. | **Subj. + am / is / are + v + ing**<br>- She is wearing a skirt. |
| Negative<br>النفي | **I / We / You / They + don't + inf.**<br>**He / She / It + doesn't + inf.**<br>- I don't wear a dress. | **Subj. + am / is / are + not + v + ing**<br>- She isn't playing tennis. |
| Question<br>السؤال | **Do / Does + subj. + inf.?**<br>- Do you wear a shirt?<br>- Yes, I do. | **Am / Is / Are + Subj. + v + ing?**<br>- Are you eating now?<br>- Yes, I'm. |
| | **QW + do / does + subj. + inf.?**<br>e.g. What do you wear on the weekend?<br>- I wear the a T-shirt. | **QW + am / is / are + Subj. + v + ing?**<br>e.g. What are they wearing now?<br>- They are wearing shirts. |
| Keywords<br>الكلمات الدالة | usually, always, often, never, every, sometimes | at the moment, Now!, Look!, Listen!, Watch out! |

Help your child compare the present simple and present continuous.

ساعد طفلك أن يقارن بين المضارع البسيط والمستمر












## 1 Choose the correct answer.

1. Today, I .................................................. to Dr Samir.
   a) talk  b) am talking  c) talks  d) talking
2. What are you .................................................. now?
   a) wear  b) wearing  c) wears  d) wore
3. We often .................................................. at home.
   a) help  b) are helping  c) helped  d) helps
4. .................................................. she waiting for the bus?
   a) Do  b) Does  c) Are  d) Is
5. I .................................................. ful medames in the morning.
   a) eat often  b) usually eats  c) often eat  d) eat usually

## 2 Read and complete with the correct verbs in brackets.

1. Today Hana .................................................. (wear) a blue dress.
2. Heba usually .................................................. (wear) a T-shirt and skirt.
3. Today .................................................. (be) a special day.
4. Mona .................................................. (celebrate) Eid Al-Fitr with her family.
5. Today Adam .................................................. (help) his mom make ful medames.
6. They often .................................................. (eats) meat.
7. Today they .................................................. (make) a vegetarian recipe.


Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

# Activities

## 1 | Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

dress - birthday - wearing - is

Nadia : Hello, Nour. What are you 1) .................................................?

Nour : I'm wearing a blue 2) .................................................................

Nadia : Why?

Nour : Because today 3) ........................................ a special day.

Nadia : What is it?

Nour : It's my grandma's 4) ........................................................

## 2 | Read and complete the sentences with the words from the box:

sleeves - white - cool - leather

1. Linen keeps you ............................................................. .
2. The galabeya has long ................................................... .
3. Sandals are made of .........................................................
4. The ancient Egyptians wore .......................................... clothes.

## 3 | Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. you - now - What - wearing - are - ?

....................................................................................................

2. prefer - clothes - Some - white - people - .

....................................................................................................

3. has - The galabeya - sleeves - long - .

....................................................................................................

4. favorite - my - Eid El-Fitr - is - festival - .

....................................................................................................

## 4 Choose the correct answer.

1. Hana ............ a blue dress today.
   a) wear b) wears c) is wearing d) wore
2. Adam always ............ his mom at home.
   a) help b) helps c) helping d) is helping
3. He ............ for the bus now.
   a) wait b) waited c) is waiting d) are waiting
4. Dad ............ me presents.
   a) give always b) give often
   c) gives always d) always gives
5. Today, we ............ Eid Al- Fitr.
   a) is celebrating b) celebrate
   c) celebrated d) are celebrating
6. He ............ eat meat.
   a) don't b) doesn't c) isn't d) aren't
7. What ............ wear to do sports?
   a) do you b) are you c) you are d) you do
8. We sometimes ............ fish and rice for dinner on Saturdays.
   a) having b) are having c) have d) has
9. Hello! ............ for the bus?
   a) Are you waiting b) You are waiting
   c) Do you wait d) Does he wait
10. The sun ............ in the morning.
    a) rise b) rises c) rising d) to rise


Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## 5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hana is wearing a blue dress. She usually wears a T- shirt and skirt, but today is a special day. She is celebrating Eid Al-Fitr with her family. Adam is helping his mom make ful medames. They often eat meat but today they are making a vegetarian recipe.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. They are celebrating .................................................. with family.
   a) Eid Al-Fitr b) spring c) birthday d) Eid Al-Adha
2. Adam's mom is making .................................................. today.
   a) fish b) ful medames c) fatta d) pizza

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What is Hana wearing today?

..................................................................................................

4. What type of recipe are they making?

..................................................................................................

## 6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words.

**Eid Al-Fitr**

Guiding words:

( special - celebrate - Ramadan - cookies - enjoy )

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................



# Lesson (4) WELCOME TO EGYPT



## Key vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| festival | احتفال | stew | خضار مطبوخ مع اللحم |
| sights | معالم | guests | ضيوف |
| host | مضيف | generous | كريم - سخي |



## Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| sunrise | شروق الشمس | cookies | كحك مُحَلّي |
| statue | تمثال | wife | زوجة |
| stuffed vegetables | خضراوات محشية | main temple | المعبد الرئيسي |
| friendly | ودود | visitor | زائر |
| dried salted fish | سمك مجفف ومملح | typical meal | وجبة نمطية |



## Famous statues

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Ra | الملك رع | Ramses II | رمسيس الثاني |
| Amun | تمثال آمون | Nefertari | الملكة نفرتاري |
| Hatshepsut | الملكة حتشبسوت | Ptah | الملك بتاح |



## Important expressions and prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| famous for | مشهور بـ | learn about | يتعلم عن |
| It's a good idea to | إنها فكرة جيدة أن | at sunrise | عند شروق الشمس |
| served with | تُقدم مع | write about | يكتب عن |
| give information for | يعطي معلومات لـ | ask for | يطلب |



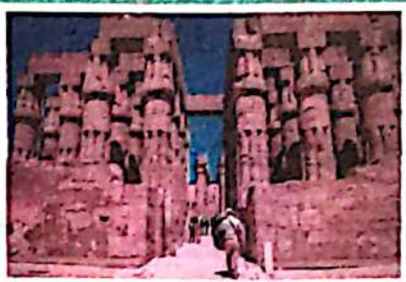
## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| invite | يدعو | invited | eat | يأكل | ate |
| camp | يعسكر | camped | meet | يقابل | met |
| serve | يقدم | served | come | يأتي | came |
| bake | يخبز | baked | bring | يحضر | brought |



Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Look and read.


Egypt is a fantastic country to visit! There is so much to see, such as the pyramids of Giza, the old Luxor Temple, the Red Sea, and of course the River Nile. In all parts of the country, you can see amazing sights, eat delicious food, and meet friendly people.

مصر بلد رائع للزيارة! هناك الكثير مما يمكن رؤيته، مثل أهرامات الجيزة ومعبد الأقصر القديم والبحر الأحمر وبالطبع نهر النيل. وفي جميع أنحاء البلاد، يمكنك رؤية مناظر مذهلة، وتناول الطعام اللذيذ، والتعرف على أشخاص ودودين.

Visitors often like to learn about Egyptian traditions before they come. Egyptian people are famous for welcoming visitors with food and drink, and for inviting guests to their home. If you are invited to an Egyptian family's home, it's a good idea to bring a present, for example chocolates or sweets. However, the host usually doesn't open the present at the time when they get it.

غالبًا ما يرغب الزوار في التعرف على التقاليد المصرية قبل قدومهم. يشتهر الشعب المصري باستقبال الزوار بالطعام والشراب، ودعوة الضيوف إلى منازلهم. إذا تمت دعوتك إلى منزل عائلة مصرية، فمن الجيد أن تحضر معك هدية، على سبيل المثال الشوكولاتة أو الحلويات. ومع ذلك، فإن المضيف عادةً لا يفتح الهدية في الوقت الذي يحصل فيه عليها.

A traditional Egyptian meal is served with people sitting together around a table. A typical meal has rice, a kind of vegetable stew, soup, stuffed vegetables and meat or chicken. Egyptians are very generous and are very happy when you ask for more food. This means you enjoyed their delicious meal! Some Egyptian festivals have traditional food, too. At Eid Al-Fitr, people bake special cookies called kahk, with sugar on top. At Sham El-Nessim, people eat dried salted fish, called fesikh. If you visit Egypt at these times, you should try these dishes!

يتم تقديم وجبة مصرية تقليدية مع أشخاص يجلسون معًا حول طاولة. تتكون الوجبة النمطية من الأرز، و نوع من الخضار المطهي ، والحساء، والخضروات المحشوة، واللحوم أو الدجاج. المصريون كرماء للغاية ويسعدون جدًا عندما تطلب المزيد من الطعام. هذا يعني أنك استمتعت بوجبتهم اللذيذة! بعض المهرجانات المصرية لها طعام تقليدي أيضًا. في عيد الفطر، يخبز الناس بسكويت خاص يسمى الكحك، مع السكر فوقه. وفي شم النسيم، يأكل الناس السمك المجفف المملح، الذي يسمى الفسيخ. إذا قمت بزيارة مصر في هذه الأوقات عليك تجربة هذه الأطباق!

Help you child look and read.
ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ.







## Look and read.

# The Abu Simbel Sun Festival



Near Aswan, you can see the temples of Abu Simbel. Outside the temples, there are some very big statues of Ramses II and his wife Nefertari. Twice a year, people celebrate the Abu Simbel Sun Festival there, on February 22nd and October 22nd. On these days, light from the sun at sunrise shines all the way inside the main temple, to the rooms inside.

بالقرب من أسوان يمكنك رؤية معابد أبو سمبل. يوجد خارج المعابد بعض التماثيل الكبيرة جدًا لرمسيس الثاني وزوجته نفرتاري. ويحتفل الناس هناك بمهرجان أبو سمبل للشمس مرتين في العام، يومي ٢٢ فبراير و٢٢ أكتوبر. في هذه الأيام، يشرق ضوء الشمس وقت شروق الشمس على طول الطريق داخل المعبد الرئيسي، إلى الغرف الموجودة بداخله.

There are four statues inside the temple: those of Ramses, Ra, Amun and Ptah. The sunlight shines on all of them except Ptah. He is always in the dark. People celebrate the Abu Simbel sun festival by getting up early to see the light inside the temple at sunrise. Then people eat, drink and sing to celebrate this special day.

ويوجد داخل المعبد أربعة تماثيل: تماثيل رمسيس ورع وآمون وبتاح. وتشرق الشمس عليهم جميعا ما عدا بتاح، هو دائمًا في الظلام. يحتفل الناس بعيد أبو سمبل للشمس من خلال الاستيقاظ مبكرًا لرؤية الضوء داخل المعبد عند شروق الشمس. ثم يأكل الناس ويشربون ويغنون للاحتفال بهذا اليوم المميز.

### Answer the following questions.

1. What places can you visit in Egypt?

2. How often do people celebrate the Abu Simbel Sun Festival?





Help your child learn about Egypt's traditions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن تقاليد مصر.

# Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and complete.

1. .................................... is a fantastic country to visit.
2. You can see amazing .................................... in Egypt.
3. Egyptians are very .................................... .
4. Some Egyptian festivals have .................................... food.

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

generous - typical - kahk - traditional

A traditional Egyptian meal is served with people sitting together around a table. A 1) .................... meal has rice, a kind of vegetable stew, soup, stuffed vegetables and meat or chicken. Egyptians are very 2) .................... and are very happy when you ask for more food. Some Egyptian festivals have 3) .................... food, too.

## 3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. is - a fantastic - Egypt - to - country - visit - .

....................................................................................................

2. temple - four - There - statues - are - inside - the - .

....................................................................................................

3. very - Egyptians - are - generous - .

....................................................................................................








## 4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Near Aswan, you can see the temples of Abu Simbel. Outside the temples, there are some very big statues of Ramses II and his wife Nefertari. Twice a year, people celebrate the Abu Simbel Sun Festival there, on February 22nd and October 22nd. On these days, light from the sun at sunrise shines all the way inside the main temple, to the rooms inside. There are four statues inside the temple: those of Ramses, Ra, Amun and Ptah. The sunlight shines on all of them except Ptah. He is always in the dark. People celebrate the Abu Simbel Sun Festival by getting up early to see the light inside the temple at sunrise.

### A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The temples of Abu Simbel are near ........................
   a) Giza b) Luxor c) Aswan d) Cairo
2. There are ........................ statues inside the temple.
   a) 44 b) 14 c) 4 d) 40

### B) Answer the following questions.

3. When do people celebrate the Abu Simbel Sun Festival?

........................................................................

4. Name the four statues inside the temple.

........................................................................

## 5 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words.

**Egypt**

Guiding words:

( visit - fantastic - traditional meals - kahk - fesikh - enjoy )

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.




# - CLIL: FABLES AND FOLKLORE
# - PROJECT

## Key vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| servant | خادم | successful | ناجح |
| shipwreck | حُطام السفينة | sailor | بحَّار |
| special | خاص - مُميَّز | folklore | تراث شعبي |

## Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| frightened | خائف | giant | عملاق |
| king | ملك | bright | لامع - مضيء |
| journey | رحلة | patient | صبور |
| island | جزيرة | imaginary | خيالي |
| waves | أمواج | gold | ذهب |
| snake | ثعبان | terrible | فظيع |
| storm | عاصفة | exciting | مثير |
| strong | قوي | conflict | صراع |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

### *Regular verbs* أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| look | ينظر | looked | laugh | يضحك | laughed |
| smile | يبتسم | smiled | need | يحتاج | needed |
| travel | يسافر | traveled | ask | يسأل | asked |
| solve | يحل | solved | prepare | يعد - يجهز | prepared |
| return | يعود | returned | stay | يبقى / يقيم | stayed |

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## *Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| tell | يخبر | told | leave | يغادر | left |
| come | يأتي | came | begin | يبدأ | began |
| fall | يسقط | fell | say | يقول | said |
| bring | يحضر | brought | speak | يتحدث | spoke |
| hear | يسمع | heard | go | يذهب | went |
| send | يرسل | sent | sink | يغرق | sank |

## Important expressions and prepositions ـيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| travel with | يسافر مع | listen to | ـتمع إلى |
| frightened about | خائف بشأن | went on a journey | ـهب في رحلة |
| speak to | يتحدث إلى | fell into | ـقط في |
| look for | يبحث عن | get to | ـل إلى |
| return to | يعود إلى | Be patient | ـن صبورًا |
| leave for | يغادر من أجل | on the island | ـي الجزيرة |
| decide to | يقرر أن | worried about | ـلق على |
| fall down | يسقط | go home | ـهب للمنزل |
| get home | يصل للمنزل | solve a problem | ـل مشكلة |
| try your best | تبذل أقصى جهدك | live with | ـيش مع |

## Did you know ?

Fables and folklore are types of stories that are passed down from one group of people to another group of people. They teach us a lesson or "moral", and are often about animals, plants or things that happen in nature. There are many stories from ancient Egypt.

ـاطير والتراث الشعبي هي أنواع من القصص التي تتوارثها مجموعة من الناس وتنقلها إلى مجموعة أخرى من الناس. إنهم يعلموننا ـسًا أو «مغزى أخلاقي». وغالبًا ما تحكى عن الحيوانات أو النباتات أو الأشياء التي تحدث في الطبيعة. هناك العديد من القصص من مصر ـديمة.



Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.





## Listen and read.

### The Tale of the Shipwrecked Sailor



"Long ago, the king asked an important man to leave Egypt for a special job. The man traveled with many other sailors, but he wasn't successful. When he returned, he was frightened about what the King would say. His servant spoke to him."You must tell the King that you tried your best", he said." I don't want to say that I was not successful", said the man. "Listen to my story," said the servant.
"I was a sailor, too. I went on a journey for the King with the best sailors in the country. But a storm came, and our ship sank. I fell into the sea, and swam to an island. I was alone and frightened. Then, I looked for food, and the island had food, water, and everything I needed.

«منذ زمن بعيد، طلب الملك من رجل مهم أن يغادر مصر من أجل مهمه خاصة. سافر الرجل مع العديد من البحارة الآخرين، لكنه لم ينجح. وعندما عاد كان خائفا مما سيقوله الملك. فتكلم معه خادمه قائلا: «يجب أن تخبر الملك إنك بذلت قصارى جهدك». قال الرجل: «لا أريد أن أقول إنني لم أكن ناجحًا». قال الخادم: «استمع إلى قصتي». «كنت بحارًا أيضًا. ذهبت في رحلة للملك مع أفضل البحارة في البلاد. ولكن جاءت عاصفة وغرقت سفينتنا. لقد سقطت في البحر، وسبحت إلى جزيرة. كنت وحيدا وخائفا. ثم بحثت عن الطعام، وكان في الجزيرة طعام وماء وكل شيء كنت بحاجة إليه.

" Another storm began. I saw a giant snake in the waves. His body was gold and his eyes were bright blue. I fell down as he spoke.
"How did you get to this island?" said the snake.
"I couldn't speak. The snake put me in his mouth and took me to the place where he lived. He asked me again how I got to the island, so I told him about the shipwreck.

«بدات عاصفة اخرى. رأيت ثعبانًا عملاقًا وسط الأمواج. كان جسده ذهبيًا وعيناه زرقاء لامعة. لقد سقطت بينما كان يتحدث. قال الثعبان «كيف وصلت إلى هذه الجزيرة؟»
«لم أستطع التحدث. وضعني الثعبان في فمه وأخذني إلى المكان الذي يعيش فيه. سألني مرة أخرى كيف وصلت إلى الجزيرة، فأخبرته عن غرق السفينة.

Help your child read a traditional fable.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ قصة تقليدية ذات مغزى.







"Don't be frightened," said the snake. "You'll stay on the island for four months, and you'll be safe. Then people will find you and take you home. Be patient, and you'll return to your family."
Then the snake told me what happened to him.
"Long ago, I lived on the island with my children and brothers. A star fell, bringing a terrible fire. I was the only one to live. But I stayed strong and patient, and things became better."
"Thank you," I said. "When I get home, I will send you many presents." The snake laughed. "I don't need your presents. I h[ave] everything I need here."

[قال الث]عبان: «لا تخف». «ستبقى في الجزيرة لمدة أربعة أشهر، وستكون آمنًا. ثم سيجدك الناس ويأخذونك إلى المنزل. وستعود إلى أهلك». ثم أخبرني الثعبان بما حدث له. «منذ زمن طويل، عشت في الجزيرة مع أطفالي وإخوتي. سقط [نجم] مما أدى إلى حريق رهيب. كنت الوحيد الذي يعيش. لكنني بقيت قوياً وصبوراً، وأصبحت الأمور أفضل". قلت: «شكرًا، عندما أعود إلى المنزل، سأرسل لك العديد من الهدايا.» ضحك الثعبان. «لست بحاجة إلى الهدايا الخاصة بك، لدي [كل ما أ]حتاجه هنا.»

"I was on the island for four months, then a ship came, just as [the] snake said. The snake gave me special presents to take hom[e]. "Tell people in your city about me," he said.
"I returned to my family, gave the presents to the King, and he w[as] pleased. So listen to my story. I was in a terrible place, but now [I'm] safe." The man heard the story, and smiled.

[م]كثت في الجزيرة أربعة أشهر، ثم جاءت سفينة، كما قال الثعبان لقد أعطاني الثعبان هدايا خاصة لآخذها إلى المنزل. «حدث عني الناس في مدينتك». «عدت إلى أهلي وقدمت الهدايا للملك ففرح. لذا استمع إلى قصتي. لقد كنت في [مكان] رهيب، لكني الآن آمن". سمع الرجل القصة وابتسم.

## A good story has
القصة الجيدة تحتوي على

- شخصيات ← characters: people, animals or imaginary things.
- مكان ← setting: where the story happens.
- حبكة درامية ← a plot: exciting events that join together.
- صراع ← conflict: a problem that the characters have to solve.
- حل - قرار ← Resolution: when the problem is solved and the story ends.



Help your child read a traditional fable.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ قصة تقليدية ذات مغزى



# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer.

1. The man traveled ........................ many other sailors.
   a) at b) with c) by d) on
2. I went on a journey ........................ the king with the best sailors.
   a) at b) by c) about d) for
3. I was on the island for four months but unfortunately there was a ........................ . I was very scared.
   a) snake b) shipwreck c) rock d) stone
4. I looked ........................ the food everywhere but I didn't find it.
   a) at b) in c) for d) by
5. A ........................ is where the story happens.
   a) setting b) conflict c) resolution d) plot

## 2 Read and match.

1. Setting is
2. Plot is
3. I'm frightened
4. I was on the island

a) for four months.
b) of snakes.
c) where the story happens.
d) exciting events that join together.

## 3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. a giant - I - saw - waves - in - snake - the - .

........................................................................

2. send - will - I - presents - you - many - .

........................................................................

3. long - was - How - the servant - island - the - on - ?

........................................................................

## 4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Long ago, the King asked an important man to leave Egypt fo special job. The man traveled with many other sailors, but he wa successful. When he returned, he was frightened about what the K would say. His servant spoke to him. "You must tell the King that y tried your best," he said.

"I don't want to say that I was not successful," said the man.

"Listen to my story," said the servant. "I was a sailor, too. I went a journey for the King with the best sailors in the country. But sto came, and our ship sank. I fell into the sea, and swam to an island was alone and frightened.

### A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The .................. asked the man to leave Egypt for a special j
   a) Prince b) Boy c) King d) Queen
2. The man was .............................. and he was frighten
   a) happy b) interested c) alone d) lonely

### B) Answer the following questions.

3. What happened to the ship and the man?

...........................................................................

4. With whom did the man go?

...........................................................................

## 5 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words.

**A tale of sailor**

Guiding words:

( food - sank - journey - sea )

...........................................................................

...........................................................................



Help your child deal with such questions.
أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



# Review on Unit (8)

## Festivals

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sham El-Nessim | شم النسيم | celebration | احتفال |
| prayer | صلاة - دعاء | sunset | غروب الشمس |
| fairgrounds | ساحات الألعاب (ملاهي) | sacrifice | يضحي |
| come up | تشرق | feast | وليمة |
| dark colored clothes | ملابس داكنة اللون | celebrate | يحتفل |
| Eid Al-Adha | عيد الأضحى | creation | خلق |
| Hajj pilgrimage | الحج | sunrise | شروق الشمس |
| Coptic Easter | عيد الفصح القبطي | lantern | فانوس |

## Recipes

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| recipes | وصفات (للطعام) | ful medames | فول مدمس | beans | فول |
| fatta | فتة | hawawshi | حواوشي | herbs | أعشاب |
| sayadeya | سمك صيادية | spices | بهارات/ توابل | bread | خبز |
| garlic | ثوم | olive oil | زيت زيتون | vinegar | خل |

## Clothes

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| buttons | أزرار | kaftan | قفطان | linen | كتان (قماش) |
| jewelry | حلي | short | قصير | sleeves | أكمام |
| hizam | حزام | loose | فضفاض/ واسع | galabeya | جلابية |
| wear (wore) | يرتدي | long | طويل | sandals | صندل |

## Fables and folklore

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| shipwreck | حطام السفينة | servant | خادم | patient | صبور |
| successful | ناجح | sailor | بحار | special | مميز |

Help your child revise unit (8).
ساعد طفلك على مراجعة الوحدة الثامنة.









# Language

## The Present Simple and Present Continuous Tenses

زمن المضارع البسيط والمضارع المستمر

| Form<br>التكوين | Present Simple<br>المضارع البسيط | Present Continuous<br>المضارع المستمر |
|---|---|---|
| Usage<br>الاستخدام | It expresses something that is true, or that usually happens. | It expresses something that is happening now. |
| Affirmative<br>الإثبات | I / We / You / They + inf.<br>He / She / It + inf. + s / es / ies<br>- Men wear the galabeya. | Subj. + am / is / are + v + in<br>- She is wearing a skirt. |
| Negative<br>النفي | I / We / You / They + don't + inf.<br>He / She / It + doesn't + inf.<br>- I don't wear a dress. | Subj. + am/is/ are + not + v + i<br>- She isn't playing tennis. |
| Question<br>السؤال | Do / Does + subj. + inf.?<br>- Do you wear a shirt?<br>- Yes, I do. | Am / Is / Are + Subj. + v + ing?<br>- Are you eating now?<br>- Yes, I'm. |
| | QW + do / does + subj. + inf.?<br>e.g. What do you wear on the weekend?<br>- I wear the a T-shirt. | QW + am/is/ are + Subj. + v + i<br>e.g. What are they now?<br>- They are wearing shirts |
| Keywords<br>الكلمات الدالة | usually, always, often, never, every, sometimes | at the moment, Now!, Look!, Listen!, Watch out! |





Help your child revise unit (8).

ساعد طفلك على مراجعة الوحدة الثامنة.






## Eid Al-Adha

Eid Al-Adha usually lasts for four days. It's during the month of Zu Elhijja. Many people sacrifice a sheep and eat some of its meat. They have a dish called fatta. We wear our best clothes and visit our family and friends.

## Ful Medames

Ful medames is my favorite meal. We use beans cooked with lemon juice, garlic, onion and herbs. It never has any meat in it .We always eat it with bread. I eat it every day .

## Sham El-Nessim

I love celebrating Sham El-Nessim with my family. It is in spring. The ancient Egyptians also celebrated it, as a festival of creation and new life. It is always on the same day as Coptic Easter Monday. Because it is the start of spring, the weather is usually sunny and warm. We eat different traditional food like boiled eggs and fesikh.

## Egypt

Egypt is a fantastic country to visit. There is so much to see, such as the Pyramids of Giza, the old Luxor Temple, the Red Sea, and of course the River Nile. In all parts of the country, you can see amazing sights, eat delicious food, and meet friendly people.

Help your child write paragraphs.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرات.





# Activities on Unit (8)



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My favorite festival is ..........
   a) Sham El-Nessim   b) Eid Al-Fitr
   c) Christmas   d) Eid Al-Adha
2. In Sham El-Nessim we paint and decorate ..........
   a) meat   b) fruits   c) eggs   d) vegetables
3. We eat .......... at Eid Al-Fi
   a) kunafa   b) salted fish   c) kahk   d) koshari
4. At Eid Al-Adha we eat ..........
   a) fish   b) lentil   c) koshari   d) fatta

## 2 Listen and complete.

1. The .......... asked an important man to leave Egyp
2. The man traveled with many ..........
3. The man wasn't ..........
4. The man was .......... when he returne

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

Pyramids - the Red Sea - the Nile - Egypt

I think 1).......... is a great place to visit. You can visit the 2).......... of Giza, the library in Alexandria, or the beautiful temple of Hatshepsut in the Valley of the Kings. There are so ma things to see. It's a fantastic place to have a holiday. You can ta a boat trip down 3).......... or go camping in the desert or you can go diving in 4).......... .


Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## 4 | Read the following text and answer the questions.

Eid Al-Adha usually lasts for four days, and it is a very important Islamic festival. It celebrates the time when Ibrahim listened to God in a dream. At Eid Al-Adha, many people sacrifice a sheep and eat some of its meat in a traditional dish called fatta. We give out meat to our family and friends. During Eid Al-Adha, we go to the mosque for prayers and we are grateful for all the good things in our lives. We wear our best clothes for the celebrations and we have a feast together. Eid Al-Adha is during the month of Zu Elhijja when Muslims go to the Hajj pilgrimage.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. Eid Al-Adha lasts for ........................................ days.
   a) four b) fourteen c) five d) forty
2. Muslims go to the ........................................ for prayers.
   a) zoo b) park c) mosque d) school

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What is the general idea of the text?........................................
4. What do Muslims sacrifice at Eid Al-Adha? ........................................

## 5 The Reader

### A | Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. It's hot on the roof today. ☐
2. Eagle landed in a nest on top of the neighbour's building. ☐

### B | Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

3. The ........................................ is so beautiful.
   a) seagull b) eagle c) chick d) chicken
4. Amir and Grandma hang up the ........................................
   a) bottles b) clothes c) dishes d) bags

## 6 | Choose the correct answer.

1. Dina .................... a book of Egyptian fables in her bedroom no
   a) is reading b) read c) reading d) are reading
2. Fares .................................................. in an apartment near the coa
   a) living b) lives c) live d) are living
3. Look at these! I ............................ some eggs for Sham El-Nessi
   a) paints b) paint c) painted d) am paintin
4. The children usually ........... games in the park on the weeker
   a) play b) playing c) plays d) are playin

## 7 | Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. never - any - Ful medames - has - in - meat - it - .

.......................................................................................................................

2. are - you - What - today - wearing - ?

.......................................................................................................................

## 8 | Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words.

Your favorite dish

Guiding words:

( Ful medames - bread - lemon juice - onion - meat - delicious

.......................................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................................


Help your child deal with such questions.
طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



# Unit 9 Our culture

## In this unit the student will ...

- read about their cultural heritage.
- read a story about cultural artifacts.
- revise past simple verbs.
- form and use past continuous verbs.
- listen to information about tourism and archaeology.
- learn about and draw bar charts.
- write notes for an object in a museum.
- write a report about an archaeological site.



# Lesson (1) WHAT IS HERITAGE?



## Key vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| identity | هوية | heritage | تراث | civilization | حضارة |
| temple | معبد | archaeologist | عالم آثار | site | موقع أثري |
| agriculture | الزراعة | calendar | تقويم | culture | ثقافة |



## Extra vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| country | بلد / دولة | food | طعام | unique | فريد من نوعه |
| object | شيء | important | هام | fertile | خصب |
| interesting | شيق | dancing | رقص | crops | محاصيل |
| historian | مؤرخ | soil | تربة | museum | متحف |
| system | نظام | growth | نمو/نماء | farming | الزراعة |
| field | حقل | amazing | مذهل | monuments | آثار |



## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

***Regular verbs*** أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| include | يتضمن | included |
| explore | يستكشف | explored |
| store | يخزن | stored |
| flood | يفيض | flooded |
| develop | يطور | developed |
| farm | يزرع | farmed |

***Irregular verbs*** أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| come | يأتي | came |
| build | يبني | built |
| know | يعرف | knew |
| lead to | يؤدي إلى | led to |
| grow | يزرع / ينمو | grew |
| cut | يقطع | cut |



Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| their own heritage | تراثهم الخاص | ancient Egypt | مصر القديمة |
| lead to | يؤدي إلى | come from | يأتي من |
| learn about | يتعلم عن | interested in | مهتم بـ |
| used to | اعتاد أن | connect to | يرتبط بـ |
| find out | يكتشف | full of | مملوء بـ |
| proud of | فخور بـ | good for | صالح لـ / جيد لـ |

## Places

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Abu Simbel Temple | معبد أبو سمبل | Luxor | الأقصر |
| The Nile | نهر النيل | Giza | الجيزة |

## Definitions

| | |
|---|---|
| **site** | an interesting place, for example where an old town or building used to be موقع أثري |
| **civilization** | a large group of people who have their unique art, music, science, etc. حضارة |
| **heritage** | is what people in a country have done تراث |

## Did you know ?



The Rosetta Stone is a special object that helped people understand hieroglyphics. It had the same words in two other languages that people could read, so they used these to translate the hieroglyphics! This is one of the ways we have learned about life in ancient Egypt.

حجر رشيد هو شيء مميز. ساعد الناس على فهم الكتابة الهيروغليفية. كان يحتوي على نفس الكلمات بلغتين آخرين. يمكن للناس قراءتها لذلك استخدموها لترجمة الهيروغليفية! هذه إحدى الطرق التي عرفنا بها الحياة في مصر القديمة.

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.









## Listen and read.

### My heritage



A country's heritage is an important part of its identity. All countries have their own heritage, and it comes from its history and traditions. Heritage includes art, buildings, and objects from the past, or things lik food, music, and dancing. People in ancient Egypt built man amazing temples and monuments, and this is an important part o our heritage. They also developed agriculture and some of the firs calendars.

ث أي بلد هو جزء مهم من هويته. كل الدول لها تراثها الخاص، وهو يأتي من تاريخها وتقاليدها. يشمل التراث
ن والمباني والأشياء من الماضي، أو أشياء مثل الطعام والموسيقى والرقص. لقد بنى الناس في مصر القديمة
ديد من المعابد والآثار الرائعة، وهذا جزء مهم من تراثنا. كما قاموا بتطوير الزراعة وبعض التقاويم الأولى.

Archaeologists have learned lots of interesting things about th civilization of ancient Egypt by exploring historical sites at place like Abu Simbel, Luxor and Giza. I'm very interested in Egypt heritage and I enjoy learning about it. I visit museums with m parents to learn about the things people did in the past. For exampl did you know that the ancient Egyptians were one of the firs civilizations to develop a system of writing? I'm very proud of m heritage.

تعلم علماء الآثار الكثير من الأشياء المثيرة للاهتمام حول حضارة مصر القديمة من خلال استكشاف المواقع
ريخية في أماكن مثل أبو سمبل والأقصر والجيزة. أنا مهتم جدًا بتراث مصر وأستمتع بالتعرف عليه. أقوم
ارة المتاحف مع والدي للتعرف على الأشياء التي فعلها الناس في الماضي. على سبيل المثال، هل تعلم أن
ماء المصريين كانوا من أوائل الحضارات التي طورت نظام الكتابة؟ أنا فخور جدًا بتراثي.



Help your child read about cultural heritage.
طفلك أن يقرأ عن التراث الثقافي.

## Listen and read.

### How did farmers use the Nile?

كيف استخدم المزارعون النيل؟

Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's heritage, too. The Nile used to flood every year, making the soil more fertile. This is why ancient Egyptians could farm the land and it led to
a growth in civilization. There were three seasons of farming in ancient Egypt, which were all connected to the Nile.
These were:

تعتبر الزراعة جزءًا مهمًا من تراث مصر أيضًا. وكان نهر النيل يفيض كل عام، مما يجعل التربة أكثر خصوبة. ولهذا السبب تمكن المصريون القدماء من زراعة الأرض وأدى ذلك إلى نمو الحضارة. كانت هناك ثلاثة مواسم للزراعة في مصر القديمة، وكانت جميعها مرتبطة بنهر النيل. وهذه الفصول هى:



**The flooding season:** from June to September. The fields were full of water for four months.

موسم الفيضان: من يونيو حتى سبتمبر: الحقول تمتلئ بالمياه لمدة أربعة أشهر.

**The growing season:** from October to February. The water went away and the soil was rich and fertile. Farmers planted Lots of different crops.

موسم الزراعة: من أكتوبر حتى فبراير: المياه تجف وتصبح التربة غنية وخصبة. يقوم المزارعون بزراعة الكثير من المحاصيل المختلفة.

**The harvesting season:** from March to May. Farmers cut the crops and stored them safely before the Nile flooded again.

موسم الحصاد: من مارس حتى مايو: يقوموا المزارعون بحصد المحاصيل وتخزينها بأمان قبل فيضان النيل مرة أخرى.

Help your child read about our cultural heritage.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن التراث الثقافي.





## 1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

history - past - identity - heritage

Omar : What do you know about a country's 1) .................................?

Ali : It's an important part of its 2).................................

Omar : Where does a heritage come from?

Ali : It comes from a country's 3) ......................... and traditions

Omar : What does a heritage include?

Ali : It includes art , buildings and objects from the 4).....................

## 2 Choose the correct answer.

1. A country's heritage is an important part of its .............................
   a) subject b) sport c) identity d) land
2. People in ancient Egypt built many amazing .............................
   a) temples b) towers c) factories d) hotels
3. People in ............................ Egypt developed lots of new things
   a) far b) proud c) ancient d) high
4. ............................ want to find out how people used to live
   a) Farmers b) Teachers c) Archaeologists d) Vets
5. A ......... is an interesting place where an old building used to be
   a) season b) site c) calendar d) city
6. We use a ............ to see what day, month or time of year it is
   a) calendar b) heritage c) temple d) book
7. ........ is a large group of people who have their unique art,music,etc
   a) Heritage b) Site c) Civilization d) Season



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



8. Historians are interested in ................................ of ancient Egypt.
   a) crops  b) goats  c) monuments  d) seasons
9. The fields were full of water in the ................................ season.
   a) flooding  b) growing  c) harvesting  d) watering
10. Farmers cut the crops and stored them in the ................ season.
   a) growing  b) flooding  c) harvesting  d) cutting
11. The Nile used to flood every year making the soil ................ .
   a) bad  b) fertile  c) dry  d) deep
12. There were three ................................ of farming in ancient Egypt.
   a) months  b) days  c) seasons  d) weeks
13. Farmers planted a lot of ................................................................ .
   a) pumps  b) towers  c) crops  d) temples
14. Farming in ancient Egypt led to a ................................ in civilization.
   a) length  b) width  c) growth  d) depth

## 3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. have - heritage - All - own - their - countries - .

................................................................................................

2. museum - my - I - visited - parents - with - the - .

................................................................................................

3. do - in - What - grow - Egypt - farmers - ?

................................................................................................

4. in - heritage - Are - you - Egypt's - interested - ?

................................................................................................

## 4 Read and match.

1. All countries have — a) in Egypt's heritage.
2. Ancient Egyptians built — b) you like to visit?
3. I'm very interested — c) their own heritage.
4. Which sites would — d) many amazing temples.

## 5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's heritage. The Nile used to flood every year, making the soil more fertile. This is why ancient Egyptians could farm the land and it led to a growth in civilization. There were three seasons of farming in ancient Egypt,which were all connected to the Nile. These were:

- The flooding season when the fields were full of water.
- The growing season when farmers planted lots of different crops.
- The harvesting season when farmers cut and stored the crops safely.

### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The Nile used to .................................................. every year
   a) flood b) dry c) drink d) break
2. There were ..................... seasons of farming in ancient Egypt
   a) two b) three c) four d) five

### B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the main idea of the text?

..........................................................................................................

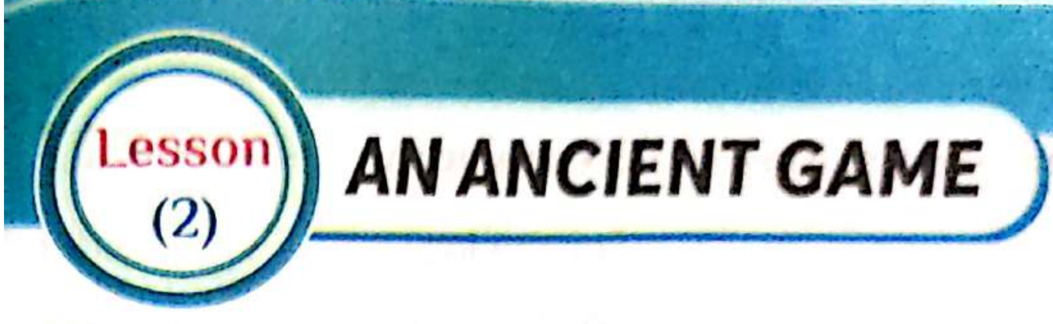
4. What were the seasons of farming in ancient Egypt?

..........................................................................................................



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.




## Key vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| counters | بيادق (مثل قطع الشطرنج) | artifacts | مصنوعات يدوية |
| senet game | لعبة السينيت | ordinary | عادي |

## Extra vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| goats | ماعز | happily | بسعادة | tired | متعب / مُرهق |
| hill | تل | cookies | بسكويت / كعك | desert | صحراء |
| squares | مربعات | rich | غني | information | معلومات |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

***Regular verbs*** أفعال منتظمة | ***Irregular verbs*** أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| wave | يلوح | waved | see | يرى | saw |
| move | ينتقل / يتحرك | moved | find | يجد | found |
| wonder | يتساءل | wondered | make | يصنع | made |
| walk | يمشي | walked | sit | يجلس | sat |
| carry | يحمل | carried | take | يأخذ | took |
| invent | يخترع | invented | say | يقول | said |
| paint | يلون | painted | have | يملك | had |
| want | يريد | wanted | fly | يطير | flew |
| visit | يزور | visited | read | يقرأ | read |

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.





## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| a hot day | يوم حار | on the top | على القمة |
| look happy | يبدو سعيدًا | on the side | على الجانب |
| look fun | يبدو ممتعًا | have to | يجب أن |
| Let's play. | هيا بنا نلعب. | walk away | يمشي بعيدًا |
| a long wooden box | صندوق خشبي طويل | in front of | أمام |
| look up | ينظر لأعلى | wave at | يلوح لـ |
| come home | يعود للمنزل | look after | يعتني بـ |
| take a photo | يلتقط صورة | like me | مثلي / يشبهني |
| Quick! | أسرع! | read about | يقرأ عن |

## Ordering sentences in a story ترتيب الجمل في قصة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1- First | أولًا | 3- Then | بعد ذلك |
| 2- Next | التالي | 4- Finally | في النهاية |



## Model

First, Sara read some information in a museum brochure (كتيب - منشور). Next, she wanted to find out more. Then, she turned on her phone. Finally, she found some interesting information about Queen Nefertari.

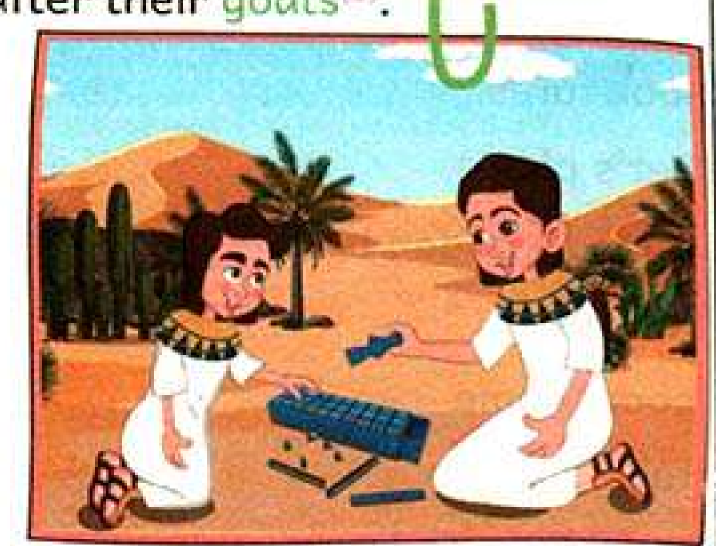
## Did you know?



Senet لعب السينيت is the world's oldest board game لعبة لوحية. Archaeologists found a senet game in Tutankhamun's tomb مقبرة توت عنخ آمون!

Unit (9) Lesson (2)

## Read the story. What did Sara see in the museum?



Akil often helped his dad look after their goats[1]. One day, he was sitting under a tree. It was a hot day, and he was tired. Then he saw his friend Ottah, and waved at him. Ottah was carrying a bag, and he looked happy when he saw Akil.
"Look, Akil! my dad made me a game!" He showed Akil a long wooden box with squares[2] on the top. The box had beautiful pictures on the side. Next, he took out some counters from his bag. Seven were tall, and seven were short. "That looks fun! What do we have to do?" said Akil "We have to move the counters and see how far we can move. The winner[3] is the first to get all their counters off the board. Let's play!" Ottah and Akil played happily under the tree. Then Akil looked up. "Oh no!" he said. "Ottah, where are my goats?" Ottah and Akil looked around. The goats were walking away over a small hill[4]. "Look, there they are!" Akil said. "Quick! We have to get them!"

1. ماعز 2. مربعات 3. فائز 4. تل

## Answer the following.

1) What was the weather like that day?

.............................................................................................................

2) Where were the goats walking?

.............................................................................................................





Help your child read about an ancient Egyptian game.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن لعبة مصرية قديمة



Sara was in the museum with her mom and dad. They were looking at Egyptian artifacts. There were lots of very old things and Sara was reading the information about each object. Finally, Sara stopped in front of a long wooden box.

كانت سارة في المتحف مع والدتها وأبيها. وكانوا ينظرون إلى الآثار المصرية. كان هناك الكثير من الأشياء القديمة جدًا وكانت سارة تقرأ المعلومات المتعلقة بكل قطعة. وأخيرًا، توقفت سارة أمام صندوق خشبي طويل.

"Mom, Dad, look at this!" she said. "What is it?" asked Dad.
It looks like an old senet game, said Mom.
"Look. The information says that it's 3,500 years old," said Sara.
That's amazing! I wonder who used to play with it.
Archaeologists found it in the desert near Luxor.
"It says here that lots of people used to play senet: rich people and ordinary people."said Mom.
"Maybe children like me played with this game!" said Sara.

قالت «أمي، أبي، انظرا إلى هذا!». سأل أبي «ما هذا؟».
قالت أمي: إنها تبدو وكأنها لعبة سينيت قديمة.
وقالت سارة: «أنظروا. المعلومات تقول أن عمرها ٣٥٠٠ عام». هذا مذهل! مَن كان يلعب بها.
عثر عليه علماء الآثار في الصحراء بالقرب من الأقصر.
قالت أمي: «يُقال هنا أن الكثير من الناس كانوا يلعبون السينيت: الأغنياء والناس العاديون».
قالت سارة «ربما لعب الأطفال مثلي بهذه اللعبة!»

## - Put (True) or (False).

1. Sara was in the club. (   )
2. Sara stopped in front of a golden box. (   )
3. The artifacts of ancient Egypt are very old. (   )



Help your child read about an ancient Egyptian game.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن لعبة مصرية قديمة.




## Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

### Form التكوين

**The second form of the verb**

★ يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل (أي بإضافة d, ed, ied للفعل المنتظم وغير المنتظم يحفظ)

e.g. I visited Luxor last week.

e.g. They saw the lion at the zoo.

### Usage الاستخدام

★ يستخدم للتعبير عن فعل حدث و انتهى في الماضي.

e.g. I went to school late yesterday.

### Negative النفي

**Subject + didn't + inf. ...**

e.g. We didn't watch TV yesterday.

### Question السؤال

#### Yes/No question

**Did + subject + inf. ...?**

e.g. Did Dalia find her book? - Yes, she did. - No, she didn't.

#### Wh-question

**QW + did + subject + inf. ....... ?**

e.g. Where did you go yesterday? - I went to the zoo.

### Keywords الكلمات الدالة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| yesterday | أمس | last (week, month,.....) | (الأسبوع، الشهر،...) الماضي |
| ago | منذ | in the past | في الماضي |



Help your child learn the past simple tense.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم زمن الماضي البسيط.





# Verb to "be" in th past

## Form التكوين

**I / He / She / It / Singular noun + was .......**

e.g. Akil was happy.

**We / You / They / Plural noun + were .......**

e.g. Akil and Ottah were happy.

## Negative النفي

**I / He / She / It / Singular noun + was not ......**

e.g. She wasn't at school yesterday.

**We / You / They / Plural noun + were not ......**

e.g. They weren't at the museum last week.

## Question السؤال

### Yes/No question

**(Was / Were) + subject + باقي الجملة?**

e.g. Was she happy in New York? - Yes, she was.

e.g. Were they at the park yesterday? - No, they weren't.

### Wh-question

**Q.W + (was / were) + subject + باقي الجملة?**

e.g. How was your trip? - It was nice.

e.g. Where were they yesterday? - They were at school.



Help your child learn the past simple tense.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم زمن الماضي البسيط.

# The Past Continuous

## زمن الماضي المستمر

### Form التكوين

**I / He / She / It / Singular noun + was + v + ing**

e.g. He was sitting under a tree.

**We / You / They / Plural noun + were + v + ing**

e.g. Akil and Ottah were playing the senet game.

### Usage الاستخدام

★ يستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرًا في وقت محدد في الماضي:

e.g. They were having dinner yesterday evening.

### Negative النفي

**I / He / She / It / Singular noun + was not + v + ing**

e.g. Ali was not sleeping at 5 p.m yesterday.

**We / You / They / Plural noun + were not + v + ing**

e.g. We were not watching TV yesterday morning.

### Question السؤال

#### Yes/No question

**(Was / Were) + subject + v + ing?**

e.g. Were they playing tennis?

- Yes, they were. - No, they weren't.

#### Wh-question

**Q.W + (was / were) + subject + v + ing?**

e.g. What were you doing at 4 p.m yesterday?

- I was watching TV.

Help your child learn the past continuous.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم زمن الماضي المستمر.








**Keywords** الكلمات الدالة

yesterday morning | yesterday evening
at 3 a.m yesterday

**لاحظ:**

حدث كان مستمرًا ولكن قطعه حدث آخر فجأة.

**Past continuous + when + Past simple**

e.g. The archaeologist was digging when she found an old box.

**When + past simple + past continuous**

e.g. When the archaeologist found an old box, she was digging.

## Choose the correct answer.

1. She .................... studying English yesterday evening.
   a) is  b) has  c) was  d) am
2. They .................... making cakes at 10 yesterday.
   a) were  b) are  c) is  d) was
3. What .................... the weather like yesterday?
   a) was  b) is  c) has  d) were
4. We were digging .................... we found an old box.
   a) as  b) so  c) when  d) to
5. Where .................... you born?
   a) am  b) is  c) was  d) were


Help your child learn the past continuous.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم زمن الماضي المستمر.

# Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Khufu is famous for building the .................................... Pyramid.
   a) Small b) Step c) Short d) Great
2. The statue shows the pharaoh sitting on a ....................................
   a) table b) chair c) throne d) box
3. Khufu built the solar ....................................
   a) boat b) ship c) raft d) canoe
4. Khufu's pyramid is found in ....................................
   a) Sohag b) Giza c) Cairo d) Luxor

## 2 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box:

**old - museum - did - senet**

Salem : Hi, Mazin. Where 1) .................... you go yesterday?
Mazin : I went to the 2) ....................................
Salem : What did you see there?
Mazin : I saw an old 3) .................................... game.
Salem : How 4) .................................... was it?
Mazin : It was 3,500 year old.

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**tree - tired - waved - goats**

Akil often helped his dad look after their 1) .................... .One day, he was sitting under a 2) .................... . It was a hot day, and he was 3) .................... .Then he saw his friend Ottah, and 4) .................... at him. Ottah was carrying a bag, and he looked happy when he saw Akil.

## 4 Choose the correct answer.

1. The children .................................................. a game.
   a) was playing b) plays c) were playing d) playing
2. The archaeologist ........................ when she found an old box.
   a) was digging b) dug c) were digging d) have dug
3. I ........................................ in the library when I saw Fares.
   a) was studying b) studies c) were studying d) will study
4. Dina and Yasmin ........................................ a museum.
   a) was visiting b) visiting c) were visiting d) visits
5. Adam ........................ cookies when his dad came home.
   a) was making b) make c) were making d) will make
6. We ........................ photos of the bird when it flew away.
   a) was taking b) takes c) were taking d) will take
7. Sara ........................................ in the museum yesterday.
   a) is b) was c) were d) has
8. Akil and Ottah ................................................ happy.
   a) were b) is c) have d) was
9. Farmers keep ........................................ in their fields
   a) elephants b) goats c) tigers d) lions
10. The ................ is the first to get all their counters off the board
    a) loser b) winner c) lazy d) liner

11. Rich and .................................... people used to play senet.

    a) ordinary  b) wealthy  c) lazy  d) bad

12. Sara was looking at the Egyptian ........................ in the museum.

    a) facts  b) artifacts  c) mobiles  d) pools

13. Senet is the world's oldest .......................................... game.

    a) field  b) board  c) sports  d) pool

## 5 Read and match.

1. First I did homework,  (a) oldest board game.
2. I was walking home  (b) front of a wooden box.
3. Senet is the world's  (c) then I slept.
4. Sara stopped in  (d) when I saw Ali.

1- (  )  2- (  )  3- (  )  4- (  )

## 6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. reading - information - Sara - some - was - .

.......................................................................................................

2. walking - The goats - away - the - hill - were - over - .

.......................................................................................................

3. sitting - a tree - He - under - was - .

.......................................................................................................

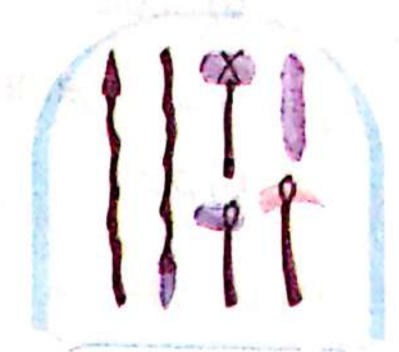
4. the - boys - What - doing - were - ?

.......................................................................................................




# TOURISM AND ARCHAEOLOGY

## Listen and repeat.



tools
أدوات



vase
زهرية



mask
قناع



cruise
جولة نيلية



structures
مباني



carve
ينحت



perfume
عطر



pottery
أواني فخارية



engravings
نقوش





Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| tourism | السياحة | builders | عمال بناء |
| archaeology | علم الآثار | clay | صلصال |
| pyramids | الأهرامات | simpler | أبسط |
| temples | معابد | port | ميناء |
| incredible | لا يصدق / هائل | paintings | لوحات |
| famous | مشهور | huge | ضخم |
| special | خاص / مميز | popular | شعبي / محبوب |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

*Regular verbs* أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| protect | يحمي | protected |
| decorate | يزين | decorated |
| visit | يزور | visited |

*Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| think | يعتقد | thought |
| hold | يمسك / يحفظ | held |
| tell | يخبر | told |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| all over the world | في جميع أنحاء العالم | because of | بسبب |
| The capital city | العاصمة | a piece of stone | قطعة حجر |

## Famous places أماكن مشهورة

| | |
|---|---|
| The Step Pyramid of Djoser | هرم زوسر المدرج |
| The Temple of Karnak | معبد الكرنك |
| The Valley of the Kings | وادي الملوك |
| The Roman Theater | المسرح الروماني |
| Qaitbay Citadel | قلعة قايتباي |
| The Library of Alexandria | مكتبة الإسكندرية |
| Siwa Oasis | واحة سيوة |

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.





## Look and read about: Where can you see engravings?

Lots of people visit Egypt every year because of the amazing archaeological sites. Tourists want to see the large monuments, pyramids, and temples. It is incredible to think that ancient Egyptians were building these amazing structures over 4,000 years ago, when civilizations in other countries were much simpler. Archaeologists have found lots of artifacts such as tools, pottery, vases, and masks. These can tell us about how people lived in ancient Egypt. For example, we know that ancient Egyptians used lots of pottery. They made pottery vases from clay, and they sometimes decorated them. They used them to hold water and food. They also made small pots for oil or perfume. So, what are some of the most popular sites that tourists want to visit?

يزور الكثير من الناس مصر كل عام بسبب المواقع الأثرية المذهلة. يرغب السياح في رؤية الآثار الكبيرة والأهرامات والمعابد. ومن غير المعقول الاعتقاد بأن المصريين القدماء كانوا يبنون هذه المباني المذهلة منذ أكثر من ٤٠٠٠ عام، عندما كانت الحضارات في البلدان الأخرى أبسط بكثير. وقد عثر علماء الآثار على الكثير من القطع الأثرية مثل الأدوات والفخاريات والمزهريات والأقنعة. يمكن أن يخبرنا هذا عن كيفية حياة الناس في مصر القديمة. على سبيل المثال، نحن نعلم أن المصريين القدماء استخدموا الكثير من الفخار. وكانوا يصنعون مزهريات فخارية من الصلصال، وكانوا يزينونها أحياناً. لقد استخدموها لحمل الماء والطعام. كما صنعوا أوعية صغيرة للزيت أو العطر. إذن، ما هي بعض المواقع الأكثر شعبية التي يرغب السياح في زيارتها؟

### Giza



Sometimes when people think about Egypt, they think of the Pyramids and the Sphinx at Giza. They are famous all over the world. Archaeologists think that the ancient Egyptians built the Sphinx to protect the Pyramids. They carved it from one huge piece of stone.

الجيزة: في بعض الأحيان عندما يفكر الناس في مصر، فإنهم يفكرون في الأهرامات وأبو الهول في الجيزة. إنهم مشهورون في جميع أنحاء العالم. ويعتقد علماء الآثار أن المصريين القدماء بنوا تمثال أبو الهول لحماية الأهرامات. لقد نحتوه من قطعة واحدة ضخمة من الحجر.



Help your child read about tourism and archaeology.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن السياحة و الآثار.



## Saqqara



This is one of the biggest sites in Egypt. It has many tombs, including one of the oldest pyramids in Egypt. Builders made this for King Djoser in about 2630 BCE. It is the Step Pyramid, and it is one of the oldest stone monuments.

سقارة : هي من أكبر المواقع في مصر. وبها العديد من المقابر، ومن بينها أحد أقدم الأهرامات في مصر. وقد بناه البناؤون للملك زوسر في حوالي عام ٢٦٣٠ قبل الميلاد. وهو الهرم المدرج، وهو من أقدم الآثار الحجرية.

## Alexandria



There are lots of things to see in this port city,including a Roman theatre, the old town, and Qaitbay Citadel. Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt. It had the first Library of Alexandria, which is famous all over the world.

الإسكندرية: هناك الكثير من الأشياء التي يمكن رؤيتها في هذه المدينة الساحلية، بما في ذلك المسرح الروماني والبلدة القديمة وقلعة قايتباي. كانت الإسكندرية عاصمة مصر. وبها مكتبة الإسكندرية الأولى التي اشتهرت في جميع أنحاء العالم.

## Luxor



Many tourists visit Luxor from a Nile River cruise. They can see the Temple of Karnak and Valley of the Kings. Ancient Egyptians buried their kings and queens here for thousands of years. You can see lots of paintings and engravings in the temples. There are lots of other amazing things to see in Egypt. What would you like to visit?

الأقصر: يزور العديد من السياح مدينة الأقصر من خلال رحلة نهرية في نهر النيل. يمكنهم رؤية معبد الكرنك ووادي الملوك. دفن المصريون القدماء ملوكهم وملكاتهم في الأقصر منذ آلاف السنين. يمكنك رؤية الكثير من اللوحات والنقوش في المعابد. هناك الكثير من الأشياء المدهشة الأخرى التي يمكنك رؤيتها في مصر. ماذا تحب أن تزور؟

Help your child read about tourism and archaeology. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن السياحة و الآثار.







## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Saqqara site has many ............................................................ .
   a) tombs  b) masks  c) vases  d) balls
2. ............................................................ built Saqqara for King Djoser.
   a) Teachers  b) Builders  c) Doctors  d) Vets
3. Saqqara Pyramid was built in about .............................................. BCE.
   a) 2630  b) 2640  c) 2650  d) 2660
4. Saqqara Pyramid is one of the oldest ......................... monuments.
   a) sand  b) glass  c) wooden  d) stone

## 2 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box:

carved - Pyramids - tourists - Giza

Mona : Where do you live?
Noha : I live in 1) ............................................................ .
Mona : Why do 2) ............................................................ visit Giza?
Noha : To see the 3) ............................................................ .
Mona : How did the ancient Egyptians build the Sphinx?
Noha : They 4) ............................... it from one huge piece of stone.

## 3 Choose the correct answer.

1. Tourists visit Egypt to see the large ............................................ .
   a) pictures  b) clubs  c) monuments  d) ships
2. Archaeologists have found lots of artifacts such as ....................... .
   a) balls  b) pottery  c) tablets  d) looms


Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3. The ancient Egyptians made pottery vases from .................................

a) wood   b) glass   c) clay   d) stones

4. The ancient Egyptians used pottery vases to .... water and food.

a) hold   b) make   c) protect   d) cut

5. The ancient Egyptians used .................................. to smell good.

a) salt   b) oil   c) perfume   d) water

6. The ancient Egyptians built the Sphinx to ................ the Pyramids.

a) visit   b) hold   c) protect   d) break

7. They .................................. the Sphinx from one huge piece of stone.

a) built   b) carved   c) visited   d) cut

8. Saqqara is one of the biggest .................................. in Egypt.

a) sites   b) ports   c) temples   d) cruises

9. Alexandria was the .................................. city of Egypt.

a) capital   b) club   c) port   d) library

10. Many tourists visit Luxor from a Nile River ..................................

a) taxi   b) truck   c) cruise   d) car

## 4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. tourists - Luxor - How - many - travel - to - do - ?

..................................................................................................

2. Luxor - of - Karnak - in - The - is - Temple - .

..................................................................................................

3. Egyptians - lots - pottery - Ancient - of - used - .

..................................................................................................

## 5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Lots of people visit Egypt every year because of the amazing archaeological sites. Tourists want to see the large monuments, pyramids, and temples. It is incredible to think that ancient Egyptians were building these amazing structures over 4,000 years ago, when civilizations in other countries were much simpler. Archaeologists have found lots of artifacts such as tools, pottery,vases, and masks. These can tell us about how people lived in ancient Egypt. For example, we know that ancient Egyptians used lots of pottery. They sometimes decorated them. They used them to hold water and food. They also made small pots for oil or perfume.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Ancient Egyptians made pottery .................................. from clay.
   a) vases  b) cups  c) pens  d) books
2. Ancient Egyptians made small pots for oil or.................................. .
   a) milk  b) perfume  c) water  d) juice

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. Why do a lot of people visit Egypt every year? ..................................
4. What have archaeologists found? ..................................

## 6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words.

Guiding words: **Luxor**

( tourists - Temple of Karnak - Valley of the Kings )

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

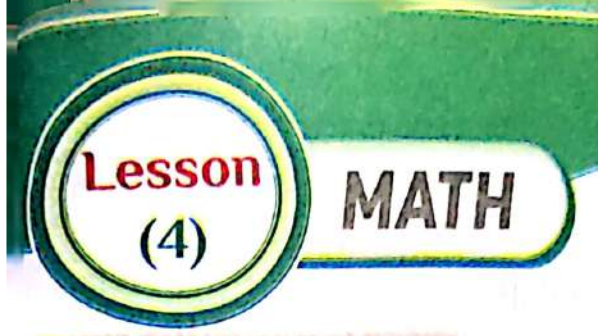
..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.




## Key vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| bar chart | تمثيل بياني بالأعمدة | exhibition | معرض |
| horizontal | أفقي | x-axis | محور السين |
| vertical | رأسي | y-axis | محور الصاد |

## Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| project | مشروع | paper | ورق |
| room | حجرة | visitors | زوار |
| different | مختلف | ruler | مسطرة |
| popular | مشهور | number | رقم |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

***Regular verbs*** أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| design | يصمم | designed |
| plan | يخطط | planned |
| use | يستخدم | used |

***Irregular verbs*** أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| show | يعرض | showed |
| put | يضع | put |
| let | يدع / يسمح | let |

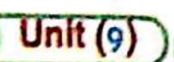
## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| months **of** the year | شهور السنة | days **of** the week | أيام الأسبوع |
| Let me think. | دعني أفكر. | go **up** | يصعد لأعلى - يرتفع |
| International Museum Day | | | اليوم العالمي للمتاحف |

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.









## Remember

| | |
|---|---|
| The line that goes across is (horizontal) | أفقي |
| It is called the (x-axis) | محور السين |
| The line that goes up is (vertical) | رأسي |
| It is called the (y-axis) | محور الصاد |

## Listen and read.

Adam was doing his school project. "This is a really interesting project, Mom!" he said.

"What do you have to do?" she asked.

"We're learning about International Museum Day. We have to design a new museum and say what is in it. There are many different exhibitions that show different things, and we have to show which is the most popular exhibition."

"OK, so what are you going to put in your museum?" Mom asked.

"Let me think," said Adam. "Maybe a room about art, and one about games. Can you help me to plan it?"

"OK! Let's get your paper, colored pens and a ruler!" said Mom.

كان آدم يقوم بمشروعه المدرسي. قال آدم «هذا مشروع مثير للاهتمام حقًا يا أمي!» .

قالت الأم «ماذا يجب عليك أن تفعل؟»

«نحن نتعلم عن اليوم العالمي للمتاحف. علينا أن نصمم متحفًا جديدًا ونقول ما بداخله. هناك العديد من المعارض المختلفة التي تعرض أشياء مختلفة، وعلينا أن نبين المعرض الأكثر شعبية.

قالت الأم «حسنًا، ما الذي ستضعه في متحفك؟»

قال آدم: «دعني أفكر». «ربما حجرة للفن، وأخرى للألعاب. هل يمكنك مساعدتي في التخطيط لذلك؟»

قالت الأم «نعم! هيا بنا نحضر ورقتك وألوانك والمسطرة!»





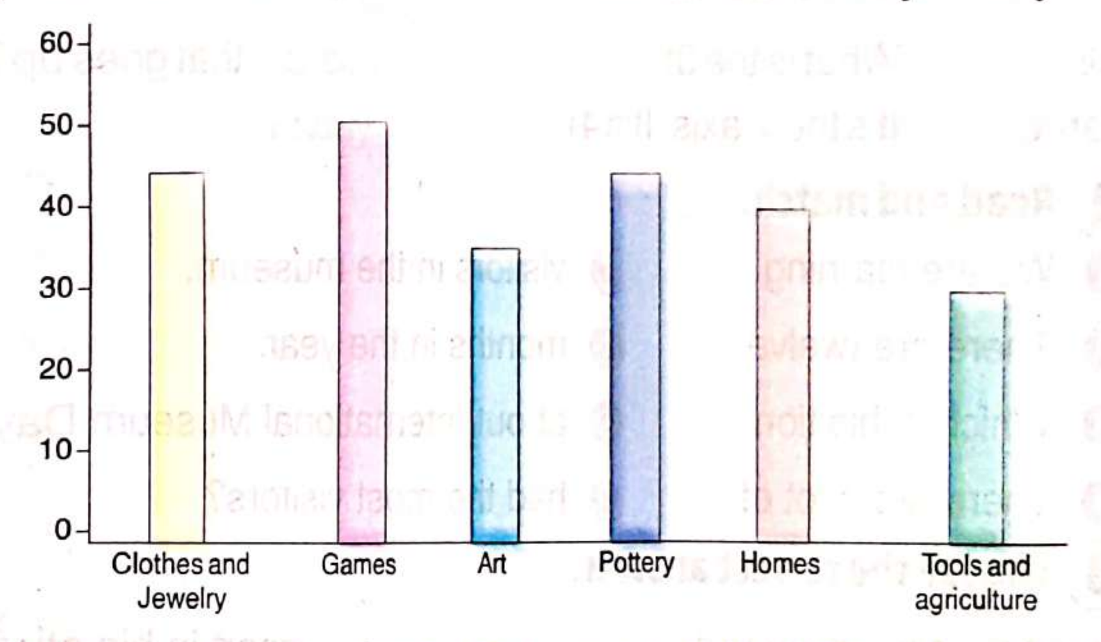
Help your child to listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.



## Listen and read.

Adam wanted to show the most popular exhibition in his museum. He used a bar chart to show how many people visited the exhibitions. The line across the bottom is called the x-axis. It is horizontal. The x-axis here shows the different exhibitions. The y-axis is the line that goes up. It is vertical. The y-axis here shows the number of visitors on one day in July.




أراد آدم أن يعرض المعرض الأكثر شعبية في متحفه. استخدم مخططًا شريطيًا لإظهار عدد الأشخاص الذين زاروا المعارض. الخط الموجود في الأسفل يسمى المحور السيني، إنه أفقي. يُظهر المحور السيني هنا المعارض المختلفة. المحور صاد هو الخط الذي يرتفع. إنه عمودي. يوضح المحور ص هنا عدد الزوار في يوم واحد من شهر يوليو.

## Answer the following questions.

1. What do we call the line that goes across the bottom?

..........................................................................................

2. What do we call the line that goes up?

..........................................................................................

Help your child learn about and draw bar charts. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم ويرسم التمثيل البياني بالأعمدة.







## 1 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box:

across - line - vertical - chart

Ali : Do you know how to use a bar 1) ................................ ?

Tamer : Yes, I do.

Ali : What is the line that goes 2) ..................... the bottom?

Tamer : It's horizontal.

Ali : What is the 3) ...................................... that goes up?

Tamer : It's the y-axis. It's 4) ......................................................... .

## 2 Read and match.

1. We are learning
2. There are twelve
3. Which exhibition
4. There are a lot of

a) visitors in the museum.
b) months in the year.
c) about International Museum Day.
d) had the most visitors?

## 3 Choose the correct answer.

1. Adam always uses a ...................................... chart in his study.
   a) pear b) bear c) bar d) wall
2. The line that goes across is ..........................................................
   a) horizontal b) column c) columnar d) vertical
3. The horizontal line is called the ....................................................
   a) y-axis b) z-axis c) u-axis d) x-axis
4. The line that goes up is ....................................................................
   a) columnar b) horizontal c) column d) vertical

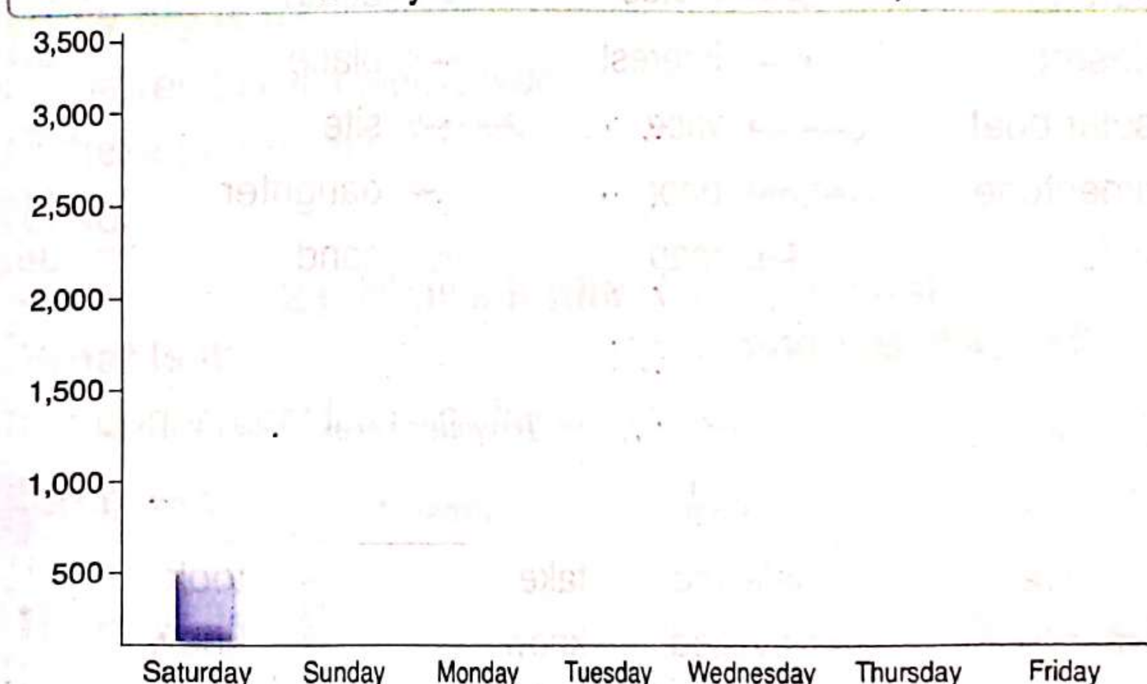

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



## 4 Here are the numbers of visitors to the zoo in a week.

**Complete the bar chart in the space below.**

| Day | Visitors |
|---|---|
| Saturday | 500 |
| Sunday | 3,000 |
| Monday | 3,500 |
| Tuesday | 3,000 |
| Wednesday | 2,000 |
| Thursday | 500 |
| Friday | 1,500 |




## 5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. get - paper - and - pens - Let's - your - .

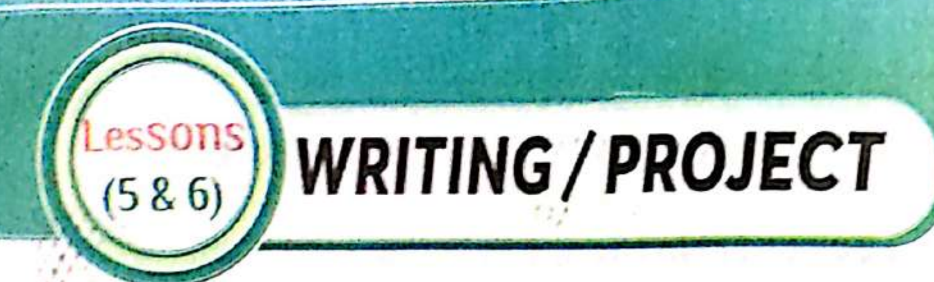
.......................................................................................................

2. you - to - do - What - have - do - ?

.......................................................................................................








## Key vocabulary — Listen and repeat.

| | |
|---|---|
| Statue of Amenhotep III | تمثال أمنحوتب الثالث |
| Pharaoh Khufu's solar boat | مركب الشمس للفرعون خوفو |
| Tutankhamun's mask | قناع توت عنخ آمون |
| The Grand Egyptian Museum | المتحف المصري الكبير |

## Extra vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| person | شخص | statue | تمثال | death | الموت |
| desert | صحراء | interest | اهتمام | place | مكان |
| solar boat | قارب شمسي | wide | واسع - عريض | site | موقع |
| limestone | الحجر الجيري | poor | فقير | daughter | ابنة |
| wife | زوجة | map | خريطة | sand | رمل |



## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

*Regular verbs* أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| believe | يؤمن | believed |
| travel | يسافر | travelled |
| belong | ينتمي | belonged |

*Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| take | يأخذ | took |
| know | يعرف | knew |
| write | يكتب | wrote |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| gold mask | قناع ذهبي | an amazing site | موقع مذهل |
| Statue of Bastet | تمثال باستيت | famous for | مشهور بـ |
| belong to | ينتمي إلى | made of | مصنوع من |
| look for | يبحث عن | wooden boat | مركب خشبي |





Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Read the fact files and learn.

### 1) Statue of Amenhotep III



**What is it?**

the statue of Amenhotep III, his wife Tiye and their three daughters



**How old is it?**

about 3,400 years old

**What is it made of?**

limestone

**How big is it?**

7 metres tall, 4,4 meters wide

**Where is it from?**

Luxor

### 2) Pharaoh Khufu's solar boat

**What is it?**

a wooden boat found in Pharoah Khufu's tomb

**How old is it?**

about 4,600 years old

**What is it made of?**

wood

**How big is it?**

42 meters long

**Where is it from?**

Giza

Help your child write notes for an object in a museum. ساعد طفلك أن يكتب ملاحظات عن شيئ في متحف.

## 3) Tutankhamun's Mask

**What is it?**

a gold mask

**How old is it?**

over 3,000 years old

**What is it made of?**

gold

**How big is it?**

54 cm tall

**Where is it from?**

The Valley of the Kings




The Grand Egyptian Museum has more than 5,000 items that belonged to the Pharoah Tutankhamun.

يضم المتحف المصري الكبير أكثر من 5,000 قطعة كانت تخص الفرعون توت عنخ آمون.




1) When you give information, you often have to answer questions such as Who, What, When, Where, and How.

عند تقديم معلومات، يجب أن نجيب على أسئلة تبدأ بأدوات الاستفهام التالية (مَن - ماذا - متى - أين - كيف).

2) You give facts, not opinions. Facts can include names, dates, and places.

تقوم بتقديم حقائق وليس آراء، والحقائق يمكن أن تتضمن (أسماء - تواريخ - أماكن)

3) Then you can add more interest by giving extra information. This might not answer a Wh- question, but it is something that people might want to know.

ثم تضيف عنصر التشويق بمزيد من المعلومات. وليس من الضروري أن يكون إجابة سؤال يبدأ بأداة استفهام ولكن ربما يكون شيء يريد أن يعرفه الناس.



Help your child write notes for an object in a museum.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب ملاحظات عن شيء في متحف.





## Model

### The Statue of Bastet



The statue of Bastet is 30 centimetres tall.

It's 2,500 years old. It's made of limestone.

It was found in Alexandria. It looks like a nice cat.

It's an amazing statue.

يبلغ طول تمثال باستت 30 سم. عمره 2,500 سنة. إنه مصنوع من الحجر الجيري. تم العثور عليه في الإسكندرية. يبدو وكأنه قطة لطيفة. إنه تمثال مذهل.



## Write a short paragraph about:

**Tutankhamun's mask**

..........................................................................

..........................................................................

..........................................................................

..........................................................................

..........................................................................

..........................................................................

## Read and learn.

### A newspaper report about an archaeological site

عند كتابة تقرير صحفي عن موقع أثري يجب أن يتضمن وقت اكتشافه، ومكانه وماذا وجد علماء الآثار ومدى أهميته

Archaeologists were working in the desert when they found an amazing site in 2010. This is a very old city and nobody knew about it. They found a lot of old artifacts. It's a very important site because tourists can visit it.

كان علماء الآثار يعملون في الصحراء عندما عثروا على موقع مذهل في عام 2010. هذه مدينة قديمة جدًا ولم يكن أحد يعلم عنها. لقد وجدوا الكثير من القطع الأثرية القديمة. إنه موقع مهم للغاية لأنه يمكن للسياح زيارته.

Help your child learn how to give written information. ساعد طفلك أن يقدم معلومات مكتوبة.

# Activities

## 1 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box:

old - made - limestone - information

Aya : Do you know any 1) ......... about the Statue of Amenhotep III

Sara : Yes, I do.

Aya : How 2) .............................................................. is i

Sara : It's about 3,400 years old.

Aya : What's it 3) .............................................................. o

Sara : It's made of 4) ..............................................................

## 2 Read and match.

| | |
|---|---|
| 1) Tutankhamun's mask | a) found in a port city. |
| 2) Where is it from? | b) has more than 5,000 items. |
| 3) This stone was | c) is made of gold. |
| 4) The Grand Egyptian Museum | d) It's from Giza. |

## 3 Choose the correct answer.

1) This statue is about 3,400 years ..............................

a) old b) wide c) long d) high

2) This statue is .............................. of limestone.

a) make b) made c) making d) makes

3) The solar boat is 42 meters ..............................

a) long b) tall c) deep d) far

4) Ancient Egyptians ......... that they would come back after death.

a) stayed b) wanted c) believed d) took



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5. This gold mask belonged .................................. Tutankhamun.

a) to b) in c) with d) of

6. I was working in the ............ when I saw something in the sand.

a) river b) desert c) sea d) pool

7. They used an old .............................. to look for an ancient city.

a) book b) map c) pen d) ruler

8. We were looking ............ old artifacts when we found a temple.

a) to b) of c) for d) up

9. Where is it ................................................? - Giza.

a) on b) of c) after d) from

10. Khufu is famous ......................... building the Great Pyramid.

a) in b) off c) for d) up

## 4 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words.

**Pharaoh Khufu's solar boat**

Guiding words:

( wooden boat - 4,600 years old - wood - 42 meters long )

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

# Review on Unit (9)

## Vocabulary

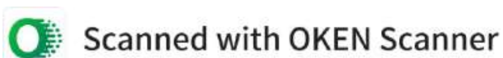
| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| cultural heritage | تراث ثقافي | agriculture | زراعة |
| identity | الهوية | ancient Egypt | مصر القديمة |
| horizontal | أفقي | archaeologist | عالم آثار |
| monuments | آثار | site | موقع أثري |
| temple | معبد | calendar | تقويم |
| civilization | حضارة | cruise | جولة نيلية |
| artifacts | مصنوعات يدوية | board game | لعبة لوحية |
| engravings | نقوش | bury | يدفن |
| mask | قناع | carve | ينحت |
| perfume | عطر | clay | صلصال |
| pottery | أواني فخارية | counter | بيدق (قطعة شطرنج) |
| tool | أداة يدوية | vase | زهرية |
| tourism | سياحة | irrigation | ريّ |
| archaeology | علم الآثار | flooding season | موسم الفيضان |
| limestone | حجر جيري | harvesting season | موسم الحصاد |
| tomb | مقبرة | growing season | موسم الزراعة |
| bar chart | تمثيل بياني بالأعمدة | vertical | رأسي |





Help your child revise unit (9).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة التاسعة.





## Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

### Form التكوين

**The second form of the verb**

✦ يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل (أي بإضافة d, ed, ied للفعل المنتظم وغير المنتظم يحفظ)

e.g. I visited Luxor last week.

e.g. They saw the lion at the zoo.

### Usage الاستخدام

✦ يستخدم للتعبير عن فعل حدث و انتهي في الماضي.

e.g. I went to school late yesterday.

### Negative النفي

**Subject + didn't + inf. ...**

e.g. We didn't watch TV yesterday.

### Question السؤال

#### Yes/No question

**Did + subject + inf. ...?**

e.g. Did Dalia find her book? - Yes, she did. - No, she didn't.

#### Wh-question

**QW + did + subject + inf. ....... ?**

e.g. Where did you go yesterday? - I went to the zoo.

### Keywords الكلمات الدالة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| yesterday | أمس | last (week, month,.....) | (الأسبوع، الشهر، ...) الماضي |
| ago | منذ | in the past | في الماضي |





# Verb to "be" in th past

## Form التكوين

**I / He / She / It / Singular noun + was .......**

e.g. Akil was happy.

**We / You / They / Plural noun + were .......**

e.g. Akil and Ottah were happy.

## Negative النفي

**I / He / She / It / Singular noun + was not ......**

e.g. She wasn't at school yesterday.

**We / You / They / Plural noun + were not ......**

e.g. They weren't at the museum last week.

## Question السؤال

### Yes/No question

**(Was / Were) + subject + باقي الجملة?**

e.g. Was she happy in New York? - Yes, she was.
e.g. Were they at the park yesterday? - No, they weren't.

### Wh-question

**Q.W + (was / were) + subject + باقي الجملة?**

e.g. How was your trip? - It was nice.
e.g. Where were they yesterday? - They were at school.





Help your child revise unit (9).
ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة التاسعة.

# The Past Continuous

زمن الماضي المستمر

## Form التكوين

**I / He / She / It / Singular noun + was + v + ing**

e.g. He was sitting under a tree.

**We / You / They / Plural noun + were + v + ing**

e.g. Akil and Ottah were playing the senet game.

## Usage الاستخدام

✦ يستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرًا في وقت محدد في الماضي:

e.g. They were having dinner yesterday evening.

## Negative النفي

**I / He / She / It / Singular noun + was not + v + ing**

e.g. Ali was not sleeping at 5 p.m yesterday.

**We / You / They / Plural noun + were not + v + ing**

e.g. We were not watching TV yesterday morning.

## Question السؤال

### Yes/No question

**(Was / Were) + subject + v + ing ?**

e.g. Were they playing tennis?

- Yes, they were. - No, they weren't.

### Wh-question

**Q.W + (was / were) + subject + v + ing ?**

e.g. What were you doing at 4 p.m yesterday?

- I was watching TV.

Help your child revise unit (9).
ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة التاسعة.








## Your country's heritage

A country's heritage is an important part of its identity. Egypt's heritage comes from its history and traditions. Heritage includes art, buildings and objects from the past. People in ancient Egypt built temples. They developed agriculture and some of the first calendars. Egypt is full of historical sites. I enjoy learning about our heritage.

## Farming in the past

Farming is very important in Egypt. It's an important part of its heritage. The Nile used to flood every year making the soil more fertile. There were three seasons of farming in ancient Egypt which were connected to the Nile. The flooding season when the field was full of water. The growing season when farmers planted crops then the harvesting season.

## Tourism

Lots of people visit Egypt every year because of its amazing archaeological sites. Tourists want to see the large monuments, temples, and pyramids. Archaeologists have found lots of artifacts such as tools, pottery, vases and masks. Tourists can visit the Pyramids and the Sphinx at Giza. They can see the Step Pyramid at Saqqara. They can visit Qaitbay Citadel in Alexandria.

## Artifacts in ancient Egypt

There are a lot of artifacts in ancient Egypt. For example the Pharaoh Khufu's solar boat. It's called a solar boat because ancient Egyptians believed that it would take the person across the skies after death. The statue of Amenhotep III is the largest statue of a family group. Tutankhamun's mask is very important, too.




Help your child write paragraphs.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرات.



# Activities on Unit (9)

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Lots of people visit Egypt every ............................................ .
   a) day  b) week  c) month  d) year
2. Egypt has ............................................ archaeological sites.
   a) good  b) nice  c) amazing  d) fine
3. Tourists want to see the large ............................................ .
   a) clubs  b) vases  c) monuments  d) tools
4. Archaeologists have found lots of ............................................ .
   a) artifacts  b) flowers  c) rulers  d) pens

## 2 Listen and complete.

1. The Pyramids and the Sphinx are at ............................................ .
2. The Pyramids are ............................................ all over the world.
3. The ancient Egyptians built the .......... to protect the pyramids.
4. The ancient Egyptians carved the Sphinx from one huge .......... .

## 3 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box:

Luxor - see - interesting - were

Sara : Where 1) ............................................ you last week?

Salma : I was on a cruise to 2) ............................................ .

Sara : What did you 3) ............................................ ?

Salma : I saw the Valley of the Kings.

Sara : Was it 4) ............................................ ?

Salma : Yes, it was very interesting.

## 4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Lots of people visit Egypt every year because of the amazing archaeological sites. Tourists want to see the large monuments, pyramids, and temples. Many tourists visit Luxor from a Nile River cruise. They can see the Temple of Karnak and the Valley of the Kings, Ancient Egyptians buried their kings and queens here for thousands of years. You can see lots of paintings and engravings in the temples. There are lots of other amazing things to see in Egypt.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. ........................................ want to see the large monuments in Egypt.
   a) doctors b) Tourists c) Carpenters d) Teachers
2. Many tourists visit Luxor from a ........................................ River cruise.
   a) Spring b) Lake c) Sea d) Nile

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What can tourists see in Luxor? ........................................................................
4. Where can you see engravings? ........................................................................

## 5 The Reader

**A | Read and write T (True) or F (False).**

1. The nature is beautiful. ( )
2. There was a bottle round the seagull's leg. ( )

**B | Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

3. Amir has a ........................................................................ on the table.
   a) tablet b) computer c) laptop d) cell phone
4. Amir was ........................................................................ about the seagull.
   a) happy b) delighted c) sad d) grateful



Help your child deal with such questions.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## 6 Choose the correct answer.

1. When did the .................................................. find this historical site?
   a) scientists b) vets c) archaeologists d) doctors
2. You can see lots of .................................................. in the temple.
   a) cows b) games c) engravings d) goats
3. Farmers in ancient Egypt planted crops in the ................. season.
   a) flooding b) cutting c) harvesting d) growing
4. Sara .................................................................. a senet game yesterday.
   a) see b) saw c) is seeing d) sees

## 7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. used - vases - water - They - hold - to - pottery - .

..............................................................................................................................

2. visiting - museum - the - were - We - .

..............................................................................................................................

3. are - monuments - Historians - interested - in - .

..............................................................................................................................

## 8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words.

**A visit to Alexandria**

Guiding words:

( port - Qaitbay Citadel - capital - Library of Alexandria )

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. In .................... we are having a meal in the evening at sunset.
   a) Ramadan b) Ragab c) Shabaan d) Shawwal
2. Last week my mom made ....................
   a) cake b) kunafa c) basbousa d) ice
3. I was helping my mum in the ....................
   a) living room b) hall c) kitchen d) bedroom
4. I dropped the .................... in the kitchen.
   a) salt b) water c) oil d) sugar

## 2 Listen and complete.

1. The world needs a lot of .................... .
2. Trees take carbon dioxide out of the .................... .
3. Sometimes people cut down trees and .................... .
4. People need to plant more .................... .

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

engravings- cruise - buried - Temple

Many tourists visit Luxor from a Nile River 1).................... . They can see the 2).................... of Karnak and the Valley of the Kings. Ancient Egyptians 3).................... their kings and queens here for thousands of years. You can see lots of paintings and 4).................... in the temples.



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## 4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Egypt is a fantastic country to visit! There is so much to see, such as the Pyramids of Giza, the old Luxor Temple, the Red Sea, and of course the River Nile. In all parts of the country, you can see amazing sights, eat delicious food, and meet friendly people. Visitors often like to learn about Egyptian traditions before they come. Egyptian people are famous for welcoming visitors with food and drink, and for inviting guests to their home. If you are invited to an Egyptian family's home, it's a good idea to bring a present, for example chocolates or sweets.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. .................................................................... is a fantastic country to visit.
   a) England b) France c) Egypt d) America
2. Visitors often like to learn about Egyptian .......... before they come.
   a) traditions b) cars c) books d) lands

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What are the Egyptian people famous for?.................................................
4. What places can tourists visit in Egypt?...................................................

## 5 The Reader

### A | Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Amir took a picture of the bird with his camera. ( )
2. Plastic bags harm the birds. ( )

### B | Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

3. People are using too much ................................................ every day.
   a) metal b) gold c) plastic d) paper
4. Women were carrying................................................................ bags.
   a) plastic b) cloth c) metal d) paper

## 6 Choose the correct answer.

1. Aya was happy today because she ........................ her aunt.
   a) visited b) visits c) will visit d) visiting
2. To ........................ is to go down under the water.
   a) sail b) port c) sink d) float
3. The children ........................ a game yesterday.
   a) play b) plays c) were playing d) played
4. Linen keeps you ........................ .
   a) cold b) cool c) warm d) frozen

## 7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. a fantastic - is - visit - Egypt - country - to - .

........................................................................

2. is - a machine - energy - make - A turbine - to - .

........................................................................

3. made - always - People - clay - from - vases - .

........................................................................

## 8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words.

**Agriculture**

Guiding words:

( important - heritage - fertile - civilization - seasons )

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................



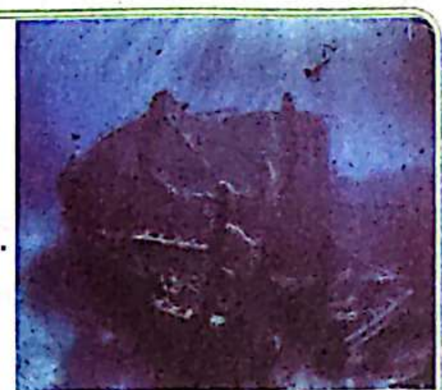
Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.




# Shipwrecks

## Look and read.



In 2021, archaeologists were working at a site under the Mediterranean Sea, near the north coast of Egypt. This site was the ancient city of Thônis-Heracleion. The archaeologists' modern technology helped them to see what was on the bottom of the sea. Under five meters of clay and bricks, they found a wooden ship. It was over 2,200 years old.

في عام 2021، كان علماء الآثار يعملون في موقع تحت البحر الأبيض المتوسط، بالقرب من الساحل الشمالي لمصر. كان هذا الموقع مدينة تونيس هرقليون القديمة. وقد ساعدتهم التكنولوجيا الحديثة التي استخدمها علماء الآثار على رؤية ما يوجد في قاع البحر. وتحت خمسة أمتار من الطين والطوب، وجدوا سفينة خشبية. كان عمرها أكثر من 2200 سنة.

Thônis-Heracleion was a very old city. In the fifth century BCE, it was a very important place for sailors and for people who bought and sold things. It was the largest port in Egypt before Alexandria. However, there were lots of natural disasters such as earthquakes and tsunamis at the time. About 1,200 years ago, in the eighth century CE, the city fell into the sea at Abu Qir Bay and disappeared. In 2001, archaeologists discovered the city. When they dived under the water, they found lots of interesting artifacts at the underwater site, including statues, pottery, and coins.

كانت تونيس هرقليون مدينة قديمة جدًا. وفي القرن الخامس قبل الميلاد، كان مكانًا مهمًا جدًا للبحارة وللأشخاص الذين كانوا يشترون ويبيعون الأشياء. وكانت أكبر ميناء في مصر قبل الإسكندرية. ومع ذلك، كان هناك الكثير من الكوارث الطبيعية مثل الزلازل والتسونامي في ذلك الوقت. وقبل حوالي 1200 عام، في القرن الثامن الميلادي، سقطت المدينة في البحر عند خليج أبو قير واختفت، وفي عام 2001 اكتشف علماء الآثار المدينة. وعندما غاصوا تحت الماء، عثروا على الكثير من القطع الأثرية المثيرة للاهتمام في الموقع تحت الماء، بما في ذلك التماثيل والفخار والعملات المعدنية.

Help your child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

The ship is the biggest and most exciting thing that they found there. Archaeologists often find things which are old and broken, but this ship was almost complete. Archaeologists think that the ship was waiting in the port next to the temple of Amun. An earthquake in about 140 BCE destroyed the temple. Bricks from the temple fell onto the boat, making it sink. The wooden ship was a very large rowing boat and it also had a large sail. It is about 25 meters long. It was a fast ship and it had a flat bottom, like ships that traveled on the Nile. It was similar to the style of some ships built in ancient Egypt, so archaeologists and historians are very excited by this discovery.

السفينة التي وُجدت هناك هي أكبر وأكثر الأشياء إثارة. غالبًا ما يعثر علماء الآثار على أشياء قديمة ومكسورة، لكن هذه السفينة كانت شبه مكتملة. ويعتقد علماء الآثار أن السفينة كانت تنتظر في الميناء المجاور لمعبد آمون. دمر زلزال حوالي عام 140 قبل الميلاد المعبد. وسقط الطوب من المعبد على القارب، مما أدى إلى غرقه. وكانت السفينة الخشبية عبارة عن قارب تجديف كبير جدًا، وكان لها أيضًا شراع كبير. ويبلغ طوله حوالي 25 مترا. وكانت سفينة سريعة، ولها قاع مسطح، مثل السفن التي تسير في النيل. وكان يشبه طراز بعض السفن التي بنيت في مصر القديمة، لذلك تحمس علماء الآثار والمؤرخون بشدة لهذا الاكتشاف.

## Listen and read.

The shipwreck in Abu Qir Bay is buried under clay and bricks, but you can see many other shipwrecks. The Red Sea has lots of places where divers can go down to wreck sites and explore ships under the water.

حطام السفينة في خليج أبو قير مدفون تحت الطين والطوب، ولكن يمكنك رؤية العديد من حطام السفن الأخرى. يضم البحر الأحمر الكثير من الأماكن التي يمكن للغواصين النزول إليها لمواقع حطام السفن واستكشاف السفن تحت الماء.





Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.



Lots of ships use the Red Sea, because it lies between Asia and Africa. It also allows ships to travel to Europe through the Suez Canal. However, there are storms, reefs, and strong currents in the Red Sea, which can make it dangerous. Sometimes,ships hit the reefs and sink.

وتستخدم الكثير من السفن البحر الأحمر لأنه يقع بين آسيا وأفريقيا. كما يسمح للسفن بالسفر إلى أوروبا عبر قناة السويس. ومع ذلك، هناك عواصف وشعاب وتيارات قوية في البحر الأحمر، مما قد يزيد من خطورة الأمر. في بعض الأحيان، تصطدم السفن بالشعاب المرجانية وتغرق.

One of the oldest shipwrecks in the Red Sea is the Carnatic. It sank in 1869 when it hit the Abu Nuhas reef. It has been under water for over 150 years and divers can explore the ship and see lots of sea animals. Another famous shipwreck is the Dunraven, which sank in 1876. There are large holes in the boat so divers can swim inside it.

واحدة من أقدم حطام السفن في البحر الأحمر هي سفينة كارناتيك. وغرقت عام 1869 عندما اصطدمت بشعاب أبو نحاس المرجانية. لقد ظلت تحت الماء لأكثر من 150 عامًا ويمكن للغواصين استكشاف السفينة ورؤية الكثير من الحيوانات البحرية. ومن حطام السفن الشهيرة الأخرى سفينة دونرافين، التي غرقت عام 1876. وهناك ثقوب كبيرة في القارب لذلك تمكن الغواصون من السباحة بداخله.

Because these ships have been under the water for a long time, they have become artificial reefs. They are homes for fish, turtles, dolphins, and other sea animals. Corals live on the metal surface and there are also lots of different kinds of plants.

ولأن هذه السفن ظلت تحت الماء لفترة طويلة، فقد تحولت إلى شعاب مرجانية صناعية. وهي موطن للأسماك والسلاحف والدلافين وغيرها من الحيوانات البحرية. تعيش الشعاب المرجانية على الأسطح المعدنية، وهناك أيضًا الكثير من أنواع النباتات المختلفة.

You have to be good at diving to visit a shipwreck, and you should go in a group. People come from all over the world to go wreck diving in the Red Sea and see the amazing sights!

عليك أن تكون جيدًا في الغوص لتتمكن من زيارة حطام السفينة، ويجب عليك الذهاب ضمن مجموعة. يأتي الناس من جميع أنحاء العالم للذهاب للغوص في البحر الأحمر ومشاهدة المناظر المذهلة!

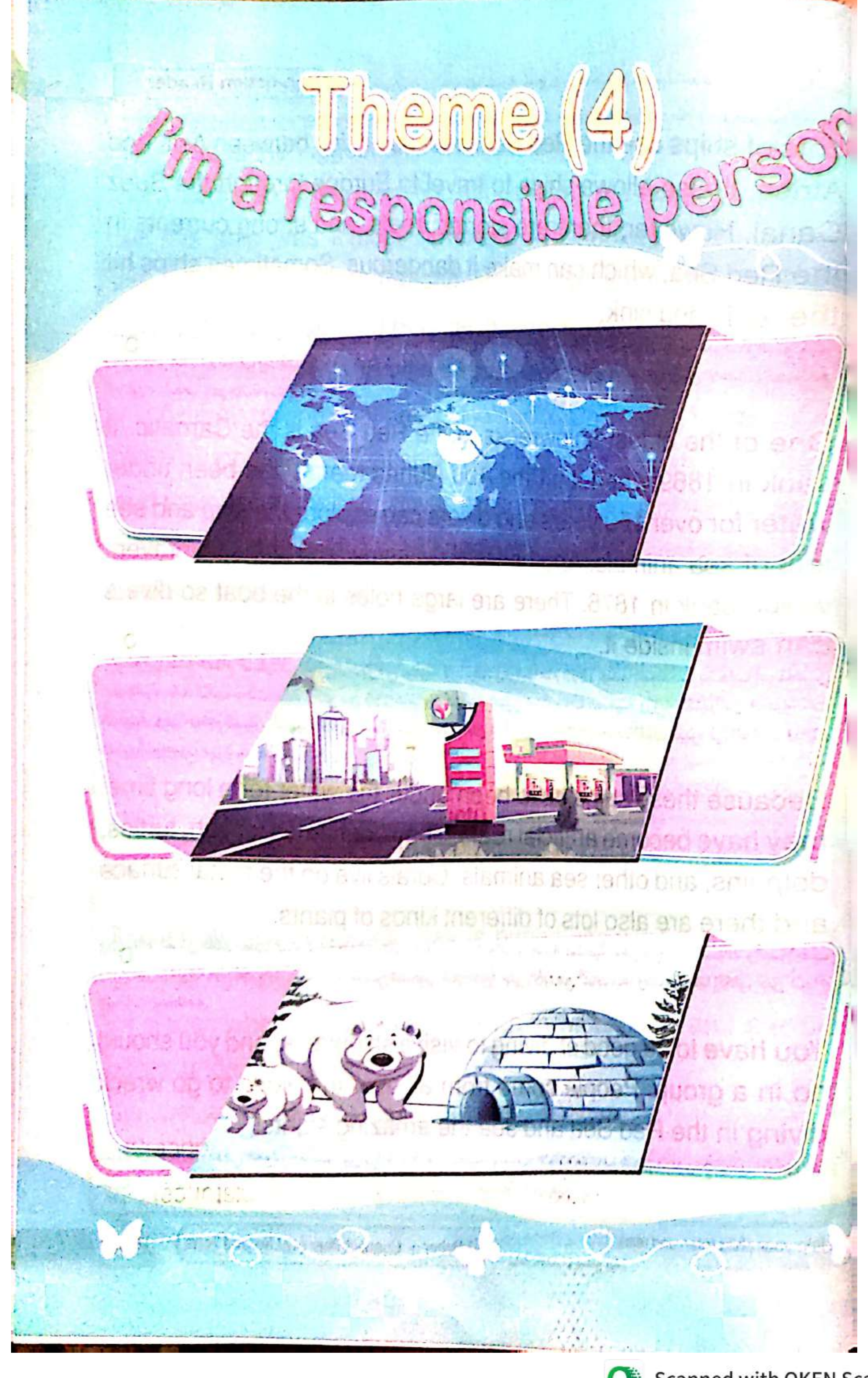






# Theme (4)

## I'm a responsible person





# Unit 10 Connecting the world

## In this unit the student will ...

- explore different means of communication.
- learn words connected to social media.
- understand and use should and shouldn't in sentences.
- read a story about social media.
- write a letter to a school newspaper.
- listen to a podcast about technological solutions.
- plan a new social media platform only for kids.

Lesson (1)

# MEANS OF COMMUNICATION

## Vocabulary 🎧 Listen and repeat.




وسائل الاتصال



electronic devices
أجهزة إلكترونية



an email
إيميل - بريد إلكتروني



a presentation
عرض - تقديم




a website
موقع على الإنترنت



watch a vlog
مدونة عن طريق الفيديو




a blog
مدونة



means of communication
وسائل الاتصال



an instant message
رسائل فورية (مستعجلة)



a social media platform
منصة التواصل الاجتماعي

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



## Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| different | مختلف | home page | الصفحة الرئيسية |
| smoke signals | إشارات دخانية | topics | موضوعات |
| technology | تكنولوجيا | users | مستخدمون |
| digital form | شكل رقمي | smartphones | هواتف ذكية |
| an email account | حساب بريد إلكتروني | tables | أجهزة التابلت |
| a private message | رسالة خاصة | laptops | أجهزة لاب توب |
| except | ما عدا | regularly | بانتظام |
| a special kind | نوع خاص | sports | رياضات |
| cooking | الطهي | personal | شخصي |
| difference | اختلاف | texts | نصوص |
| reliability | مصداقية | carrier pigeons | حمام زاجل |



## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

### *Regular verbs* أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| talk | يتكلم | talked |
| help | يساعد | helped |
| share | يشارك | shared |
| explain | يشرح | explained |
| access | يسجل دخول | accessed |
| belong | يخص | belonged |
| use | يستخدم | used |
| start | يبدأ | started |
| post | يرسل بالبريد | posted |

### *Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| know | يعرف | knew |
| say | يقول | said |
| send | يرسل | sent |
| have | يملك | had |
| see | يرى | saw |
| give | يعطي | gave |
| read | يقرأ | read |
| make | يصنع | made |
| choose | يختار | chose |

Help your child Identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.











## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| talk about | يتحدث عن | share information | يشارك معلومات |
| belong to | يخص / ينتمي إلى | send information | يرسل معلومات |
| kinds of | أنواع من | post information on | ينشر معلومات (في - على) |
| similar to | مشابه لـ | instead of | بدلًا من |
| help with | يساعد في | form of | شكل من |

## Did you know ?

More than 4 billion people use different types of social media around the world. This number is increasing every year.



يستخدم أكثر من ٤ مليارات شخص أنواعًا مختلفة من وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي حول العالم. وهذا العدد يتزايد كل عام.

## Definitions

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| email | a digital form of a letter | بريد إلكتروني |
| presentation | a way to share information about something or explain something by talking about it | عرض/تقديم |
| blog | a personal website or social media account where someone regularly posts written information | مدونة |
| website | a home page on the World Wide Web | موقع على انترنت |
| instant message | something that you write and send to someone on a social media platform | رسالة فورية |
| vlog | a personal website or social media account where someone regularly posts short videos | مدونة فيديو |

## Listen and read.

Do you know what we are talking about when we say means of communication? These are different ways to send messages from one place to another place. In the past, people used smoke signals or birds to send messages to each other. Today, we use technology like electronic devices to help us send messages.

هل تعلم ما الذى نتحدث عنه عندما نقول وسائل التواصل؟ أنها طرق مختلفة لإرسال الرسائل من مكان إلى مكان آخر. في الماضي، استخدم الناس إشارات الدخان أو الطيور لإرسال رسائل لبعضهم البعض. اليوم، نستخدم التكنولوجيا مثل الأجهزة الإلكترونية لمساعدتنا في إرسال الرسائل.

An email is a digital form of a letter. We send these electronic messages to people using electronic devices. You must have an email account to send these kinds of messages.

البريد الإلكتروني هو شكل رقمي للرسالة. نقوم بإرسال هذه الرسائل الإلكترونية إلى الأشخاص الذين يستخدمون الأجهزة الإلكترونية. يجب أن يكون لديك حساب بريد إلكتروني لإرسال هذا النوع من الرسائل.

An instant message (or IM) is a message that you can send on a social media platform. It is a private message so no one else can see it except the person you send it to.

الرسالة الفورية هي رسالة يمكنك إرسالها على إحدى منصات التواصل الاجتماعي. إنها رسالة خاصة فلا يمكن لأحد أن يراها إلا الشخص الذي أرسلتها إليه.

A presentation is a way to share information with others. When you give a presentation, you share information about something or explain something by talking about it.

العرض التقديمي هو وسيلة لمشاركة المعلومات مع الآخرين. عندما تقدم عرضًا تقديميًا، فإنك تشارك معلومات حول شيء ما أو تشرح شيئًا بالحديث عنه.

A website is a home page on the World Wide Web. Websites are usually about one topic. Users can access websites from different electronic devices like smartphones, tablets, and laptops.

موقع الويب هو صفحة رئيسية على شبكة الانترنت العالمية. عادةً ما تكون مواقع الويب حول موضوع واحد. يمكن للمستخدمين الوصول إلى مواقع الويب من أجهزة إلكترونية مختلفة مثل الهواتف الذكية والأجهزة اللوحية وأجهزة الكمبيوتر المحمولة.

Help your child read about means of communication. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن وسائل الاتصال.





A blog is a special kind of websites. It usually belongs to one person who posts information there regularly for others to read. There are blogs about many different topics like sports or cooking.

المدونة هي نوع خاص من المواقع الإلكترونية. عادةً تخص شخص واحد يقوم بنشر معلومات بانتظام ليقرأها الآخرون. توجد مدونات حول العديد من الموضوعات المختلفة مثل الرياضة أو الطبخ.

A vlog is similar to a blog because it's a personal website where people post information for others. The difference is that on a vlog, people post videos they make instead of written texts.

تشبه مدونة الفيديو المدونة لأنها موقع ويب شخصي ينشر فيه الأشخاص معلومات للآخرين. الفرق هو أنه في مدونة الفيديو، ينشر الأشخاص مقاطع فيديو يصنعونها بدلاً من النصوص المكتوبة.

## Listen and read.

When you read blogs, watch vlogs, or take information from websites. It's very important to decide how reliable the information is. First, look at the date of the material. You don't want to choose anything that is very old because the information may be different or even incorrect now.

عندما تقرأ المدونات، أو تشاهد مدونات الفيديو، أو تأخذ معلومات من المواقع . من المهم أن نقرر مدى مصداقية المعلومات. أولاً، انظر إلى تاريخ الشيء (المادة). ليس عليك أن تختار أي شيء قديم جدًا لأن المعلومات ربما أصبحت مختلفة أو غير صحيحة في الوقت الحالي.

Make sure you think about the person who created the material. Is she or he an expert or a professional, or just someone giving their opinion? Basically, you want to get facts from experts. So, if they are using phrases like "I guess" or "I feel," they are probably just giving their opinion.

تأكد من رأيك عن الشخص الذي نشر المادة. هل هي أو هو خبير أو محترف أم مجرد شخص يعطي رأيه؟ أساسًا، أنت بحاجة للحصول على الحقائق من الخبراء. لذا، إذا كانوا يستخدمون عبارات مثل "أخمن" أو "أشعر"، فمن المحتمل أن يكونوا يعبرون عن رأيهم فقط.

You can also use special websites that are used for checking facts. There are a lot of different ones online, and they can help you decide what true and what's not. Ask your teacher which ones you should use.

يمكنك أيضًا استخدام مواقع خاصة التي تُستخدم للتأكد من الحقائق. هناك الكثير من تلك المواقع على الإنترنت، وبإمكانهم مساعدتك للتحقق من الشيء الحقيقي والمزيف. اسأل معلمك أيهم يجب عليك أن تستخدمه.





Help your child read about means of communication. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن وسائل الاتصال.



## Listen and read.

### Talking about the reliability of social media

التحدث عن مصداقية وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي

**1 Checking dates.** فحص التواريـخ.

**When was the material written?** متى كتبت المادة؟

Don't choose information that is too old. It might be incorrect now.

لا تختار معلومات قديمة جدًا قد تكون غير صحيحة الآن.

**2 Choosing facts not opinions.** اختيار حقائق وليست آراء.

**Who created the material?** من صنع المادة؟

Don't choose information that is someone's opinion.

لا تختار المعلومات التي هي رأي شخص ما.

Choose information written by an expert or a professional.

اختر المعلومات التي كتبها خبير أو محترف.

**3 Fact checking websites.** مواقع فحص الحقائق.

**How do I check the facts?** كيف أتحقق من الحقائق؟

Look at special websites to check the facts you have found.

انظر إلى مواقع الويب المتخصصة للتحقق من الحقائق التي وجدتها.

### Did you know ?

Ancient Egyptians used carrier pigeons to send messages to each other.

استخدم قدماء المصريون الحمام الزاجل لإرسال رسائل لبعضهم البعض.



# Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

**1 | Listen and complete.**

1. A blog is a special kind of ..........................................................
2. It belongs to one ..........................................................
3. There are blogs about many different ...... like sports or cooking.

**2 | Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

laptops - access - devices - topic - website

A 1) .......................... is a home page on the World Wide Web. Websites are usually about one 2) .......................... . Users can 3) .......................... websites from different electronic 4) .......................... like smartphones, tablets and 5) .......................... .

**3 | Choose the correct answer.**

1. There are many means of .......... to send messages from one person to another.
   a) pollution  b) solution  c) station  d) communication
2. In the past people used smoke .......... to communicate.
   a) signals  b) finals  c) bags  d) panels
3. We use technology like electronic .......... .
   a) vices  b) devices  c) advice  d) prizes
4. A/An .......... is a digital form of a letter.
   a) device  b) email  c) vlog  d) presentation
5. You must have an email .......... to send emails.
   a) count  b) account  c) carrier  d) clown



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

6. You can send an instant message on a social media ................ .

a) frame b) firm c) platform d) form

7. A ................................ is a way to share information with others.

a) message b) presentation c) device d) preposition

8. A ................................ is a home page on the World Wide Web.

a) blog b) vlog c) device d) website

9. Users can .......... websites from different electronic devices like smartphones.

a) access b) play c) plant d) enter

10. ............................................ a personal website where someone regularly posts written information.

a) log b) blog c) vlog d) dialog

11. A ............................................................ is similar to a blog.

a) log b) slog c) device d) vlog

12. Ancient Egyptians used carrier .............. to send messages to each other.

a) butterflies b) parrots c) cats d) pigeons

13. I use my ............................................ to access a website.

a) book b) smartphone c) box d) telephone

## 4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. people - can - How - websites - access - ?

.................................................................................................

2. a digital - is - An email - of - form - a letter - .

.................................................................................................

3. of - means - What - you - do - communication - use - ?

.................................................................................................

## 5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Do you know what we are talking about when we say means of communication? These are different ways to send messages from one place to another place.

In the past, people used smoke signals or birds to send messages to each other. Today, we use technology like electronic devices to help us send messages.

An email is a digital form of a letter. We send these electronic messages to people using electronic devices. You must have an email account to send these kinds of messages.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. People used ...... signals or birds to send messages to each other.
   a) air  b) gas  c) steam  d) smoke
2. You must have an email ........ to send these kind of messages.
   a) account  b) clown  c) count  d) topic

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What's the general idea of the text?

.................................................................................................

4. What is meant by means of "communication"?

.................................................................................................

## 6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

**Means of communication**

Guiding words:

smoke signals - email - a blog - a vlog - carrier pigeons

.................................................................................................

.................................................................................................

.................................................................................................

.................................................................................................



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.






# LANGUAGE: GIVING ADVICE

## Key vocabulary

🎧 Listen and repeat.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| backpack | حقيبة الظهر | adventure | مغامرة |
| incredible | لا يصدق - هائل | keyboard | لوحة مفاتيح |
| publish | ينشر | checklist | قائمة التدقيق والفحص |

## Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| notebook | كراسة | local newspaper | جريدة محلية |
| eraser | أستيكه - ممحاة | honey | عسل |
| writer | كاتب | without | بدون |
| difficult | صعب | word processor | برنامج معالج النصوص (في الكمبيوتر) |
| mistakes | أخطاء | adult | شخص بالغ |



## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

***Regular verbs*** أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| open | يفتح | opened |
| love | يحب | loved |
| work | يعمل | worked |
| hand | يسلم / يعطي | handed |
| prepare | يجهز | prepared |
| touch | يلمس | touched |
| practice | يمارس | practiced |
| correct | يصحح | corrected |
| change | يغير | changed |

***Irregular verbs*** أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| get | يحصل على | got |
| sit | يجلس | sat |
| take | يأخذ | took |
| write | يكتب | wrote |
| tell | يخبر | told |
| hurt | يؤذي | hurt |
| let | يدع - يسمح | let |
| give | يعطي | gave |
| choose | يختار | chose |

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| make ... for | يُعد .... لـ | share with | يشارك مع |
| sit at | يجلس على | get better | يتحسن |
| on the floor | على الأرضية | take a break | يأخذ قسطا من الراحة (يستريح) |
| a title for | عنوان لـ | hand to | يسلم لـ |
| by hand | باليد | without a break | بدون راحة |

## Listen and read.



Adam got home from school, and sat down at his desk. He took his pencil, notebook, and eraser out of his backpack, and opened up his notebook. Adam loved to write. He was working on a new story about a boy who goes on a great adventure around Africa. Adam's mom is a writer at the local newspaper. She got home at 6 o'clock.

"Hi Mom," Adam said. "Do you want to read my new story?"

"Of course I do, honey."

عاد آدم من المدرسة إلى المنزل وجلس على مكتبه. أخرج قلمه الرصاص والدفتر والممحاة من حقيبته وفتح كراسته. كان آدم يحب الكتابة. كان يكتب قصة جديدة عن صبي يذهب في مغامرة رائعة حول أفريقيا. والدة آدم كاتبة في إحدى الصحف المحلية. وصلت إلى المنزل في الساعة السادسة. قال آدم: "مرحباً أمي". "هل تريدين أن تقرئي قصتي الجديدة؟" قالت الأم "بالطبع يا عزيزي."

Adam handed his notebook to his mom. She sat down and started reading it. After a while, she said, "This is an incredible story, Adam. You should let more people read it."

"What do you mean?" Adam asked.

"You know, you should prepare it to share with others."

"OK, but how do I do that, Mom?"

اعطي آدم كراسته إلى والدته. جلست وبدأت في قراءتها. وبعد فترة قالت: «هذه قصة رائعة يا آدم. يجب أن تسمح لعدد أكبر من الناس بقراءتها."

قال آدم "ماذا تقصدي؟"

قالت الأم "كما تعلم، يجب عليك إعدادها لمشاركتها مع الآخرين."

قال آدم "حسناً، ولكن كيف أفعل ذلك يا أمي؟"



Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.



"First you should touch type it."
"OK, we're leaning how to type at school. Is that when you try to type without always looking at the keyboard?
"That's right. it might sound difficult, but if you practice, you'll get better and better at it. It's much quicker than writing with a pen, and it's easier to correct or change your work."

قالت الأم "أولاً يجب أن تكتبها باللمس على لوحة المفاتيح."
قال آدم "حسنًا، نحن نركز على كيفية الكتابة في المدرسة. هل هذا عندما نحاول الكتابة دون النظر دائمًا إلى لوحة المفاتيح؟
قالت الأم "صحيح. قد يبدو الأمر صعبًا، ولكن إذا تدربت، فسوف تتحسن فيه. إنها أسرع بكثير من الكتابة بالقلم، ومن الأسهل تصحيح عملك أو تغييره.

"I can do that, Mom."
"Just remember to sit up straight and keep your feet on the floor. You don't want to hurt your neck or back. And take a break every 10 or 15 minutes."
"Yes, that's what my teacher told us," said Adam.
"Then, you can ask the school to publish it in the school newspaper, or even publish it yourself online."
His mom handed the notebook back to him.
"Look at the last page. I made a checklist for you."

قال آدم "أستطيع أن أفعل ذلك يا أمي."
قالت الأم "فقط تذكر أن تجلس بشكل مستقيم وتبقي قدميك على الأرض. حتى لا تؤذي رقبتك أو ظهرك. وخذ قسطاً من الراحة كل ١٠ أو ١٥ دقيقة».
قال آدم: "نعم، هذا ما قاله لنا أستاذي".
قالت الأم "بعد ذلك، يمكنك أن تطلب من المدرسة نشرها في صحيفة المدرسة، أو حتى نشرها بنفسك عبر الإنترنت."
أعادت والدته كراسته إليه.
"انظر إلى الصفحة الأخيرة. لقد قمت بعمل قائمة مرجعية لك."

## "Publishing Checklist"

You **shouldn't** write your story by hand. You **should** use a word processor or writing program, and try to touch type.

لا ينبغي أن تكتب قصتك باليد. يجب عليك إستخدام معالج النصوص أو برنامج الكتابة، ومحاولة الكتابة باللمس.





- You shouldn't have any spelling or grammar mistakes. You should check your spelling. Or you should ask an adult to check it for you.

يجب ألا يكون لديك أي أخطاء إملائية أو نحوية. يجب عليك التحقق من الإملاء الخاص بك، أو يجب عليك أن تطلب من شخص بالغ التحقق من ذلك نيابةً عنك.

- You shouldn't forget punctuation. You should check your work.

يجب أن لا تنسى علامات الترقيم. يجب عليك التحقق من عملك.

- You shouldn't work too long without a break. And you should sit up straight with your feet on the floor.

لا ينبغي أن تعمل لفترة طويلة دون استراحة. ويجب عليك الجلوس بشكل مستقيم مع وضع قدميك على الأرض.

# Language Functions

## Giving advice (should - shouldn't)

### Form:

**Subject + should + inf.**

- You should choose a title for your story.

### Usage:

- **We use "should + inf" to say that something is a good idea.**

- You should check your work.

### Negative:

**Subject + shouldn't + inf.**

- You shouldn't forget your homework.

- **We use "shouldn't + inf" to say that something is a bad idea.**

- You shouldn't be afraid to ask your teacher for help.

**NOTE**

**shouldn't = should not**



Help your child understand and use "should" and "shouldn't" to give advice.

ساعد طفلك أن يفهم ويستخدم 'should' و 'shouldn't' في إعطاء النصيحة.



## 1 Choose the correct answer.

1. You .......... use a capital letter at the beginning of each sentence.
   a) shouldn't b) should c) can't d) isn't
2. You should .................................................... a title for your story.
   a) choose b) chooses c) chose d) chosen
3. You ................................ use handwriting if you want the school to publish your story in the newspaper.
   a) shouldn't b) isn't c) can't d) should
4. You .............. ask a friend to read your story before you publish it.
   a) shouldn't b) can't c) should d) isn't
5. You shouldn't ........................... afraid to ask your teacher for help.
   a) is b) was c) be d) are
6. You ................................ hide your writing. Share it with your friends!
   a) shouldn't b) should c) can d) are

## 2 Give your friend advice. Complete the sentences.

1. Your friend: I'm thirsty.
   Your advice: You should drink something.
2. Your friend: I work a lot.
   Your advice: You .................................................................................................
3. Your friend: I have a difficult English test tomorrow.
   Your advice: You .................................................................................................
4. Your friend: I want to learn something.
   Your advice: You .................................................................................................
5. Your friend: I can't see very well.
   Your advice: You .................................................................................................

# Activities

## 1 | Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

hungry - feel - should - eat

Ali : How do you 1) .................................................. ?
Amr : I feel 2) ............................ . What should I do?
Ali : You should 3) .............................. some fruit.
Amr : What else 4) ........................................ I do?
Ali : You should have some rest.

## 2 | Choose the correct answer.

1. Adam got home from school, and sat down ............ his desk.
   a) on b) at c) for d) in
2. Adam took his pencil, notebook and eraser out of his ............ .
   a) back b) backpack c) packet d) pocket
3. Adam's mom is a writer at a local ...................................... .
   a) newspaper b) newsagent c) zoo d) bank
4. You should share your ideas ................................... others.
   a) at b) for c) with d) by
5. I sometimes type without looking at the ................................ .
   a) mouse b) keyboard c) screen d) case
6. You can ask the school to ................ your story in the school newspaper.
   a) publish b) print c) type d) touch
7. I made a checklist ................................................... you.
   a) at b) by c) for d) with
8. You ............................................. write your story by hand.
   a) should b) shouldn't c) can d) may
9. She ....................................................... check her work.
   a) should b) shouldn't c) can't d) isn't



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## 3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. for - I - made - a checklist - you - .

..........................................................................................

2. too - shouldn't - work - You - long - a break - without - .

..........................................................................................

3. check - should - You - work - your - .

..........................................................................................

## 4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Adam got home from school, and sat down at his desk. He took his pencil, notebook, and eraser out of his backpack, and opened up his notebook. Adam loved to write. He was working on a new story about a boy who goes on a great adventure around Africa. Adam's mom is a writer at the local newspaper. She got home at 6 o'clock. Hi Mom, Adam said. 'Do you want to read my new story?' "Of course I do, honey. Adam handed his notebook to his mom. She sat down and started reading it. After a while, she said, This is an incredible story, Adam. You should let more people read it.

### A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "handed" means .......................................... .

   a) take  b) give  c) write  d) go

2. Adam's mom is a .......................................... at the local newspaper.

   a) doctor  b) teacher  c) writer  d) mechanic

### B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where does the boy go on a great adventure?

..........................................................................................

4. What was Adam's mom's advice to him?

..........................................................................................




## Key vocabulary

🎧 **Listen and repeat.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| best friends | أفضل الأصدقاء | cyberfriends | أصدقاء على الإنترنت |
| nasty comments | تعليقات كريهة | settings | الإعدادات (على الجهاز) |
| a social media account | حساب على مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي | problem | مشكلة |
| | | wildlife photographer | مصور الحياة البرية |

## Extra vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| bell | جرس | horrible | فظيع | kitchen | مطبخ |
| private | خاص | hobby | هواية | together | معًا - سويًا |
| project | مشروع | really | حقًا | idea | فكرة |
| sign | علامة - لافتة | important | هام - مهم | parents | الوالدان |
| group | مجموعة | photography | التصوير الفوتوغرافي | | |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

***Regular verbs*** أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| sign up | يسجل | signed up |
| walk | يمشي | walked |
| ask | يسأل | asked |
| use | يستخدم | used |
| need | يحتاج | needed |
| talk | يتكلم | talked |
| introduce | يُقدِّم | introduced |
| guess | يُخمِّن | guessed |

***Irregular verbs*** أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| make | يصنع | made |
| feel | يشعر | felt |
| ring | يرن | rang |
| say | يقول | said |
| see | يرى | saw |
| get | يحصل على | got |
| know | يعرف | knew |
| tell | يخبر | told |



Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| sign in | يسجل دخول | talk about | يتحدث - يتكلم عن |
| sign up for | يسجل في ..... | make fun of | يسخر من |
| think about | يفكر في | learn about | يتعلّم عن |
| use ........ for | يستخدم ..... لـ | turn off | يُغلق - يطفىء |
| need ..... for | يحتاج ..... لـ | turn back | يعود - يرجع |
| set up | يؤسس | say bad things about | يقول أشياء سيئة عن |

## Listen and read.

### Youssef Goes Online

The 2 o'clock bell rang. Youssef and his best friend Wael started walking home from school together. "You're thirteen now, aren't you?" asked Wael. 'Yeah. Why?'
'That means you can sign up for a social media account like me.'

رن جرس الساعة الثانية. بدأ يوسف وصديقه المفضل وائل بالعودة إلى المنزل من المدرسة معًا.
قال وائل "أنت الآن في الثالثة عشرة، أليس كذلك؟"
'نعم. لماذا؟'
"هذا يعني أنك يمكنك التسجيل للحصول على حساب على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي مثلي."

Youssef thought about this idea for a minute. 'I guess I'll have to ask my parents first. What do you use your account for?'
'I post videos. I also made some cyberfriends online,' said Wael.

فكر يوسف في هذه الفكرة لمدة دقيقة. "أعتقد أنني يجب أن أسأل والدي أولاً." فيم تستخدم حسابك؟
قال وائل: "أنا أنشر مقاطع فيديو." "لقد قمت أيضًا بتكوين صداقات عبر الإنترنت".

'But who are these cyberfriends? Do you really know them?" he asked. 'No, but I can watch their videos. Some of them are so cool!'
'I'll think about it. See you tomorrow!' said Youssef.
Youssef got home from school and his mom was in the kitchen.

قال يوسف :"ولكن من هم أصدقاء الإنترنت؟ هل تعرفهم حقًا؟" . "لا، ولكن يمكنني مشاهدة مقاطع الفيديو الخاصة بهم."
وبعضها رائع جدًا!" قال يوسف: "سأفكر في الأمر." أراك غدًا!
عاد يوسف من المدرسة إلى البيت وكانت والدته في المطبخ.

Help your child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

"Hi, honey. How was school today?"
"Good! Mom, can I get a social media account? Wael has one and he "says it's really cool."
"Do you think you're old enough, Youssef?"
Yes. And I need it for my group project."
Youssef's dad helped him set up his account after dinner. He went straight to his room and made his first video. He introduced himself and talked about his favorite hobby, photography. Then he posted it.

"أهلا يا حبيبي. كيف كان يومك الدراسى اليوم؟"
"جيد! يأمي، هل يمكنني الحصول على حساب على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي؟ لدى وائل حساب وهو "يقول إنه رائع حقًا".
"هل تعتقد أنك كبير بما فيه الكفاية يا يوسف؟"
نعم. وأنا بحاجة إليه لمشروع مجموعتي.
والد يوسف ساعده في إنشاء حسابه بعد العشاء. ذهب مباشرة إلى غرفته وقام بتصوير أول فيديو له. قدم نفسه وتحدث عن هوايته المفضلة وهي التصوير الفوتوغرافي. ثم نشره.

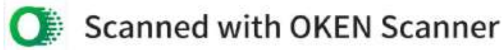
The next morning, he signed into his account. There were some comments from people he didn't even know, and some of the comments were nasty.
One person said horrible things about the way Youssef spoke English, and someone else made fun of Youssef's hair and clothes. He felt really sad.

وفي صباح اليوم التالي، قام بتسجيل الدخول إلى حسابه. كانت هناك بعض التعليقات من أشخاص لا يعرفهم ، وكانت بعض التعليقات سيئة. قال أحد الأشخاص أشياء فظيعة عن الطريقة التي يتحدث بها يوسف باللغة الإنجليزية، وسخر شخص آخر من شعر يوسف وملابسه. لقد شعر بالحزن حقا.

Youssef told his mom about the bad comments.
"I think there are some things you need to learn about using social media," she said. "Sign into your account and go to the settings. First, we need to make your page private. That means only your friends can see your videos. Now, let's turn off the comments. That way people can't say bad things about you. If you want, you can turn them back on later." "Thanks, Mom. I'm going to make a new video now and see what happens."

يوسف أخبر والدته عن التعليقات السيئة.
قالت: "أعتقد أن هناك بعض الأشياء التي تحتاج إلى تعلمها حول استخدام وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي". "قم بتسجيل الدخول إلى حسابك وانتقل إلى الإعدادات! أولاً، نحتاج إلى جعل صفحتك خاصة. وهذا يعني أن أصدقائك فقط يمكنهم مشاهدة مقاطع الفيديو الخاصة بك. الآن، دعنا نغلق التعليقات. بهذه الطريقة لا يمكن للناس أن يقولوا أشياء سيئة عنك. إذا أردت، يمكنك تشغيلها مرة أخرى لاحقًا." قال يوسف"شكرا يا أمي. سأقوم بعمل فيديو جديد الآن وأرى ما سيحدث.





# Activities

## 1 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

shouldn't - long - social - for - bad

Adam : Does anyone in your family use 1) .................................. media?
Youssef : Yes, they do.
Adam : What do they use it 2) ..................................?
Youssef : For posting videos.
Adam : Is social media good or 3) ..................................?
Youssef : I think it maybe good or bad.
Adam : Should I sit 4) .................................. hours without a break?
Youssef : No, you 5) ..................................

## 2 Choose the correct answer.

1. You shouldn't write .............................. comments on social media.
   a) nasty b) good c) fine d) kind
2. I also made some .............................. online.
   a) bully b) cyberfiends c) enemies d) families
3. Everyday I .............................. some videos on social media.
   a) put b) post c) write d) does
4. .............................. is my favorite hobby.
   a) Photograph b) Photographer c) Photography d) Picture
5. Someone made .............................. of Youssef on social media.
   a) funny b) fun c) fan d) fin
6. I sign up .............................. a social media account.
   a) at b) by c) for d) in
7. .. into your account and go to the settings to turn off the comments.
   a) Sign b) Play c) Go d) Come

8. You should make your page ..........................................
   a) perfect  b) private  c) general  d) bad
9. .......................................... media is very important.
   a) Private  b) General  c) Social  d) Online
10. You sometimes need to turn ...... the comments if they are nasty.
   a) at  b) by  c) off  d) on

## 3 | Read the following text and answer the questions.

Youssef's dad helped him set up his account after dinner. He went straight to his room and made his first video. He introduced himself and talked about his favorite hobby, photography. Then he posted it. The next morning, he signed into his account. There were some comments from people he didn't even know, and some of the comments were nasty. One person said horrible things about the way Youssef spoke English, and someone else made fun of Youssef's hair and clothes. He felt really sad.

### A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Youssef's dad helped him set up his account .................... dinner.
   a) before  b) during  c) after  d) now
2. The underlined word "nasty" means .......................................... .
   a) good  b) bad  c) lovely  d) nice

### B) Answer the following questions.

3. What's Youssef's favorite hobby?..........................................
4. How did Youssef feel at the end? ..........................................

## 4 | Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

Social media

Guiding words:

important - account - cyberfriends - nasty - turn off

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.




## Key vocabulary

🎧 **Listen and repeat.**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| create | ينشئ | reports | تقارير | poetry | شِعْر |
| global community | مجتمع عالمي | improve | يُحسن | grade | صف دراسي |
| currently | حاليًا | safely | بأمان | design | تصميم |

## Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| because | لأن - بسبب | general | عام |
| interesting | شيق - ممتع | college | كلية |
| projects | مشروعات | weekend | نهاية الأسبوع |
| club | نادي | sincerely | بإخلاص |
| writing club | نادي الكتابة | editor | محرر |
| science club | نادي العلوم | fiction | خيال |
| games club | نادي الألعاب | free time | وقت فراغ |
| cooking club | نادي الطهي | perfect idea | فكرة رائعة |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

***Regular verbs*** أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| create | ينشئ | created |
| improve | يحسن | improved |
| publish | ينشر | published |
| share | يشارك | shared |

***Irregular verbs*** أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| think | يعتقد | thought |
| have | يملك - يمتلك | had |
| do | يفعل | did |
| read | يقرأ | read |





## Important expressions and prepositions
تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| report about | يكتب تقريرًا عن | write for | يكتب لـ |
| lots of | الكثير من | at school | في المدرسة |
| improve writing | يحسن الكتابة | at college | في الكلية |
| share ideas | يتشارك الأفكار | join the club | يلتحق بالنادي |
| create a club | ينشئ ناديًا | for fun | للمتعة |

## Read the letter.

Dear Editor,

I'm writing because I think that the school should create an after-school writers' club. Don't you think this is a good idea? As a fourth-grade student, I like to write short stories and reports about things that I think are interesting. I write for my projects and for fun. I don't have time to write in the morning, but I do have time to write after school. Some of my friends are also interested in writing after school. So, that's why I think that an after-school club is a perfect idea. There are lots of other clubs like the games club, the science club, and the cooking club. Currently, there is no story writing or poetry writing club at our school. First, we should create one general writing club. If we improve our writing skills now, it will help us in the future in high school and at college. It will also help us write, publish, and share our ideas with our global community. Don't you agree?

Sincerely yours,

Amira El-Sayyed

4th grade

أنا اكتب لأنني أعتقد أن المدرسة يجب أن تنشئ ناديًا للكتّاب بعد المدرسة. ألا تعتقد أن هذه فكرة جيدة؟ كطالبة في الصف الرابع، أحب كتابة القصص القصيرة والتقارير حول الأشياء التي أعتقد أنها مثيرة للاهتمام. أنا أكتب لمشاريعي وللمتعة. ليس لدي وقت للكتابة في الصباح، لكن لدي وقت للكتابة بعد المدرسة. بعض أصدقائي مهتمون أيضًا بالكتابة بعد المدرسة. ولهذا السبب أعتقد أن نادي ما بعد المدرسة هو فكرة مثالية. ويوجد الكثير من الأندية الأخرى مثل نادي الألعاب، ونادي العلوم، ونادي الطبخ. لا يوجد حاليًا نادي لكتابة القصة أو كتابة الشعر في مدرستنا. أولاً، يجب علينا إنشاء نادي عام للكتابة. إذا قمنا بتحسين مهاراتنا في الكتابة الآن، فسوف يساعدنا ذلك في المستقبل في المدرسة الثانوية وفي الكلية. وسوف يساعدنا أيضًا في كتابة أفكارنا ونشرها ومشاركتها مع مجتمعنا العالمي. ألا توافق؟

المخلصة لك

أميرة السيد

الصف الرابع



Help your child read the letter.

* ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الخطاب.



## Punctuation

**A period (.):** نقطة (.)

- We put a period (.) at the end of a sentence.

نضع نقطة (.) في نهاية الجملة.

**Comma (,):** فاصلة سفلية (,)

- We put a comma (,) after "First / Dear Editor," and in lists.

نضع فاصلة سفلية (,) بعد "عزيزي المحرر / أولًا" وفي القوائم.

**The question mark (?):** علامة الاستفهام (؟)

We put a question mark (?) at the end of a question.

نضع علامة استفهام (؟) في نهاية السؤال.

## Prepositions (in - at)

**We use (in)** before periods of the day and "the future"

نستخدم (في) قبل فترات اليوم و"المستقبل"

**We use (at)** before places like (school - zoo)

نستخدم (at) قبل الأماكن مثل (المدرسة - حديقة الحيوان)

### - Write the missing prepositions.

1. ........................................................ the morning / afternoon.
2. ........................................................ school / college.
3. ........................................................ the future.

## Conjunctions (and - or - but)

**We use (and)** to join similar ideas. نستخدم (و) لربط الأفكار المتشابهة.

e.g. I like English and Arabic.

**We use (but)** to join contrasting ideas. نستخدم (لكن) لربط الأفكار المتعارضة.

e.g. He is poor, but he is happy.

**(or)** is used instead of **(and)** in negative sentences.

(أو) تستخدم بدلا من (و) في الجمل المنفية.

e.g. She doesn't like maths or Arabic.








**Use these tips when you write a letter to the editor of a newspaper.** استخدم هذه النصائح عندما تكتب رسالة إلى محرر إحدى الصحف.

- Start your letter with "Dear Editor,".
  - ابدأ رسالتك بـ "عزيزي المحرر".
- Finish your letter with "Sincerely yours,".
  - أنهي رسالتك بعبارة "المخلص لك".
- Say why you are writing in the first sentence.
  - قل لماذا تكتب هذه الرسالة في الجملة الأولى.
- Give a couple of examples to support your idea.
  - أعط مثالين لدعم فكرتك.

**- Write a letter to the editor of your school newspaper.**

Ask the school to create a new club that you want to join. Read the tips and use Amira's letter as a model.

**The computer club**

Dear Editor,

I'm writing because I think that the school should create an after - school computer club. Don't you think this is a good idea? As a fourth-grade student, I like to write about using computer that is interesting and useful for my classmates. I don't have time to write in the morning, but I have time to write after school. Some of my friends are interested in writing after school. If we improve our computer using skills now, it will help us in the future in high school and at college.

Sincerely yours,

Ali

$4^{th}$ grade



Help your child write a letter to the editor of a newspaper. ساعد طفلك أن يكتب خطابًا لمحرر جريدة.

# Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and complete.

1. I like English .................... Arabic.
2. I go to school .................... the morning.
3. I like football matches, .................... I don't play it.
4. I'd like to .................... an after-school writers' club.

## 2 Choose the correct answer.

1. He wants to .................... an after-school writer's club.
   a) play b) create c) cook d) build
2. We should .................... our writing skills.
   a) prove b) protect c) improve d) protest
3. Mona is in .................... four in our school.
   a) blade b) grade c) club d) grape
4. I go home .................... the afternoon.
   a) on b) at c) in d) by
5. After school, I will join college .................... the future.
   a) at b) on c) in d) by
6. I like poetry .................... fiction.
   a) but b) and c) or d) so
7. She doesn't like reading .................... writing.
   a) and b) but c) or d) for
8. He is a student .................... school.
   a) at b) on c) of d) by
9. Some of my friends are interested .................... writing after school.
   a) on b) at c) in d) by

## 3 | Read and correct the underlined words.

1. I like football .................................................... (<u>but</u>) handball.
2. He is poor, .................................................... (<u>and</u>) he is happy.
3. I go to school .................................................... (<u>on</u>) the morning.
4. I don't like meat .................................................... (<u>and</u>) fish.

## 4 | Write the missing punctuation in these sentences.

1. I like to write letters poetry and stories .................................................... .
2. First I want to write a letter .................................................... .
3. Dear Editor .................................................... .
4. Do you like writing stories .................................................... .

## 5 | Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

**Amira's school day**

Guiding words:

(gets - school - bus - Maths - home - homework - bed - clever - love)

....................................................................................................

....................................................................................................

....................................................................................................

....................................................................................................

....................................................................................................

....................................................................................................

....................................................................................................

....................................................................................................

....................................................................................................



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## Lessons (5&6)

# - SOLUTIONS TO PROBLEMS IN EGYPT
# - PROJECT

## Key vocabulary

**Listen and repeat.**



a smog-free tower
برج تنقية الهواء



electric cars
سيارات كهربائية



scrubber
مدخنة تنقية الغازات والأبخرة

## Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| air pollution | تلوث الهواء | solution | حل |
| mostly | عمومًا / في الغالب | factories | مصانع |
| podcast | إذاعة صوتية | jewelry | حُلي |
| indoor | داخلي | inventor | مخترع |
| outdoor | خارجي | nervous | عصبي/متوتر |
| apartment | شقة | confident | واثق |
| buildings | مباني | rain | مطر |
| power plant | محطة توليد الطاقة | greening | تخضير (زراعة سياج من النباتات والأشجار) |
| nature | الطبيعة | insects | حشرات |
| problem | مشكلة | fossil fuels | وقود حفري |

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| cause | يسبِّب | caused |
| talk | يتكلّم | talked |
| collect | يُجمِّع | collected |
| invent | يخترع | invented |
| contact | يتصل | contacted |
| move | يُحرِّك /ينقل | moved |

### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| make | يصنع | made |
| find | يجد | found |
| keep | يحفظ | kept |
| grow | ينمو | grew |
| build | يبني | built |
| get | يحصل على | got |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| talk about | يتكلّم عن | look at | ينظر إلى |
| listen to | يستمع إلى | eye contact with | تواصل بصري مع |
| collect with | يُجمِّع بـ | work with | يعمل مع |
| start with | يبدأ بـ | think of | يفكر في |
| provide shade | يمدنا بالظل | keep the building warm | يحافظ على تدفئة المبنى |
| sum up | يُلخِّص | harmful to | ضار لـ |

### Did you know ?

The first electric car was invented in the 1830s in Scotland by the inventor Robert Anderson.

اخترع المخترع روبرت أندرسون أول سيارة كهربائية في ثلاثينات القرن التاسع عشر في اسكتلندا.





Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Listen and read.

**Presenter:**

Welcome to the podcast Technology World Today. Today in the studio with me is the environmental scientist Dr. Nesma Hegazy. We'll be talking about the problem of air pollution. Welcome to the show Dr. Hegazy.

مرحبًا بكم في برنامجنا الإذاعي عن عالم تكنولوجيا اليوم. اليوم معي في الاستوديو عالمة البيئة الدكتورة نسمة حجازي. سنتحدث عن مشكلة تلوث الهواء. مرحبًا بكِ في برنامجنا يا دكتورة.

**Dr. Nesma Hegazy:**

Thank you for inviting me.

شكرًا لك لدعوتي.

**Presenter:**

So, how big of a problem is air pollution in Egypt today?

إذن، ما حجم مشكلة تلوث الهواء في مصر اليوم؟

**Dr. Nesma Hegazy:**

Well, it is quite serious, especially in the biggest cities. That is what we call outdoor pollution. But most people don't realize that there is also indoor pollution - that is the pollution that is inside of our homes, schools, and offices. But let's just talk about outdoor air pollution today. This is produced by our cars, buses, airplanes, factories, and power plants. We must also remember that there is some dust from the desert in the air. But when we burn fossil fuels, we make air pollution worse. And since it doesn't rain very much in Cairo or other areas of the country, the air doesn't get cleaned.

حسنًا، الأمر خطير جدًا، خاصة في المدن الكبرى. وهذا ما نسميه التلوث الخارجي. لكن معظم الناس لا يدركون أن هناك أيضًا تلوثًا داخليًا - وهو التلوث الموجود داخل منازلنا ومدارسنا ومكاتبنا. ولكن دعونا نتحدث فقط عن تلوث الهواء الخارجي اليوم. ينتج هذا التلوث بواسطة سياراتنا وحافلاتنا وطائراتنا ومصانعنا ومحطات الطاقة. يجب أن نتذكر أيضًا أن هناك بعض الغبار من الصحراء في الهواء. ولكن عندما نحرق الوقود الحفري، فإننا نجعل تلوث الهواء أسوأ. وبما أن الأمطار لا تهطل كثيرًا في القاهرة أو في مناطق أخرى من البلاد، فلا يتم تنظيف الهواء.

**Presenter:**

So, how can technology help us deal with this problem?

إذاً، كيف يمكن للتكنولوجيا أن تساعدنا في التعامل مع هذه المشكلة؟

**Dr. Nesma Hegazy:**

Fortunately, there are a couple of ways. First of all, there are electric cars. There aren't many on the streets now, but you will definitely see more and more of these in the future - the government has already started helping car companies start producing electric cars.

لحسن الحظ، هناك طريقتان. أولاً وقبل كل شيء، هناك السيارات الكهربائية. لا يوجد منها الكثير في الشوارع الآن، ولكنك بالتأكيد ستشاهد المزيد والمزيد منها في المستقبل - وقد بدأت الحكومة بالفعل في مساعدة شركات السيارات على البدء في إنتاج السيارات الكهربائية.

**Presenter:** That's good news. إنه خبر سار.

**Dr. Nesma Hegazy:**

Then there are devices called scrubbers. You can find them on the smokestacks of some factories or power plants. These devices are used to clean some of the gases coming from the factories. They remove the dangerous parts of the gases and make it safe to store or use them in some other way.

ثم هناك أجهزة تسمى أجهزة تنقية الغازات. يمكنك أن تجدها في مداخن بعض المصانع أو محطات توليد الطاقة. تستخدم هذه الأجهزة في تنظيف بعض الغازات المنبعثة من المصانع. فهي تزيل الأجزاء الخطرة من الغازات وتجعل من الآمن تخزينها أو استخدامها بطريقة أخرى.

**Presenter:** That's fascinating! هذا مذهل!

**Dr. Nesma Hegazy:**

Yes, it is. We also have smog free towers. These are like giant vacuum cleaners that take polluted air in, clean it, and then send it back out for us to breathe. These 7-meter towers can only clean air in a small area like a park. So, we would need a lot of them to clean an entire city. However, some are already being used in China, Mexico, and the Netherlands.

نعم إنه كذلك. لدينا أيضًا أبراج خالية من الضباب الدخاني. إنها مثل المكانس الكهربائية العملاقة التي تأخذ الهواء الملوث وتنظفه ثم ترسله مرة أخرى لنتنفسه. لا يمكن لهذه الأبراج التي يبلغ ارتفاعها ٧ أمتار تنظيف الهواء إلا في منطقة صغيرة مثل الحديقة. لذا، سنحتاج إلى الكثير منها لتنظيف مدينة بأكملها. ومع ذلك، يتم بالفعل استخدام بعضها في الصين والمكسيك وهولندا.





**Presenter:**
That's really interesting. What do they do with the pollution they collect?
هذا مثير للاهتمام حقًا. ماذا يفعلون بالتلوث الذي يجمعونه؟

**Dr. Nesma Hegazy:**
You might be surprised to hear this, but they use it to make fashionable jewelry.
ربما تتفاجأ بسماع ذلك، لكنهم يستخدمونه لصنع مجوهرات عصرية.

**Presenter:**
Really? Wow. I am impressed. Thank you so much for talking with us today, Dr. Hegazy.
حقًا؟ رائع. أنا معجب بذلك. شكرًا جزيلاً لك على التحدث معنا اليوم يا دكتورة.

## To make a good presentation you can use these presentation phrases

لعمل عرض جيد، يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

1. Good morning / afternoon, everyone.
2. Today I'm going to talk about ....
3. Let's start with ....
4. Now, let's look at ....
5. To finish / To sum up, ....
6. Are there any questions?
7. Thank you very much.



## Tips for a good presentation:

إرشادات لعرض جيد

- Be confident.
- Smile 😊 .
- Make eye contact with the class. If you are nervous, look at a friend first.
- Speak slowly. Don't talk too loudly or too softly.
- Don't move around a lot. Keep your feet in the same place.
- Use some of the phrases above.



Help your child how to make a good presentation. ساعد طفلك كيف يقدم عرضا جيدًا.









## Listen and read.



Air pollution is one of the biggest problems for people's health. Air pollution is created by airplanes, traffic, factories and power plants. When we burn fossil and use strong cleaning chemicals to clean our houses, we create pollution. However, there are some new and exciting ways to solve the problem of air pollution. We have learned about scrubbers and smog-free towers that help to clean gases and pollution produced by factories and industry. Another method which is becoming popular is called greening. Greening is growing a wall of plants on the side of a building.

يعد تلوث الهواء أحد أكبر المشكلات التي تهدد صحة الإنسان. يحدث تلوث الهواء بسبب الطائرات وحركة المرور و المصانع ومحطات الطاقة. عندما نحرق الحفريات ونستخدم مواد تنظيف كيميائية قوية لتنظيف منازلنا، فإننا نتسبب في التلوث. ومع ذلك، هناك بعض الطرق الجديدة والمثيرة لحل مشكلة تلوث الهواء. لقد علمنا عن أجهزة تنقية الغازات والأبراج الخالية من الضباب الدخاني التي تساعد على تنظيف الغازات والتلوث الناتج عن المصانع والصناعة. هناك طريقة أخرى والتي أصبحت مشهورة تسمى التخضير. التخضير هو زراعة جدار من النباتات على جانب المبنى.

Why is this helpful? The plants help to clean the air because they absorb carbon dioxide and they produce oxygen. The plants also catch dust and other harmful pollution. In hot countries, the green walls provide shade and help to cool the air. The cool air stops the buildings from getting too hot in summer. The plants keep the buildings warm in winter. The cooler temperatures are also easier for people to live in. The plants also provide homes for bees, insects,and birds, so greening helps nature, too.

لماذا هذا مفيد؟ تساعد النباتات على تنقية الهواء لأنها تمتص ثاني أكسيد الكربون وتنتج الأكسجين. ثم تلتقط النباتات أيضًا الغبار والتلوث الضار. وفي البلدان الحارة، توفر الجدران الخضراء الظل وتساعد على تبريد الهواء. يمنع الهواء البارد المباني من أن تصبح شديدة الحرارة في الصيف. تحافظ النباتات على دفء المباني في الشتاء. كما أن درجات الحرارة الباردة تسهل على الناس العيش فيها. وتوفر النباتات أيضًا منازل للنحل والحشرات والطيور، لذا فإن التخضير يساعد الطبيعة أيضًا.



Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.



# Activities

## 1 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

solutions - causes - Air pollution - factories - problem

Omar : What is the most dangerous 1) ........................................?

Baraa : 2) ................................ is the most dangerous problem.

Omar : What 3) ........................................................ air pollution?

Baraa : Smoke from 4) ................................................. and cars.

Omar : What should we do?

Baraa : We should find 5) ............................ to these problems.

## 2 Choose the correct answer.

1. Dr Nesma Hegazy talks mostly about ........................ air pollution.
   a) outdoor b) door c) window d) home
2. The ........................................................ make air pollution worse.
   a) fossil fuels b) rain c) tsunami d) trees
3. A/An ...... free towers help to clean gases and pollution from factories.
   a) smog b) smoke c) flu d) tree
4. When you give a presentation, make .... contact with the class.
   a) ear b) mouth c) eye d) hand
5. Don't move around a lot. Keep your ............... in the same place.
   a) hands b) feet c) legs d) eyes

## 3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

**Air pollution**

Guiding words:

smoke - factories - cause - solution - trees

..........................................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................................

# Review on Unit (10)

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| blog | مدونة | checklist | قائمة التدقيق والفحص |
| email | إيميل / البريد الإلكتروني | nasty | كريه / بغيض |
| vlog | مدونة فيديو | cyberfriends | أصدقاء على الإنترنت |
| website | موقع على الإنترنت | comments | تعليقات |
| access | دخول - مدخل | technology | تكنولوجيا |
| adventure | مُغامرة | electric car | سيارة كهربية |
| incredible | لا يُصدَّق - هائل | scrubber | مدخنة تنقية الغازات والأبخرة |
| keyboard | لوحة مفاتيح | improve | يُحسّن |
| create | ينشئ | reports | تقارير |
| currently | حاليًا | jewelry | حُلِي |
| fossil fuels | وقود حفري | presentation | عرض / تقديم |

| | |
|---|---|
| means of communication | وسائل الاتصال |
| instant message | رسالة فورية |
| electronic device | جهاز إلكتروني |
| social media account | حساب علي موقع التواصل الاجتماعي |
| social media platform | منصة وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي |
| smog-free tower | برج تنقية الهواء |
| global community | مجتمع عالمي |



Help your child revise unit (10).

• ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة العاشرة.

# Language Functions

## Giving advice (should - shouldn't)




**Subject + should + inf.**

- You should choose a title for your story.




**We use "should + inf" to say that something is a good idea.**

- You should check your work.



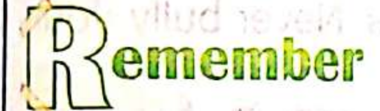

**Subject + shouldn't + inf.**

- You shouldn't forget your homework.

**We use "shouldn't + inf" to say that something is a bad idea.**

- You shouldn't be afraid to ask your teacher for help.

NOTE **shouldn't = should not**




- We put a period (.) at the end of a sentence.
- We put a comma (,) after "First / Dear Editor," and in lists.
- We put a question mark (?) at the end of the question.
- We use (and) to join similar ideas.

e.g. I like English and Arabic.

- We use (but) to join contrasting ideas.

e.g. He is poor, but he is happy.

- (or) is used instead of (and) in negative sentences.

e.g. She doesn't like maths or Arabic.




## Means of communication

There are a lot of means of communication. They help us send messages. An email is a digital form of a letter. You must have an account to send emails. A website is a home page on the World Wide Web. A blog is a special kind of website. A vlog is a personal website where people post videos for others.

## Air pollution

Air pollution is one of the most dangerous problems we face these days. It is caused by smoke from cars or factories which lead to unhealthy and polluted air. Pollution is harmful, so we should find solutions to this problem.

## Social media

Social media is very important. You can send messages and post videos. You also make some cyberfriends online. You should use it in a useful way. You shouldn't write nasty comments. If you find this, you can turn off the comments. Never bully your friends on social media.

**Write a letter to your manager. Ask him to create a new games club.**

Dear manager

I'm writing because I think that the school should create an after-school games club. As a fourth-grade student, I'd like to practise sports after school. It's fun and interesting.

Some of my friends are also interested in games after school. So I think it's a perfect idea.

Sincerely yours,

Ali Ahmed

4th grade



Help your child write paragraphs.

ساعد طفلك ان يكتب فقرات.



# Activities on Unit (10)

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 | Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I'm very .................................... today.
   a) bored b) good c) bad d) tired
2. Last night I played board games with my .................................... .
   a) brother b) sister c) dad d) mom
3. I had dinner and .................................... TV.
   a) made b) played c) watched d) cooked
4. I went to bed .................................... .
   a) early b) late c) now d) then

## 2 | Listen and complete.

1. I love playing .................................... .
2. I really want to join the school .................................... .
3. They are choosing the team .................................... month.
4. My .................................... don't like football.

## 3 | Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

topic - access - devices - website

A 1) .................... is a home page on the World Wide Web. Websites are usually about one 2) .................... . Users can 3) .................... websites from different electronic 4) .................... like smartphones, tablets, and laptops.

## 4 | Read the following text and answer the questions.

There are many means of communication. A website is a home page on the World Wide Web. Websites are usually about one topic. Users can access websites from different electronic devices like smartphones, tablets, and laptops.

A blog is a special kind of website. It usually belongs to one person who posts information there regularly for others to read. There are blogs about many different topics like sports or cooking .

A vlog is similar to a blog because it is a personal website where people post information for others. The difference is that on a vlog, people post videos they make instead of written texts.

### A) Choose the correct answer.

1. A/An .................................................... is a special kind of website.
   a) blog  b) vlog  c) log  d) advice
2. Websites are usually about .................................................... topic.
   a) one  b) two  c) three  d) four

### B) Answer the following questions.

3. How can users access websites?

....................................................................................................

4. What is th general idea of the text?

....................................................................................................

## 5 The Reader

### A | Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Amir sent the picture of the seagull to his friends. ( )
2. People use billions of plastic bags in Egypt. ( )



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

3. The friends meet at Amir's ........................................................ .

a) park b) garden c) school d) house

4. The friends were ........................................................ about the bird.

a) happy b) worried c) delighted d) excited

## 6 Choose the correct answer.

1. A ........................................ is a home page on the World Wide Web.

a) vlog b) blog c) website d) presentation

2. You ........................................................ forget punctuation while writing.

a) should b) shouldn't c) can d) must

3. Some comments on social media are good, but others are......

a) glad b) nasty c) kind d) nice

4. You ........................................................ make eye contact with the class.

a) should b) shouldn't c) can't d) may

## 7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. need - do - you - What - an email - send - to - ?

..........................................................................................................................

2. a difficult - have - I - test - math - tomorrow - .

..........................................................................................................................

## 8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

**Pros and cons of social media**

Guiding words:

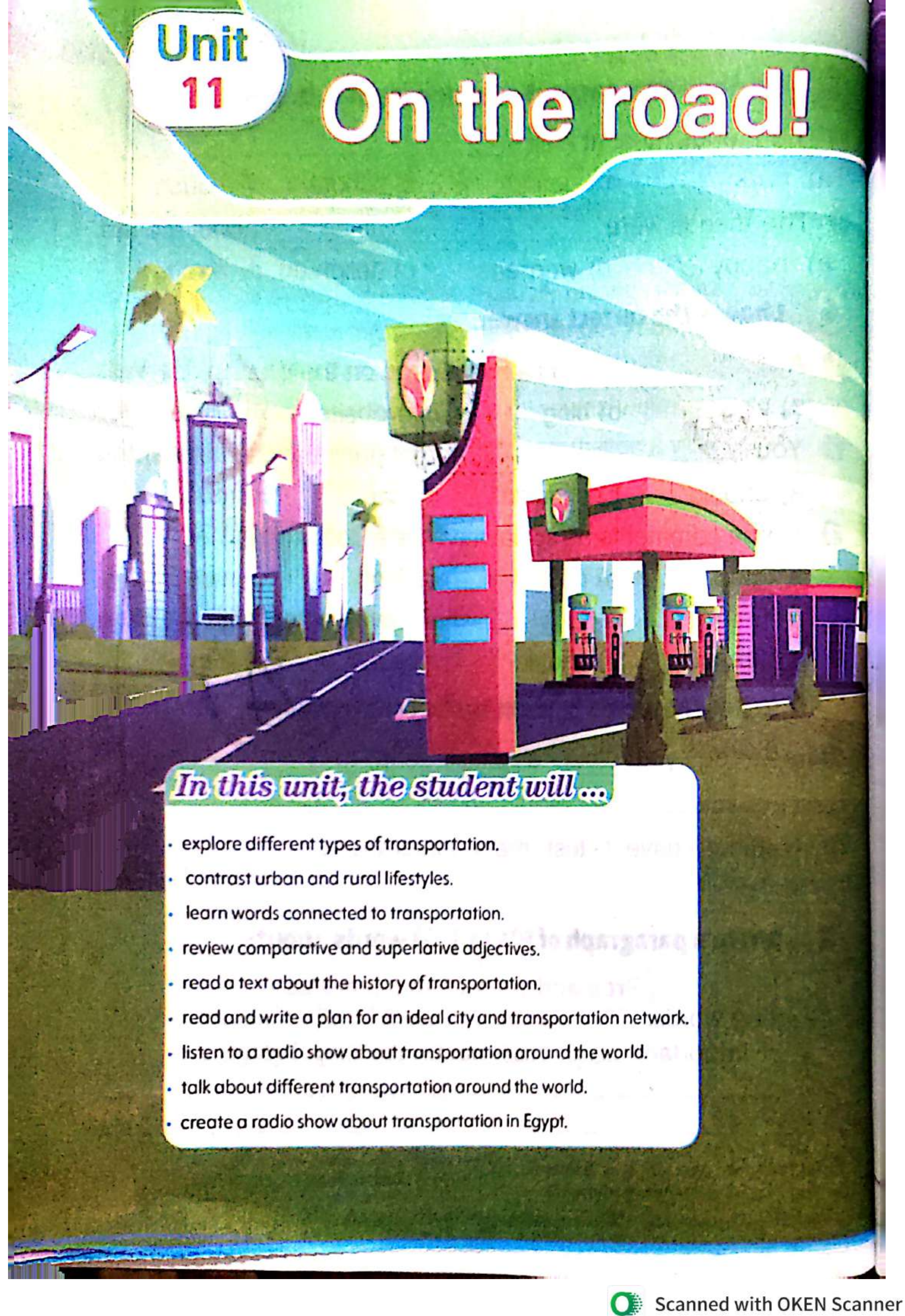
important- send- chat- waste- too long- break- eye

..........................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................






Unit
11
On the road!
In this unit, the student will ...
• explore different types of transportation.
• contrast urban and rural lifestyles.
• learn words connected to transportation.
• review comparative and superlative adjectives.
• read a text about the history of transportation.
• read and write a plan for an ideal city and transportation network.
• listen to a radio show about transportation around the world.
• talk about different transportation around the world.
• create a radio show about transportation in Egypt.




# TRANSPORTATION

## Key vocabulary 🎧 Listen and say.

### Traffic Signs لافتات المرور




Stop
قف




Go slow
سر ببطء



Don't turn left
لا تتجه لليسار



animals on the road
حيوانات على الطريق



wear a seat belt
ارتدي حزام أمان



## Did you know?

There are more than 1.4 billion vehicles on the Earth. There are about 7.2 million electric cars.

هناك أكثر من 1.4 مليار مركبة على الأرض، يوجد حوالي 7.2 مليون سيارة كهربائية.

Help your child identify traffic signs.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على إشارات المرور.








## Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| transportation | نقل / مواصلات | traffic jam | ازدحام المرور |
| destination | وجهة الوصول | nowadays | في هذه الأيام |
| exciting | مُثير | public transportation | مواصلات عامة |
| traffic lights | إشارات المرور | activities | انشطة |
| problem | مشكلة | pollution | تلوث |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

**Regular verbs** أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| cause | يسبب | caused |
| love | يحب | loved |
| stop | يتوقف | stopped |
| move | يتحرك | moved |
| reach | يصل | reached |
| continue | يستمر | continued |

**Irregular verbs** أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| meet | يقابل | met |
| sit | يجلس | sat |
| take | يأخذ / يستغرق (وقتًا) | took |
| make | يجعل / يصنع | made |
| wear | يرتدي | wore |
| leave | يغادر | left |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| take an hour | يستغرق ساعة | sit in | يجلس في |
| on my way to | في طريقي إلى | reach in... | يصل في خلال |
| make the traffic worse | يجعل المرور أسوأ | Be careful | كن حذرًا |
| exciting places to live | أماكن مثيرة للمعيشة | in front of | أمام |
| on time | في الوقت المحدد | | |



Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Look and read.

Cities are exciting places to live. There are a lot of activities and people to meet. There are also good hospitals, schools, and public transportation. However, many cities nowadays have a big problem: traffic.

I love my city but every morning we have to sit in a traffic jam on my way to school. The cars and buses stop, and we can't move. The trip to school sometimes takes us an hour! The traffic lights are often red and that makes the traffic even worse. We leave home very early so I can make it to school on time. I can't make the trip on foot because my school is too far to walk to. We have good public transportation. The problem is that buses don't always go to the destination you want.

المدن هي أماكن مثيرة للعيش فيها. هناك الكثير من الأنشطة والأشخاص الذين يمكنك مقابلتهم. هناك أيضًا مستشفيات ومدارس جيدة ووسائل نقل عام. ومع ذلك، تواجه العديد من المدن في الوقت الحاضر مشكلة كبيرة: حركة المرور.

أنا أحب مدينتي ولكن علينا أن نجلس كل صباح وسط ازدحام مروري في طريقي إلى المدرسة. تتوقف السيارات والحافلات ولا نستطيع التحرك. تستغرق الرحلة إلى المدرسة أحيانًا ساعة! غالبًا ما تكون إشارات المرور حمراء مما يجعل حركة المرور أسوأ. نغادر المنزل مبكرًا جدًا حتى أتمكن من الوصول إلى المدرسة في الوقت المحدد. لا أستطيع القيام بالرحلة سيرًا على الأقدام لأن مدرستي بعيدة جدًا بحيث لا يمكن الوصول إليها سيرًا على الأقدام. لدينا وسائل نقل عام جيدة. المشكلة هي أن الحافلات لا تذهب دائمًا إلى الوجهة التي تريدها.






In 1868, the first traffic light was in London in front of the Houses of Parliament.

في عام 1868 كانت أول إشارة مرور في لندن أمام البرلمان.

Help your child look and read.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ.







# Activities

## 1 | Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

trip - jam - always - traffic

Anas : Is there a lot of 1) .................................... where you live?
Seif : Yes, there is.
Anas : Do you sit in a traffic 2) .................... on your way to school?
Seif : Not often.
Anas : Do you have a long 3) .................................... to school?
Seif : Yes, I 4) .................................................................. have.

## 2 | Choose the correct word.

1. Do you go to school .................................................................. foot?
   a) in b) on c) at d) by
2. Cities are .................................................................. places to live.
   a) boring b) bad c) exciting d) ugly
3. Are there traffic .................................................. where you live?
   a) lights b) lamps c) candles d) bags
4. You must wear your seat .................................................................. .
   a) cap b) jacket c) belt d) hat
5. Go .................................................. . There are children playing.
   a) fast b) slowly c) quickly d) quick
6. Be .................................................. . There are animals on the road.
   a) careful b) careless c) polite d) rude
7. The train will reach its .................................................. in about an hour.
   a) destination b) transportation c) place d) seat
8. All the cars and trucks in the city cause a lot of ............................ .
   a) revolution b) station c) pollution d) solution
9. Malak is never on .................................................. . She's always late.
   a) place b) time c) hour d) minute
10. Cars, buses and trains are good means of ............................ .
    a) transportation b) evaporation c) destination d) station


Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



## 3 | Read the following text and answer the questions.

My name is Reem. I live in a big city. It's a very exciting to live there. I do a lot of activities and meet a lot of friends. I love my city very much but I have a big problem. Every day, I have to sit in a traffic jam on my way to school. The trip to school takes one hour. I leave home very early to get to school on time. My school is very far so I can't go on foot. Buses are good but they don't always go to the destination I want.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. The underlined word "far" is opposite to ........................ .
   a) big b) small c) near d) early
2. She sits in a traffic ........................ .
   a) juice b) jam c) bread d) bottle

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. Where does Reem live? ........................
4. How long does the trip to school take? ........................

## 4 | Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. your - must - belt - You - wear - seat - .
........................
2. places - live - Cities - exciting - to - are - .
........................
3. get - school - Do - to - time - you - on - ?
........................

## 5 | Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about.

**Traffic**

Guiding elements:

1. Is there a lot of traffic in your neighbourhood?
2. How long is your trip to school?
3. How often do you get into a traffic jam?




# LANGUAGE

## Key vocabulary 🎧 Listen and say.

### Cleaner Urban environment بيئة حضرية أكثر نظافة


green spaces
مساحات خضراء


recycle
يعيد تدوير


bike paths
حارات - ممرات للدراجات


recycling bins
صناديق إعادة التدوير

## Definitions

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| green spaces | empty green areas. | مساحات خضراء |
| recycle | to treat waste materials so that they can be used again. | يعيد تدوير |
| bike paths | a road for bikes only. | حارات / مسارات للدراجات |
| residents | people who live in a particular place. | سكان |
| recycling bins | bins for things which will be treated again and be used. | صناديق إعادة التدوير |
| volunteer | someone who offers to do something for free . | متطوع |
| reduce | to make something smaller or less. | يقلل |
| reuse | to use something again. | يعيد استخدام |



Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| science museum | متحف العلوم | garbage | قمامة |
| important | مهم | angry | غاضب |
| glass | زجاج | neighborhood | حي سكني |
| paper | ورق | waste | نفايات |
| plastic | بلاستيك | ecological | بيئي |
| metal | معدن | friendly | ودود |
| famous | مشهور | messy | فوضوي |
| desert | صحراء | expensive | غالي الثمن |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

*Regular verbs* أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| create | يبتكر | created |
| recycle | يعيد تدوير | recycled |
| reduce | يقلل | reduced |
| reuse | يعيد استخدام | reused |
| disconnect | يقطع الإتصال | disconnected |

*Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| mean | يعني - يقصد | meant |
| ride | يركب | rode |
| throw | يلقي - يرمي | threw |
| learn | يتعلم | learned (t) |
| think | يعتقد | thought |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| reduce the waste | يقلل النفايات | learn a lot about | يتعلم الكثير عن |
| be the best | يكون الأفضل | It's important to | من المهم أن |
| need to | يحتاج أن | as much as possible | قدر الإمكان - قدر المستطاع |
| use for | يستخدم لـ | pick up garbage | يلتقط (يجمع) القمامة |
| make me angry | يغضبني | | |
| That sounds like a good idea to me | هذه تبدو فكرة جيدة لي | | |

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.








## Listen and read.

**Dina** : Hey, Talia. Did you go to the science museum with your class yesterday?
أهلًا، تاليا. هل ذهبتِ إلى متحف العلوم مع فصلك بالأمس؟

**Talia** : Yes, we did. I learned a lot about creating a cleaner urban environment.
نعم. لقد تعلمت الكثير عن خلق بيئة حضرية أنظف.

**Dina** : Oh, really? What did you learn?
أوه حقًا؟ ماذا تعلمتِ؟

**Talia** : Well, it's important to have green spaces in a city. The air is cleaner there. And people are happier when they have green spaces too. So, that means we need more parks and trees in our cities. If we need to water these green spaces, we can recycle water.
حسنًا، من المهم وجود مساحات خضراء في المدينة. فالهواء أنظف هناك. ويكون الناس أكثر سعادة عندما تكون لديهم مساحات خضراء أيضًا. وهذا يعني أننا بحاجة إلى المزيد من الحدائق والأشجار في مدننا. إذا كنا بحاجة إلى ري هذه المساحات الخضراء، فيمكننا إعادة تدوير المياه.

**Dina** : That sounds like a good idea to me. We need fewer cars too, don't we?
هذه تبدو فكرة جيدة بالنسبة لي. نحن بحاجة إلى عدد أقل من السيارات أيضًا، أليس كذلك؟

**Talia** : Yes, and we need bike paths for people to ride their bikes on.
نعم، ونحن بحاجة إلى مسارات للدراجات ليتمكن الناس من ركوب دراجاتهم عليها.

**Dina** : I agree. What can residents do to help?
أنا اتفق معك. ما الذي يمكن أن يفعله السكان للمساعدة؟

**Talia** : One of the best things we can do is to use recycling bins for our glass, paper, plastic, and metal. And I learned that in some places, people volunteer to pick up garbage in parks.
أحد أفضل الأشياء التي يمكننا القيام بها هو استخدام صناديق إعادة التدوير للزجاج والورق والبلاستيك والمعادن. وعلمت أنه في بعض الأماكن، يتطوع الناس لجمع القمامة في الحدائق.

**Dina** : People who throw garbage really make me angry! I'd like to be the best volunteer in my neighbourhood!
الناس الذين يرمون القمامة يجعلونني غاضبًا حقًا! أود أن أكون أفضل متطوع في حيي!

**Talia** : And do you know about the 3 Rs?
وهل تعرفي الـ 3 Rs؟

**Dina** : I don't think so.
لا أعتقد ذلك.

**Talia** : Reduce, Reuse, and Recycle. Reduce the waste you create. Reuse things as much as possible before buying new ones. And recycle everything you can.
تقليل وإعادة الاستخدام وإعادة التدوير. قلل النفايات التي تسبب فيها. أعد استخدام الأشياء قدر الإمكان قبل شراء أشياء جديدة. وأعد تدوير كل ما تستطيع.

**Dina** : I hope we can all be more ecological in the future.
أتمنى أن يكون لدينا اهتمام أكثر بالبيئة في المستقبل.



Help your child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك ان يستمع ويقرأ.



# Comparative & Superlative

## Comparative Adjectives

### Usage

We use comparative adjectives to compare two people or two things. نستخدم صيغة المقارنة لنقارن بين شخصين أو شيئين.

### Short Adjectives

have one or two syllables. الصفات القصيرة تتكون من مقطع أو مقطعين.

### Form

Short adjective (صفة قصيرة) + er + than

clean ⟶ cleaner than

### Spelling rules

1. Adjectives ending in (-e), only add (r) to the adjective.

مع الصفات المنتهية بـ(e)، فقط نضيف (r) للصفة.

nice ⟶ nicer than

2. Adjectives ending in one vowel and one consonant, double the last consonant.

مع الصفات المنتهية بحرف متحرك واحد ثم حرف ساكن واحد، نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير.

fat ⟶ fatter than

3. Adjectives ending in (a consonant + y), change the (y) into (i) and add (-er).

مع الصفات المنتهية بحرف y مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن، فإننا نحول حرف y إلى i ونضيف er.

heavy ⟶ heavier than

### Long adjectives

more / less + long adjective (صفة طويلة) + than

expensive ⟶ more expensive than / less expensive than

Help your child to review comparative and superlative adjectives.
ساعد طفلك في مراجعة صفات المقارنة وصيغ التفضيل.





# Superlative Adjectives

## Usage

We use superlative adjectives to compare someone or something with a group. نستخدم صيغة التفضيل لمقارنة شخص ما أو شيء ما مع مجموعة أخرى.

## Form

the + short adjective (صفة قصيرة) + est

small ⟶ the smallest

## Spelling rules

1. Adjectives ending in (-e), only add (-st).

الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف (e) نضيف لها (st-) فقط.

large ⟶ the largest

2. Adjectives ending in one vowel and one consonant, double the last consonant.

الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف متحرك واحد ثم حرف ساكن واحد، نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير.

big ⟶ the biggest

3. Adjectives anding in (-y), change the (y) into (i) then add (est).

الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف (y) مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن. نحول حرف (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (est).

heavy ⟶ the heaviest

## Long adjectives

the most / the least + long adj. (صفة طويلة)

**expensive ⟶ the most expensive / the least expensive**



Help your child to review comparative and superlative adjectives.
ساعد طفلك في مراجعة صفات المقارنة وصيغ التفضيل.

## 1 | Choose the correct word.

1. Trees are .................................... than flowers.
   a) large  b) larger  c) largest  d) small
2. The film is .................................... than the book.
   a) the most interesting  b) interesting
   c) boring  d) more interesting
3. The bike is .................................... than the car.
   a) smaller  b) small  c) smallest  d) bags
4. An electric car is .................................... expensive than a bike.
   a) more  b) most  c) less  d) many
5. Cairo is the .................................... city in Egypt.
   a) large  b) larger  c) largest  d) small

## 2 | Write the comparative and superlative adjectives in the table.

| Adjective | Comparative adjective | Superlative adjective |
|---|---|---|
| green | .................... | .................... |
| big | .................... | .................... |
| interesting | .................... | .................... |
| large | .................... | .................... |
| expensive | .................... | .................... |
| small | .................... | .................... |

# The Prefix البادئات (dis - re - un)

**The prefix "re-" means "again" as in:**

⇨ reuse : to use again ⇨ replay : to play again

⇨ recycle : to make again ⇨ rewrite: to write again

**e.g.** I reuse plastic bottles.

**The prefixes "un-" and "dis-" mean "not" as in:**

⇨ unhappy : not happy ⇨ unhealthy: not healthy

⇨ unfriendly : not friendly ⇨ unpolpular : not popular

⇨ dislike : don't / doesn't like ⇨ disconnect: not connect

⇨ dishonest : not honest ⇨ disagree: don't / doesn't agree

**e.g.** Sweets are unhealthy.

**e.g.** I dislike playing tennis but I like football.

## Choose the correct word.

1. To use something again means to ........................ it.
   a) dislike b) unhealthy c) reuse d) reuse
2. Kareem is crying. He is ........................ .
   a) happy b) glad c) delighted d) unhappy
3. I ........................ playing tennis but I like football.
   a) like b) love c) likes d) dislike
4. The teacher told me to ........................ the lesson again.
   a) reuse b) replay c) rewrite d) recycle
5. When we make something again, we ........................ it.
   a) reuse b) recycle c) use d) disconnect
6. ........................ the computer after using it.
   a) Disconnect b) Disagree c) Disadvantage d) Connect
7. My father asked us to ........................ the shopping bags.
   a) recycle b) break c) reply d) rewrite



Help your child identify the prefixes.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على معاني المقاطع البادئة.

# Activities

## 1 | Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

recycle - spaces - paths - urban

Amira : How do we create a cleaner 1) .................... environment?
Heba : We should have green 2) .................... in a city.
Amira : How can we water them?
Heba : We can 3) .................... water.
Amira : What else do we need?
Heba : We need bike 4) .................... .

## 2 | Choose the correct word.

1. You should .................... the waste you create.
   a) reduce b) reuse c) recycle d) use
2. Residents should use .................... bins.
   a) cycling b) recycling c) circle d) cycle
3. It's important to have .................... spaces in a city.
   a) red b) yellow c) green d) black
4. A .................... is someone who does something for free.
   a) volunteer b) teacher c) doctor d) dentist
5. I went to the science .................... yesterday.
   a) park b) bank c) hotel d) museum
6. The Nile is the .................... river in the world.
   a) longest b) longer c) long d) small
7. Cats are .................... than tigers.
   a) friendlier b) friendly c) friendliest d) friend
8. The baby is the .................... one in the family.
   a) young b) younger c) youngest d) small
9. Parks are greener .................... the desert.
   a) the b) than c) then d) now
10. Reading is .................... interesting than watching TV.
    a) more b) most c) least d) little

## 3 | Read the following text and answer the questions.

Yesterday I went on a school trip to the science museum. There, I learned a lot about creating a cleaner urban environment. I learned that it's important to have green spaces in a city to have cleaner air. Green spaces make people happier. To do this, we need more parks and trees in our cities. We can recycle water to water them. I learned that we should reduce cars in our city. We should use bikes more. So, we need bike paths for people to ride their bikes on. Residents should help also by using recycling bins.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. I went to the ........................ yesterday.
   a) park b) science museum c) zoo d) bank
2. We should ........................ water to water the plants.
   a) recycle b) reduce c) reuse d) use

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What is the general idea of the text? ........................
4. Why do we need bike paths? ........................

## 4 | Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. busier - Cairo - Damietta - than - is - .

........................

2. is - world - Nile - The - longest - the - river - in the - .

........................

3. are - Cats - than - friendlier - tigers - .

........................

## 5 | Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about.

**A cleaner urban environment**

Guiding elements:

(green spaces - recycle - bike paths - recycling bins)

........................

........................



# Lesson (3) TRANSPORTATION IN THE PAST

## Key vocabulary Listen and say.

### Kinds of transportation
أنواع وسائل النقل والمواصلات


walking
المشي


a mule
بغل


a canoe
زورق


a wagon
عربة (نقل)


a steam train
قطار بخاري


an airplane
طائرة


a subway
مترو


rocket
صاروخ

## Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| highway | طريق سريع | goods | بضائع |
| types | أنواع | rural areas | مناطق ريفية |
| humans | بشر | steam engine | محرك (قاطرة) بخارية |
| rope | حبل | gasoline | بنزين - غازولين |
| wheel | عجلة | distance | مسافة |

Help your child identify type of transportation.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على أنواع وسائل المواصلات.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| cart | عربة كارو | continent | قارة |
| forms | أشكال | fossil fuels | وقود حفري |
| skiff | قارب بدائي مصنوع من نبات البردي | direction | اتجاه |
| wind | رياح | high-speed trains | قطارات فائقة السرعة |
| the country | الريف | solar panels | الألواح الشمسية |
| papyrus | ورق بردي | oars | مجاديف |
| sail | شراع | roofs | أسطح |
| invention | اختراع | streetcar | الترام |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| move | ينتقل | moved |
| invent | يخترع | invented |
| start | يبدأ | started |
| change | يغير | changed |
| appear | يظهر | appeared |
| transport | ينقل | transported |
| design | يصمم | designed |

### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| begin | يبدأ | began |
| come | يأتي | came |
| run | يجري | ran |
| buy | يشتري | bought |
| fly | يطير | flew |
| send | يرسل | sent |
| make | يصنع | made |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| move from... to... | ينتقل من ... إلى... | run on | يدار بـ |
| transport...to... | ينقل...إلى... | fly through | يطير عبر (خلال) |
| along the river | على طول النهر | bad for | ضار بـ |



Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Listen and read.

### Transportation Then and Now

Transportation is the way that people move from one place to another. It is also the way that people move things from one place to another. A long time ago, the only types of transportation for humans were walking, running, and swimming.

النقل هو الطريقة التي ينتقل بها الناس من مكان إلى آخر. إنها أيضًا الطريقة التي ينقل بها الأشخاص الأشياء من مكان إلى آخر. منذ زمن طويل، كانت وسائل النقل الوحيدة للإنسان هي المشي والجري والسباحة.

After that, humans began to use animals like mules, donkeys, and horses. Then came small boats like canoes and other types of water transportation. Once they invented the wheel, people started to use small wagons and carts. Farmers in the country could transport their goods to markets in cities more easily. In rural areas, many people still use these means of transportation today.

وبعد ذلك بدأ الإنسان في استخدام الحيوانات مثل البغال والحمير والخيول. ثم جاءت القوارب الصغيرة مثل الزوارق وغيرها من وسائل النقل المائي. بمجرد اختراع العجلة، بدأ الناس في استخدام العربات الصغيرة. يمكن للمزارعين في البلاد نقل بضائعهم إلى الأسواق في المدن بسهولة أكبر. وفي المناطق الريفية، لا يزال الكثير من الناس يستخدمون وسائل النقل هذه اليوم.

The invention of the steam engine changed transportation. Ships with steam engines could travel much faster than using people or the wind to move boats. The first steam train was in Wales in the 1800s. The train made trips between rural and urban areas faster and safer. The first car that ran on gasoline also appeared in the 1800s. People bought cars to make their lives easier. Cities like London and Boston had some of the first streetcars and subway systems. The subway in London opened in 1863. Soon, high-speed trains made traveling between rural and urban areas very fast.

أدى اختراع المحرك البخاري إلى تغيير وسائل النقل. يمكن للسفن ذات المحركات البخارية أن تسافر بسرعة أكبر بكثير من استخدام البشر أو الرياح لتحريك القوارب. أول قطار بخاري كان في ويلز في القرن التاسع عشر. قام القطار برحلات بين المناطق الريفية والحضرية بشكل أسرع وأكثر أمانًا. ظهرت أيضًا أول سيارة تعمل بالبنزين في القرن التاسع عشر. اشترى الناس السيارات لتسهيل حياتهم. كان لدى مدن مثل لندن وبوسطن بعض من أولى عربات الترام وأنظمة مترو الأنفاق. تم افتتاح مترو الأنفاق في لندن عام 1863. وسرعان ما جعلت القطارات عالية السرعة السفر بين المناطق الريفية والحضرية سريعًا للغاية.

Help your child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.









From the beginning of time, humans watched birds and wanted to fly through the skies. Today, we fly from one continent to another in no more than one day. We are even able to send people to the Moon in rockets. The problem with transportation that uses gasoline is that it burns fossil fuels, and these are bad for the environment. So today, people are developing cleaner forms of transportation like electric cars. There are even electric buses that use some solar energy from solar panels on their roofs. Engineers are designing greener airplanes and ships, too.

منذ بداية الزمن، كان البشر يراقبون الطيور ويريدون التحليق في السماء. واليوم، نسافر من قارة إلى أخرى في مدة لا تزيد عن يوم واحد. بل إننا قادرون على إرسال البشر إلى القمر بالصواريخ. مشكلة وسائل النقل التي تستخدم البنزين هي أنه يحرق الوقود الحفري، وهو مضر بالبيئة. لذلك، اليوم، يقوم الناس بتطوير أشكال أنظف من وسائل النقل مثل السيارات الكهربائية. حتى أن هناك حافلات كهربائية تستخدم بعض الطاقة الشمسية من الألواح الشمسية الموجودة على أسطحها. ويقوم المهندسون بتصميم طائرات وسفن صديقة للبيئة أيضًا.

## Listen and read.

In ancient Egypt, the most important highway was the River Nile. The Egyptians traveled mostly along the river because all the major cities were along the River Nile. So boats and ships were the most important form of transportation.

في مصر القديمة، كان الطريق السريع الأكثر أهمية هو نهر النيل. سافر المصريون في الغالب على طول النهر بسبب أن جميع المدن الكبرى كانت على طول نهر النيل. لذلك كانت القوارب والسفن هي أهم وسائل النقل.

Most Egyptians used a small boat called a skiff. They made this simple boat from papyrus and rope. People could travel short distances in these boats, or they could use it for fishing. They used oars to make the boats move. They made larger boats and ships from wood. These ships had a large sail to catch the wind and they used oars to move and control the direction. The Egyptians built many different kinds of boats for traveling, fishing, and transporting goods.

استخدم معظم المصريين قاربًا صغيرًا يسمى المركب الشراعي الصغير. لقد صنعوا هذا القارب البسيط من ورق البردي والحبال. كان بإمكان الناس السفر لمسافات قصيرة بهذه القوارب، أو يمكنهم استخدامها لصيد الأسماك. لقد استخدموا المجاديف لتحريك القوارب. لقد صنعوا قوارب وسفنًا أكبر من الخشب. وكان لهذه السفن شراع كبير لالتقاط الريح، وكانت تستخدم المجاديف للتحرك والتحكم في الاتجاه. بنى المصريون العديد من أنواع القوارب المختلفة للسفر وصيد الأسماك ونقل البضائع.



Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك ان يستمع ويقرأ.



# Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 | Listen and complete.

1. The invention of the steam engine changed .........................................
2. ......................................... with steam engines could travel much faster.
3. The first ......................................................................... train was in Wales.
4. The train made trips ......................................................................... and safer.

## 2 | Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

cheap - like - transportation - faster

Adel : What's your favorite means of 1) ....................................................?
Amr : The subway.
Adel : Why do you 2) .................................................................................it?
Amr : Because it is 3) ..................................................................................
Adel : Is it 4) ................................................................................ than the bus?
Amr : Yes, it is.

## 3 | Choose the correct word.

1. We are able to ................................. people to the Moon in rockets.
   a) send b) receive c) come d) go
2. The invention of the ..................... engine changed transportation.
   a) boiled b) steam c) heated d) grilled
3. ................................ are designing greener airplanes and ships, too.
   a) Teachers b) Engineers c) Doctors d) Bakers
4. In ..... areas, many people still use old means of transportation.
   a) urban b) modern c) rural d) new
5. There are electric buses that use ............................................. energy.
   a) sun b) solar c) moon d) sky
6. Humans began to use animals like ..................... for transportation.
   a) mules b) tigers c) monkeys d) elephants

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## 4 | Read the following text and answer the questions.

Long time ago, the only types of transportation for humans were walking, running, and swimming. After that, they used animals like mules, donkeys, and horses. Then, they used small boats. Once the wheel was invented, people started to use wagons and carts. The steam engine made a big change in transportation. Ships and trains could travel faster.

Then, the car was invented and people started to buy it. The problem with transportation that uses gasoline is that it burns fossil fuels, and these are bad for the environment.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. People started to use wagons and carts when the .................... was invented.
   a) bike b) car c) wheel d) rocket
2. Ships and trains could travel ..................................................
   a) slow b) far c) faster d) slower

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What animals did they use for transportation? ..............................
4. Mention three kinds of transportation in the text. ............................

## 5 | Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. steam - The - train - was - first - Wales - in - .

..........................................................................................

2. developing - forms - new - People - are - transportation - of - .

..........................................................................................

3. could - markets - Farmers - goods - transport - to - their - .

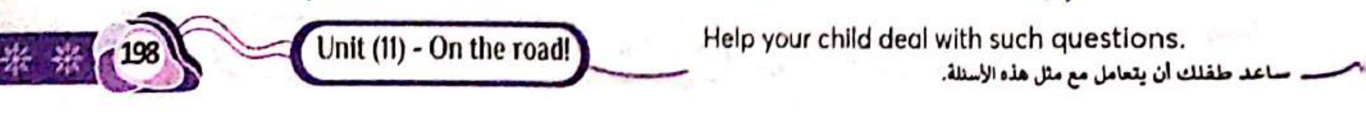
..........................................................................................

## 6 | Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about.

**Kinds of transportation**

Guiding elements:

(mules - canoe - steam train - faster - subway)





Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.




# WRITING

## Definitions

| | |
|---|---|
| roof | the top part of a building. سطح |
| canal | a long area of water, made for boats to travel on. قناة |
| water vapor | water in the form of gas. بخار الماء |
| Waterway | the different routes people use for traveling by water like a river, canal or lake. ممر مائي |

## Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| electricity | كهرباء | hydrogen gas | غاز الهيدروجين |
| palm trees | أشجار النخيل | nuclear | نووي |
| ferry | عبّاره (معدية) | system | نظم |
| electric energy | طاقة كهربية | dangerous | خطير |
| electric cab | سيارة أجرة كهربية | warm air | هواء دافئ |
| wind power | طاقة الرياح | driverless | بدون سائق |
| electric vehicles | مركبات كهربية | routes | طرق |
| dangerous gases | غازات خطيرة | water vapor | بخار الماء |
| historic | تاريخي | environment | البيئة |
| ecological | بيئي | personally | بصفة شخصية |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Present | Past | Present | Past |
|---|---|---|---|
| generate يولد | generated | provide يمد/يزود | provided |
| believe يعتقد | believed | protect يحمي | protected |
| produce ينتج | produced | burn يحرق/يحترق | burned / burnt |
| locate يقع (للمكان) | located | | |

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف علي هذه الكلمات.







## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| better for the environment | أفضل للبيئة | come from | يأتي من |
| solar energy farm | محطة طاقة شمسية | up and down | ذهابًا وإيابًا |
| is located on | تقع على | get around | يدور حول |
| a plan for | خطة لـ | important for | مهم لـ |
| provide shade | يمد بالظل | along the river | بطول النهر |
| generate electricity | يولد كهرباء | go for walks | يذهب للتمشية |

## Listen and read.

**My Ideal City:** مدينتي النموذجية:

My city is located on the Nile River. There are new homes, schools, and a hospital. There is also a large park where people can go for walks and play sports. I believe that parks are important for everyone. All the electricity in my city comes from a solar energy farm in the desert. The new homes have solar panels on their roofs too. There are palm trees around the houses to help them stay cooler. In my opinion, solar energy is better than burning fossil fuels because it is better for the environment.

مدينتي تقع على نهر النيل. هناك منازل جديدة ومدارس ومستشفى. يوجد أيضًا حديقة كبيرة حيث يمكن للناس الذهاب للتنزه وممارسة الرياضة. أعتقد أن الحدائق مهمة للجميع. كل الكهرباء في مدينتي تأتي من محطة للطاقة الشمسية في الصحراء. تحتوي المنازل الجديدة على ألواح شمسية على أسطحها أيضًا. توجد أشجار النخيل حول المنازل لمساعدتهم على البقاء أكثر برودة. في رأيي الطاقة الشمسية أفضل من حرق الوقود الحفري لأنها أفضل للبيئة.

**Water Transportation:** النقل البحري:

There is a great new ferry system that moves people up and down the river. The new ecological boats use both wind power and electric energy. The ferry can also use the new canals. The residents can use the ferry system to get around the town. Personally, I think it is



Help your child listen and read about an ideal city. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع و يقرأ عن مدينة نموذجية.

very important to protect our waterways. If we use greener boats, we can do that. These ecological boats are quieter than other boats too.

هناك نظام عبّارات جديد رائع ينقل الأشخاص إلى أعلى وأسفل النهر. تستخدم القوارب البيئية الجديدة طاقة الرياح والطاقة الكهربائية. يمكن للعبّارة أيضًا استخدام القنوات الجديدة. يمكن للمقيمين استخدام نظام العبّارات للتجول في جميع أنحاء المدينة. أنا شخصياً أعتقد أنه من المهم جدًا حماية ممراتنا المائية. إذا استخدمنا قوارب صديقة للبيئة، يمكننا أن نفعل ذلك. هذه القوارب البيئية أكثر هدوءًا من القوارب الأخرى أيضًا.

## Land Transportation: النقل البري:

All this transportation is now more ecological. There are electric cabs, but they don't have any drivers because they are driverless. I am sure that the air will be cleaner if we use electric vehicles. We also have buses that use power from hydrogen gas. From what I know, hydrogen vehicles don't produce any dangerous gases. They only produce warm air and water vapor. You can ride your bike all around the city on the bike paths. They go along the river and everywhere else in my city.

كل وسائل النقل هذه أصبحت الآن أكثر مرعاة للبيئة. هناك سيارات أجرة كهربائية، ولكن ليس بها أي سائقين لأنها بدون سائق. أنا متأكد من أن الهواء سيكون أنظف إذا استخدمنا السيارات الكهربائية. لدينا أيضًا حافلات تستخدم الطاقة من غاز الهيدروجين. حسب ما أعرفه، فإن مركبات الهيدروجين لا تنتج أي غازات خطيرة. أنها تنتج فقط الهواء الدافئ وبخار الماء. يمكنك ركوب دراجتك في جميع أنحاء المدينة على مسارات الدراجات. تمتد هذه المسارات على طول النهر وفي كل مكان آخر في مدينتي.

## Answer the following questions.

1. Where is your city located? ..........................................
2. Where does electricity in your city come from? ..........................................

## Choose the correct answer.

3. The city mostly uses .......................................... energy.
   a) unclear b) solar c) wind d) un
4. All transportation is now more .......................................... .
   a) logical b) illegal c) ecological d) biological





## Listen and read.

# My Green City

by Hana

My ideal city is located on the Red Sea coast. There are houses and apartments, schools, two museums, and a hospital. There are a lot of green spaces where people can go for walks, ride their bikes, and enjoy being in nature. Personally, I think that green spaces are the most important part of a city. There are also large trees in all the streets to provide shade.

مدينتي المثالية تقع على ساحل البحر الأحمر. هناك منازل وشقق ومدارس ومتحفين ومستشفى. هناك الكثير من المساحات الخضراء حيث يمكن للناس الذهاب للتنزه وركوب دراجاتهم والاستمتاع بالطبيعة. أنا شخصياً أعتقد أن المساحات الخضراء هي الجزء الأكثر أهمية في المدينة. كما توجد أشجار كبيرة في جميع الشوارع لتوفير الظل.

## Clean Energy

Most of the electricity for the city comes from a wind farm on the coast. The wind farm has 12 wind turbines that generate electricity. Many buildings have solar panels. In my opinion, all buildings should have solar panels on their roofs. I am sure that people will stop using fossil fuels soon because renewable energy is cleaner.

الطاقة النظيفة: تأتي معظم الكهرباء للمدينة من محطة الرياح على الساحل. تحتوي محطة الرياح على 12 توربينا رياح تولد الكهرباء. تحتوي العديد من المباني على ألواح شمسية. في رأيي، يجب أن تحتوي جميع المباني على ألواح شمسية على أسطحها. وأنا متأكد من أن الناس سوف يتوقفون عن استخدام الوقود الحفري قريبًا لأن الطاقة المتجددة أنظف.

## Transportation for Goods and People

There is a system of canals in my city with bike paths next to them. I believe that more people will ride their bikes if there are more bike paths. The canals provide more outdoor spaces for people to enjoy, but they also provide transportation.

يوجد نظام من القنوات في مدينتي وبجانبها مسارات للدرجات. أعتقد أن المزيد من الناس سوف يركبون دراجاتهم إذا كان هناك المزيد من مسارات الدراجات. توفر القنوات المزيد من المساحات الخارجية ليستمتع بها الناس، ولكنها توفر أيضًا وسائل النقل.



Help your child listen and read about an ideal city.
ساعد طفلك ان يستمع و يقرأ عن مدينة نموذجية.



Electric canal boats carry goods across the city, so there are fewer trucks on the road. The residents travel around the city on electric buses, streetcars, and cabs. All the transportation is electric so there is less pollution and the streets are quieter and cleaner.

تنقل قوارب القناة الكهربائية البضائع عبر المدينة، لذلك يوجد عدد أقل من الشاحنات على الطريق. يتنقل السكان حول المدينة بالحافلات الكهربائية وعربات الترام وسيارات الأجرة. جميع وسائل النقل كهربائية، لذلك يكون التلوث أقل والشوارع أكثر هدوءًا ونظافة.

### "Expressions for giving your opinion"

- I believe that.
- In my opinion.
- Personally, I think
- I am sure that
- From what I know.

### Writing Tip!

When you write a heading, you use capital letters for the important words. You don't have to use capital letters for conjunctions (and, so, but), articles (the, a, an), or prepositions (to, on, in, into, for).

### Write a plan for your ideal city

**You may cover the following.**

- Describe your ideal city صف مدينتك المثالية.
- Explain the transportation and how it is better for the environment. أشرح وسائل النقل وكيف أنها أفضل للبيئة.
- Use expressions for giving your opinion. استخدم التعبيرات لأبداء رأيك.
- Write a heading for each paragraph. اكتب عنوانا لكل فقرة.

## Model

**My Ideal City**

My ideal city is located on the Red Sea coast. There are houses and apartments, schools, a museum and a hospital. I am sure that all transportation here is ecological, ferries, canals and bikes. From what I know electric canal boats carry goods across the city. Personally I think it's an exciting place to live.





# Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 | Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My city is located on the ..........................................
   a) Nile River b) Red Sea c) Lake d) desert
2. There are .......................... homes, schools and a hospital.
   a) old b) new c) small d) far
3. There is a large .......................... where people can go for walks.
   a) zoo b) school c) library d) park
4. I believe that parks are .......................... for everyone.
   a) bad b) ugly c) important d) new

## 2 | Choose the correct word.

1. My city is located .......................... the Nile River.
   a) in b) on c) at d) with
2. I believe .......................... parks are important for everyone.
   a) that b) the c) then d) now
3. .........................., I think it is very important to protect our waterways.
   a) Person b) Personal c) Personally d) Mainly
4. Some vehicles don't have any drivers because they are ..........................
   a) careless b) driverless c) useless d) hopeless
5. Buses that use hydrogen produce .......................... air.
   a) cool b) cold c) warm d) hot
6. Solar energy is .......................... than burning fossil fuels.
   a) good b) better c) best d) bad
7. The wind farm has 12 wind turbines that .......................... electricity.
   a) build b) play c) waste d) generate
8. The city mostly uses .......................... energy from the sun.
   a) nuclear b) solar c) dirty d) moon



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

9. The electric buses produce ..................................................

a) hydrogen b) warm air c) fossil fuels d) oxygen

10. Boats that use gasoline are ....... than boats that use electricity.

a) louder b) quieter c) calmer d) slower

## 3 | Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. city - The - energy- green- uses- .

..........................................................................................

2. buses- vapor- The - produce - water- new- .

..........................................................................................

3. important- everyone- Parks - for- are- .

..........................................................................................

4. the- do- What - canals- provide- ?

..........................................................................................

## 4 | Read the following text and answer the questions.

My city is located on the Nile River. There are new homes, schools, and a hospital. There is also a large park where people can go for walks and play sports. I believe that parks are important for everyone. All the electricity in my city comes from a solar energy farm in the desert. The new homes have solar panels on their roofs, too. There are palm trees around the houses to help them stay cooler. In my opinion, solar energy is better than burning fossil fuels because it is better for the environment.

### A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "believe" means ..................................

a) move b) think c) write d) live

2. Fossil fuels are .................................................. for the environment.

a) good b) bad c) better d) nice

### B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where is your city? ..................................................

4. Where do the new homes have solar panels? ..................................................




# - TRANSPORTATION AROUND THE WORLD
# - PROJECT

## Key vocabulary


a cab
سيارة أجرة (تاكسي)


a car
سيارة


an airplane
طائرة


boat
قارب


bike
دراجة


a ferry
عبّارة


a train
قطار


a streetcar
ترام


a subway
مترو


The Netherlands
هولندا


The United States
الولايات المتحدة


Bangladesh
بنجلاديش



Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف علي هذه الكلمات.

## Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| advantages | مزايا | playground | ملعب |
| disadvantages | عيوب | mountains | جبال |
| countries | دول | host | مضيف |
| classmates | زملاء الفصل | guest | ضيف |
| task | مهمة | snow | جليد / تمطر ثلجا |

## Important expressions and prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| get **to** | يصل إلي | plan **for** | يخطط لـ |
| get wet | يبتل | **on** the way **to** | في الطريق إلي |
| stay warm | يظل دافئا | a radio show **about** | عرض إذاعي عن |

## Read and learn

| | |
|---|---|
| **streetcar** ترام | This travels around a town or city. يتنقل حول البلدة أو المدينة.<br>It can carry about 40 people. يحمل حوالي 40 شخص.<br>It doesn't use gasoline. لا يستخدم البنزين.<br>It's electric. إنه كهربي. |
| **ferry** عبّارة | This takes people or goods across rivers, lakes, or the sea تنقل الناس أو البضائع عبر الأنهار ، البحيرات و البحار.<br>It can be quite small or very big ممكن أن تكون صغيرة قليلا أو كبيرة جداً |
| **subway** مترو الانفاق | This travels underground. People use it to travel around cities. هذا يسافر تحت الأرض. يستخدمه الناس للسفر حول المدن.<br>It's fast and it isn't expensive. إنه سريع و ليس باهظ الثمن. |
| **cab** سيارة أجرة (تاكسي) | This transports people on roads around cities or towns. هذه تنقل الناس عبر الطرقات حول المدن الكبيرة والمدن الصغيرة.<br>Only three or four people can travel in this. يمكن لثلاثة أو أربعة أشخاص فقط الانتقال بها.<br>It can be expensive. ممكن أن تكون باهظة الثمن. |

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف علي هذه الكلمات.

## Listening

**Host** : Welcome back, everyone. Now we are going to take calls from some of our listeners. We want to know how children get to school where you live. Are there any advantages or disadvantages ? Hello, you're our first caller.

مرحبًا بكم من جديد. الآن سنتلقى مكالمات من بعض مستمعينا. نريد أن نعرف كيف يصل الأطفال إلى المدرسة حيث يعيشون. هل هناك أي مزايا أو عيوب؟ مرحبًا، أنت المتصل الأول معنا.

**Astrid** : Hi, this is Astrid from the Netherlands. A lot of children ride their bikes to school in my country. I think something like 75% of children actually. As you might know, the Netherlands is a very flat country,so it is easy to ride a bike - you don't have to go up any big hills or mountains. There are also a lot of bike paths. An advantage is that you exercise on the way to school . Another advantage is that it is good for the environment. A disadvantage is the weather -the Netherlands is a very rainy country so sometimes we get wet. My cousins live in Belgium, and they ride bikes to school too.

مرحبًا، أنا أستريد من هولندا. يركب الكثير من الأطفال دراجاتهم إلى المدرسة في بلدي. أعتقد أن ما يقرب من 75٪ من الأطفال في الواقع. كما تعلم، فإن هولندا بلد خالية من التضاريس، لذا فمن السهل أن تركب دراجة هوائية - ولا يتعين عليك صعود أي تلال أو جبال كبيرة. هناك أيضًا الكثير من مسارات الدراجات. الميزة هي أنك تمارس الرياضة في طريقك إلى المدرسة. ميزة أخرى هي أنها جيدة للبيئة. العيب هو الطقس - هولندا بلد ممطر جدًا لذا نبتل أحيانًا. يعيش أبناء عمي في بلجيكا، ويركبون الدراجات إلى المدرسة أيضًا.

**Host** : Thank you, Astrid. Now for our next caller.

شكرا لك، أستريد. الآن المتصل التالي.

Ethan : Hi there. I'm Ethan and I'm calling from Vermont in the United States. Children here usually take a school bus. We live in the mountains, and in the winter there's a lot of snow. It's too far to walk to school if you live in the country. School buses are good because they can travel long distances and keep children safe and warm. An advantage is that the school buses can carry a lot of children at the same time. A disadvantage is that they can't drive when there is a big snowstorm. So, sometimes school is closed on those days. Another disadvantage is that the buses use gasoline. I hope we get electric buses soon.

أهلاً. أنا إيثان وأتصل من ولاية فيرمونت في الولايات المتحدة. عادة ما يستقل الأطفال هنا حافلة مدرسية. نحن نعيش في الجبال، وفي الشتاء يتساقط الكثير من الثلج. يعد الذهاب إلى المدرسة بعيدًا جدًا إذا كنت تعيش في الريف. تعتبر الحافلات المدرسية جيدة لأنها تستطيع السفر لمسافات طويلة والحفاظ على سلامة الأطفال ودفئهم. والميزة هي أن الحافلات المدرسية يمكن أن تحمل الكثير من الأطفال في نفس الوقت. العيب هو أنهم لا يستطيعون القيادة عندما تكون هناك عاصفة ثلجية كبيرة. لذلك، في بعض الأحيان تكون المدرسة مغلقة في تلك الأيام. عيب آخر هو أن الحافلات تستخدم البنزين. آمل أن نحصل على حافلات كهربائية قريبًا.

Host : Thanks, Ethan. Next caller, please.

شكرا، إيثان. المتصل التالي، من فضلك.

Malti : Good afternoon. My name's Multi and I'm from Bangladesh. In Bangladesh, children use different kinds of transportation to get to school, like buses. But a lot of people also use boats. This may surprise you, but my school is on a boat. In the morning, the children wait for boat to arrive. We all get on and then pick up more children. Finally, we stop the boat on

Help your child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.





the side of the river and have our classes. Boats are good here because there is a lot of water. When there are the heavy rains, called monsoons, the roads are even underwater and you have to use a boat. One advantage of my school boat is that every child can go to it - even if their parents don't have a boat. One disadvantage is that we don't have a playground, so we play on the boat.

مساء الخير. اسمي مالتي وأنا من بنجلاديش. في بنجلاديش، يستخدم الأطفال أنواعًا مختلفة من وسائل النقل للوصول إلى المدرسة، مثل الحافلات. لكن الكثير من الأشخاص يستخدمون القوارب أيضًا. قد يفاجئك هذا، لكن مدرستي على متن قارب. في الصباح، ينتظر الأطفال وصول القارب. نتقدم جميعًا ثم نلتقط المزيد من الأطفال. وأخيراً، يقف القارب على ضفة النهر ونبدأ دروسنا. القوارب جيدة هنا لأن هناك الكثير من المياه، وعندما تهطل الأمطار الغزيرة، والتي تسمى الرياح الموسمية، تكون الطرق تحت الماء ويجب عليك استخدام قارب. إحدى ميزات القارب المدرسي الخاص بي هي أن كل طفل يمكنه الذهاب إليه - حتى لو لم يكن لدى والديه قارب. أحد العيوب هو أنه ليس لدينا ملعب، لذلك نلعب على متن القارب.

Amy : Hi. My name's Amy and I live in Mackinac island. It's a very small island in Lake Michigan in the US. It's a popular tourist destination. People like to take canoe trips on the lake in the summer, or they ride bikes around the island. The island is unusual because there are no cars and no buses. In winter it's very cold for 5 or 6 months and it snows heavily, so we can't ride our bikes to school like we do in summer. So, in winter we travel to school by snowmobile. My dad drives the snowmobile and I sit behind him. It's fun, and it's more exciting than riding a bike.

أهلاً. اسمي إيمي وأنا أعيش في جزيرة ماكيناك. إنها جزيرة صغيرة جدًا في بحيرة ميتشيجان في الولايات المتحدة. إنها مقصد سياحي شهير. يحب الناس القيام برحلات الزورق في البحيرة في فصل الصيف، أو ركوب الدراجات حول الجزيرة. الجزيرة غير عادية لأنه لا توجد بها سيارات ولا حافلات. في الشتاء يكون الجو باردًا جدًا لمدة 5 أو 6 أشهر وتتساقط الثلوج بغزارة لذلك لا يمكننا ركوب دراجاتنا إلى المدرسة كما نفعل في الصيف. لذلك، في فصل الشتاء، نسافر إلى المدرسة بعربة الثلج. والدي يقود عربة الثلج وأنا أجلس خلفه. إنها ممتعة، وأكثر إثارة من ركوب الدراجة.



Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

# Activities

## 1 | Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

leave - get - by - subway

Safia : Hi, Anas! How do you 1) .................................... to school?
Anas : Hello, Safia! I get to school 2) .................................... bus.
Safia : When do you 3) .................................... home?
Anas : At 7 o'clock. What about you?
Safia : I take the 4) .................................... .

## 2 | Choose the correct word.

1. In Egypt, most people take the .................................... to work.
   a) metro b) rocket c) ship d) bike
2. In Netherlands most people ride .................................... .
   a) mules b) bikes c) elephants d) monkeys
3. When it rains, I get .................................... .
   a) dry b) clean c) wet d) hot
4. He gets exercise .................................... the way to school.
   a) in b) on c) at d) by
5. You can use a .................................... to travel on water.
   a) car b) rocket c) ferry d) bus
6. Airplanes are the .................................... means of transportation.
   a) fast b) fastest c) faster d) good

## 3 | Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words about:

How to get to school

Guiding words:

( subway - fast - takes - safe - greener )

....................................................................................................

....................................................................................................








# Review on Unit (11)

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| transportation | النقل و المواصلات | destination | وجهة الوصول |
| airplane | طائرة | ferry | عبّارة / معدية |
| cab | سيارة أجرة | mule | بغل |
| canal | قناة | on foot | سيرًا على الأقدام |
| canoe | زورق | on time | في الوقت المحدد |
| rocket | صاروخ | steam train | قطار بخاري |
| streetcar | ترام | subway | مترو الأنفاق |
| traffic | المرور | traffic lights | إشارات المرور |
| traffic jam | ازدحام مروري | trip | رحلة |
| wagon | عربة نقل | walking | المشي |
| waterway | ممر مائي | bike path | مسار للدراجات |
| green spaces | مساحات خضراء | garbage | قمامة |
| recycle | يعيد تدوير | recycling bins | صناديق إعادة التدوير |
| reduce | يقلل | residents | السكان |
| reuse | يعيد استخدام | roof | سطح |
| trash | قمامة | volunteer | متطوع - يتطوع |
| water vapor | بخار الماء | highway | طريق سريع |
| Stop | قف | car | سيارة |
| Go slow | سر ببطء | wear a seat belt | ارتدي حزام أمان |
| Don't turn left | لا تتجه لليسار | boat | قارب |
| animals on the road | حيوانات على الطريق | bike | دراجة |




## Comparative Adjectives

### Short adjectives

**adj. الصفة + er + than**

➡ The coast is greener than the desert.

### Long adjectives

**more / less + adj. الصفة + than**

➡ Gold is more expensive than silver.

## Superlative Adjectives

### Short adjectives

**the + adj. الصفة + est**

➡ The Nile is the longest river in the world.

### Long adjectives

**the most / the least + adj. الصفة**

➡ This is the most interesting film.

## Prefixes

- **un = not:** ➡ Kareem is unhappy.
- **dis = not:** ➡ I dislike playing tennis, but I like football.
- **re = again:** ➡ You can recycle old things.







# Writing Corner

## *Cities nowadays*

I love my city very much, but traffic became a big problem. Every morning I have to sit in a traffic jam on my way to school. The cars and buses stop, and we can't move. The trip to school sometimes takes us an hour. We have good public transportation, but the buses don't always go to the destination you want.

## *A cleaner urban environment*

To have a cleaner urban environment, you should have many things. You should have green spaces to have clean air. You should have bike paths to reduce pollution. The residents should help by using recycling bins. We should recycle water to water the green spaces.

## *Transportation in the past*

A long time ago, the only types of transportation for humans were walking, running, and swimming. After that, humans began to use animals like mules, donkeys and horses. Then came small boats like canoes. When people invented the wheel, they started to use wagons and carts. The invention of the steam engine changed transportation. It became easier and faster.

## *Ideal city*

My city is located on the Red Sea. There are beautiful homes, schools, and a hospital. There is a clean park. I believe that parks are very important for us. We get electricity from a solar energy farm in the desert. In my opinion, solar energy is better for the environment. I go to school by bike. It is a good way to protect the environment.





Help your child to write paragraphs.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرات.

# Activities on Unit (11)

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 | Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The trip to school takes .................... minutes.
   a) two hours b) an hour c) ten minutes d) three hours
2. I always get .................... a traffic jam.
   a) into b) out c) away d) of
3. The traffic light color for "Go" is .................... .
   a) red b) yellow c) green d) gray
4. I'm .................... on time for school.
   a) sometimes b) usually c) always d) never

## 2 | Listen and complete.

1. Farmers used to transport their .................... in wagons and carts.
2. Ships with .................... engines could travel faster than sail boats.
3. The first .................... train opened in London in 1863.
4. Today airplanes can fly to different .................... in one day.

## 3 | Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

walks - located - spaces - coast

Heba : Do you live in a village or a city, Nermeen?
Nermeen : I live in a city.
Heba : Where is your city 1) ....................?
Nermeen : It's located on the Red Sea 2) ....................?
Heba : Do you have green 3) ....................?
Nermeen : Yes, we do.
Heba : What can people do there?
Nermeen : They can go for 4) ...................., ride their bikes, and enjoy being in the nature.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.





## 4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

The River Nile was the most important highway in ancient Egypt. All the major cities were along the River Nile. That's why the Egyptians traveled mostly along the river.

The Egyptians built boats and ships to use them to travel on the Nile. They built small, simple boats from papyrus and rope. People used these boats for fishing or traveling short distances. They used oars to make the boats move.

The Egyptians built larger boats for traveling, fishing, and transporting goods.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. The underlined word "ancient" means ........................................ .
   a) small b) new c) old d) big
2. They built boats and ships to travel on the ........................................ .
   a) Lake b) Canal c) Nile d) Sea

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. Why did the Egyptians travel along the Nile?........................................
4. What did the Egyptians use to make the boats move? ..................

## 5 The Reader

**A) Read and write T (True) of F (False).**

1. Grandma volunteered to help.
2. Grandma sew some clothes for the boys.

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

3. Waleed went to his ........................................ grocery store.
   a) mum's b) dad's c) grandma's d) grandpa's
4. Anissa's dad works at the ........................................ .
   a) market b) school c) beach d) shop



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## 6 | Choose the correct answer.

1. What is the ........................ form of renewable energy?
   a) cheap b) cheaper c) cheapest d) more cheap
2. A gold medal is ........................ than a silver medal.
   a) good b) better c) worst d) best
3. Solar energy is ........................ ecological than fossil fuels.
   a) more b) most c) much d) least
4. Benban Solar Park in Egypt is the ........................ park in Africa.
   a) large b) larger c) largest d) most

## 7 | Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. cities - Which - a subway - have - Egypt - in - ?

........................................................................................................

2. oars - move - the boats - They - to - used - make - .

........................................................................................................

## 8 | Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about.

**A plan for your ideal city**

Guiding elements:

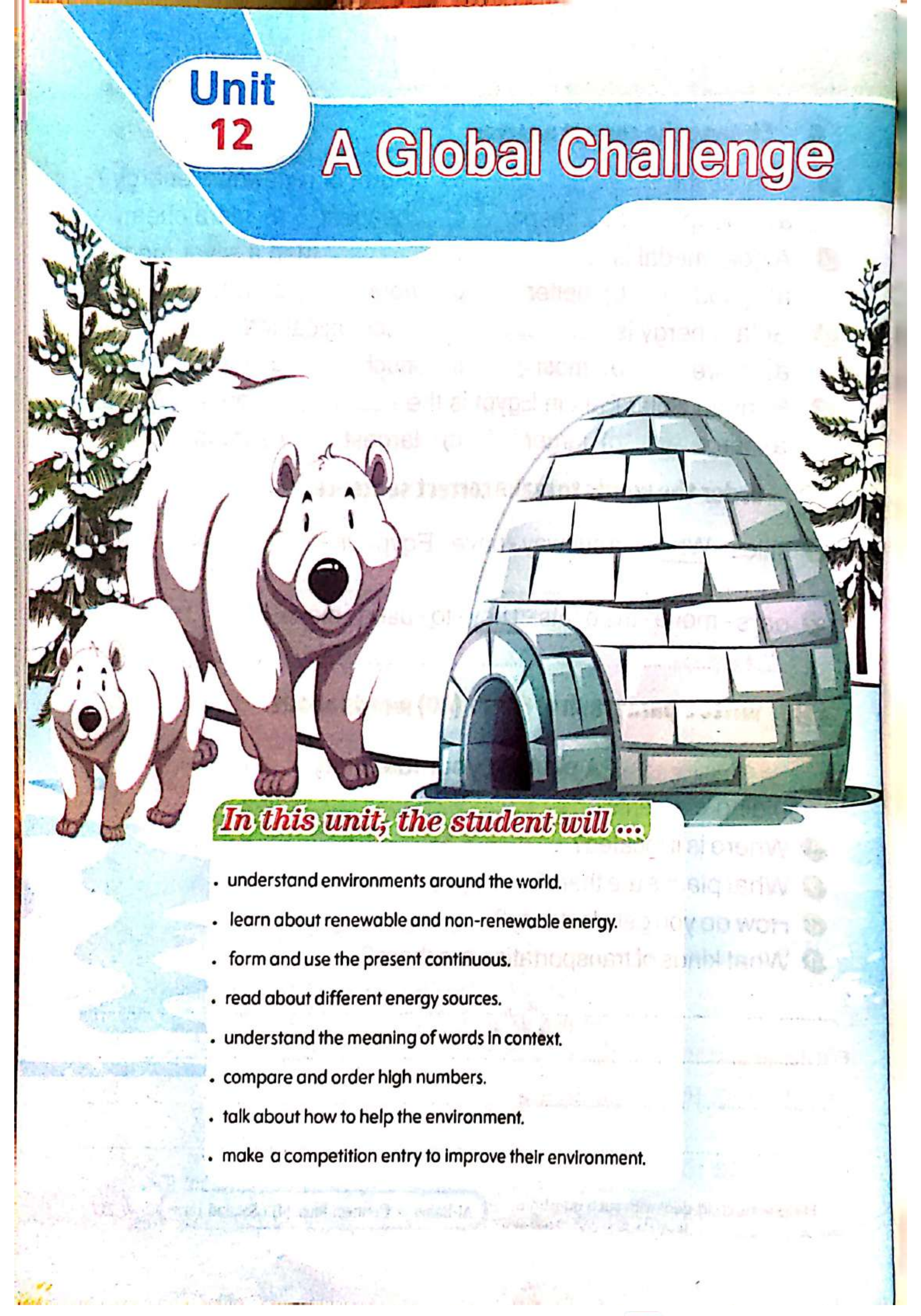
1. Where is it located?
2. What places are there?
3. How do you get electricity?
4. What kinds of transportation are there?

........................................................................................................

........................................................................................................

........................................................................................................

........................................................................................................



# Unit 12 A Global Challenge

## In this unit, the student will ...

- understand environments around the world.
- learn about renewable and non-renewable energy.
- form and use the present continuous.
- read about different energy sources.
- understand the meaning of words in context.
- compare and order high numbers.
- talk about how to help the environment.
- make a competition entry to improve their environment.

# Lesson (1) ROCKS AND STONES

## Key Vocabulary 🎧 Listen and repeat.

### Geology علم الجيولوجيا


flood
فيضان


erosion
تآكل التربة


landslide
انهيار - انزلاق التربة


glacier
نهر جليدي


water shortage
نقص المياه

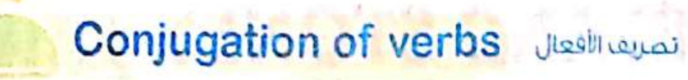

drought
جفاف


tsunami
تسونامي (موجة البحر الهائلة)

## Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| natural process | عملية طبيعية | heavy rains | أمطار غزيرة |
| limestone | حجر جيري | humans | البشر |
| flow | تدفق - جريان | agriculture | الزراعة |
| currents | التيارات المائية | fossil fuels | الوقود الحفري |
| riverbank | ضفة النهر | climate change | تغير المناخ |
| sea level | مستوى سطح البحر | marble | رخام |
| geological | جيولوجي | chemicals | مواد كيميائية |
| atmosphere | الغلاف الجوي | mountains | جبال |
| acid rain | مطر حمضي | soil | تربة (زراعية) |

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| ***Regular verbs*** أفعال منتظمة | | | ***Irregular verbs*** أفعال غير منتظمة | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Present** | | **Past** | **Present** | | **Past** |
| erode | يتفتت / يتآكل | eroded | make | يجعل / يصنع | made |
| cause | يسبب | caused | become | يصبح | became |
| burn | يحرق | burned/burnt | rise | يرتفع | rose |
| explode | ينفجر | exploded | hold | يمسك | held |
| damage | يدمر | damaged | feed | يطعم | fed |
| mix | يخلط | mixed | flow | يتدفق | flew |
| affect | يؤثر على | affected | grow | يزرع | grew |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| move **from**... **to** ... | ينتقل من ... إلى ... | made **of** | مصنوع من |
| result **in** | يتسبب في | a piece **of** | قطعة من |
| **for** a long time | لوقت طويل | mix **with** | يختلط بـ |
| slow down | يُبطئ | **in** danger | في خطر |

### Did you know ?

Nearly 71% of the surface of the earth is water. About 95% of all the water is salt water. ما يقرب من 71% من سطح الأرض عبارة عن ماء. حوالي 95% من الماء مياه مالحه.

### Did you know ?



The Sphinx is made of a large piece of a type of stone called **limestone** (حجر الجير). Acid rain damages limestone and another stone called **marble** (رخام). So, acid rain can also damage the Sphinx.

تمثال أبو الهول مصنوع من قطعة كبيرة من نوع من الحجر تسمي الجيري. تتسبب الأمطار الحمضية في إتلاف الحجر الجيري و حجر أخر يسمي الرخام . لذلك، يمكن للأمطار الحمضية أن تلحق الضرر بأبي الهول.



Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



## Listen, look and read.

Erosion is a natural process. It happens when rock and soil is moved from one place to another by water, wind, or flows. The waves and currents in the sea can erode beaches, and rivers can erode riverbanks. Heavy rains or winds can also cause the land to erode. Different types of flows- floods, landslides, tsunamis, or glaciers-also erode the land. Humans can cause erosion too. Heavy agriculture is one way that people do this. Burning fossil fuels is another way because it results in climate change. Climate change causes sea levels to rise and this results in more erosion.

التعرية عملية طبيعية. ويحدث ذلك عندما يتم نقل الصخور والتربة من مكان إلى آخر عن طريق الماء أو الرياح أو التدفقات. يمكن أن تؤدى الأمواج والتيارات في البحر إلى تآكل الشواطئ، و يمكن أن تؤدي الأنهار إلى تآكل ضفاف الأنهار. كما يمكن أن تسبب الأمطار الغزيرة أو الرياح في تآكل الأرض. أنواع مختلفة من التدفقات - الفيضانات، والانهيارات الأرضية، وأمواج تسونامي، أو الأنهار الجليدية تؤدي أيضا إلي تآكل الأرض. يمكن أن يتسبب البشر أيضا في التآكل. الزراعي المكثفة هي إحدى الطرق التي يقوم بها الناس. يعد حرق الوقود الحفري طريقة أخرى لأنه يؤدي إلى تغير المناخ. يتسبب تغير المناخ إلى ارتفاع مستوى سطح البحر. مما يؤدي إلى المزيد من التعرية.



Drought happens where there is not enough rain for a long time. When this happens, rivers and lakes become dry. Farmers cannot grow food and nature is in danger. When people do not have all the water that they need, we say that there is a water shortage.

الجفاف يحدث في حالة عدم وجود أمطار كافية لفترة طويلة. عندما يحدث هذا تجف الأنهار و البحيرات. لا يستطيع المزارعون زراعة الغذاء و الطبيعة في خطر. عندما لا يتوفر لدي الناس كل المياه التي يحتاجون إليها، نقول إن هناك نقصاً في المياه.

## Answer the following questions.

1) What is erosion? ..............................

2) When does a drought happen? ..............................

## Listen and read.



When heavy rain or strong winds move soil and rocks from one place to another, it creates erosion. Human activity such as heavy agriculture can also create this. During a drought, there isn't enough rain, and rivers and lakes become dry. There isn't enough water and there is a water shortage. This affects the environment and farmers can't grow food or feed their animals. Too much rain in one area can cause a flood. When too much rain falls on hills and mountains and there aren't enough trees to hold the water, there can also be a landslide. This is when the soil and rocks move and fall away.

عندما تنقل الأمطار الغزيرة أو الرياح القوية التربة والصخور من مكان إلى آخر، فإنها تسبب التآكل. النشاط البشري مثل الزراعة المكثفة يمكن أن تسبب هذا أيضًا. أثناء الجفاف، لا يكون هناك ما يكفي من الأمطار، وتصبح الأنهار والبحيرات جافة. ليس هناك ما يكفي من الماء، وهناك نقص في المياه. وهذا يؤثر على البيئة ولا يستطيع المزارعون زراعة الغذاء أو إطعام حيواناتهم. هطول الأمطار الغزيرة في منطقة واحدة يمكن أن يسبب فيضانًا. عندما تهطل أمطار غزيرة على التلال والجبال ولا يكون هناك ما يكفي من الأشجار لامتصاص هذه المياه، يمكن أن يحدث أيضًا انهيارًا أرضيًا. وذلك عندما تتحرك التربة والصخور وتسقط.






Help your child learn about geology and climate change ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الجيولوجيا وتغير المناخ.

# Activities

## 1 | Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

rain - farmers - drought - dry

Omar : We are going to learn about 1) ..............................

Mazen : What does it mean?

Omar : It means there isn't 2) .................... for a long time.

Mazen : What happens to rivers and lakes?

Omar : They become 3) ..............................

Mazen : So, 4) .............................. can't grow food!

## 2 | Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

shortage - nature - dry - water

Drought happens where there is not enough rain for a long time. When this happens, rivers and lakes become 1) .................... Farmers cannot grow food and 2) .................... is in danger. When people do not have all the 3) .................... that they need, we say that there is a water 4) ....................

## 3 | Choose the correct answer.

1. Erosion is a/an .............................. process.
   a) good b) natural c) artificial d) important
2. Drought happens when we don't have .................... for a long time.
   a) rain b) rocks c) stones d) sand
3. The waves and currents in the sea can .................... beaches.
   a) burn b) erode c) grow d) draw

4. Heavy ........................................ can cause erosion.

a) culture b) agriculture c) nature d) future

5. Climate change causes sea levels to ........................................

a) rise b) need c) burn d) hide

6. There's a water .................. when people don't have enough water.

a) age b) shortage c) page d) edge

7. The Sphinx is made of ........................................

a) wood b) glass c) limestone d) leather

8. We should slow ........................................ erosion.

a) up b) down c) in d) at

9. When a volcano explodes under the sea, this creates a huge wave called ........................................

a) flood b) drought c) tsunami d) landslide

10. A .......... is a huge ice flow that moves very slowly across the land.

a) glacier b) drought c) flood d) erosion

## 4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. can - erosion - Humans - cause - .

........................................................................................................

2. causes - change - Burning - fossil fuels - climate - .

........................................................................................................

3. don't - We - water - enough - have - .

........................................................................................................

4. Sphinx - made - The - is - limestone - of - .

........................................................................................................



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## 5 | Read the following text and answer the questions.

Drought happens where there is not enough rain for a long time. When this happens, rivers and lakes become dry. Farmers cannot grow food and nature is in danger. When people do not have all the water that they need, we say that there's a water shortage.

### A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The text is about ................................................................ .

   a) erosion  b) flood  c) drought  d) rain

2. During a drought, rivers and lakes become ................................ .

   a) hot  b) dry  c) cold  d) cool

### B) Answer the following questions.

3. When does a water shortage happen?

..........................................................................................................

4. What happens to farmers during a drought?

..........................................................................................................

## 6 | Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words.

**Erosion**

Guiding words:

( natural - rock - soil - move - waves - humans )

..........................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................



# Lesson (2) LANGUAGE

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| solar energy | الطاقة الشمسية | polar bear | الدب القطبي |
| newspaper | جريدة | rules | قواعد / قوانين |
| habitat | موطن | electric car | سيارة كهربائية |
| ice cap | غطاء جليدي | ecofriendly | صديق للبيئة |
| ocean | محيط | shade | ظل |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

***Regular verbs*** أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| save | ينقذ/يوفر/يدخر | saved |
| rain | تمطر | rained |
| care | يهتم | cared |

***Irregular verbs*** أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| burn | يحرق | burned/burnt |
| buy | يشتري | bought |
| go | يذهب | went |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| for example | على سبيل المثال | save the plant | يحفظ النباتات |
| care about | يهتم بـ | save money | يدخر مال |





Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



## Listen and read.

### What will an electric car do?

Tarek wants to make his house more ecofriendly. If Tarek uses electricity from solar energy, for example, he will save money. What will he do with all that extra money ? Tarek will buy an electric car if he saves enough money. If he buys an electric car, Tarek will help the environment.

يريد طارق أن يجعل منزله أكثر صداقة للبيئة. فإذا استخدم طارق الكهرباء من الطاقة الشمسية، على سبيل المثال، فإنه سيوفر المال. ماذا سيفعل بكل تلك الأموال الإضافية؟ سوف يشتري طارق سيارة كهربائية إذا وفر ما يكفي من المال. إذا اشترى سيارة كهربائية، فإن طارق سيساعد البيئة.

## Listening

**Noha** : Hi, Mona. How are you and the family?

مرحبا منى. كيف حالك أنت وعائلتك؟

**Mona** : We're fine thanks, but there's a water shortage here.

نحن بخير شكرا، ولكن هناك نقص في المياه هنا.

**Noha** : Oh, dear. What will you do?

يا عزيزتي. ماذا ستفعلين؟

**Mona** : Well, we'll have to find ways to save water. Dad will stop washing his car.

حسنًا، سيتعين علينا إيجاد طرق لتوفير المياه. سيتوقف أبي عن غسل سيارته.

**Noha** : That's a good idea. What about your mom?

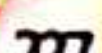
هذه فكرة جيدة. وماذا عن والدتك؟

**Mona** : Mom will reuse water from the kitchen for the garden.

ستعيد أمي استخدام المياه من المطبخ للحديقة.

**Noha** : That will help the plants. Will you have fewer showers?

وهذا سوف يساعد النباتات. هل ستستخدمين الدش عدد مرات أقل؟



**Mona** : No, I won't. But I'll have shorter showers. That will save a lot of water

لا، لن أفعل. لكن سأستخدمه فترات أقل. سيوفر ذلك الكثير من الماء.

Help your child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ.





# Language

## The Future Simple Tense زمن المستقبل البسيط

### Form

**Subject** (الفاعل) + **will** + **inf.** (مصدر الفعل)

- The drought **will cause** a water shortage.
- It **will rain** tomorrow.

### Usage

We use the future simple to talk about "**future predictions**"

يستخدم زمن المستقبل البسيط للتحدث عن التنبؤات المستقبلية.

### Keywords:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| tomorrow | غدًا | soon | قريباً |
| in the future | في المستقبل | next (week-Friday-summer-year) | القادم |
| in + (a future period) (2030 - 2050) | | | |

### Negative

**Subject** (الفاعل) + **will** + **not** + **inf.** (مصدر الفعل)

- We **will not burn** fossil fuels.
- It **won't rain** tomorrow.

### Yes/No question:

**Will** + **Subject** (الفاعل) + **inf.** (مصدر الفعل) ?

- **Will** you **go** shopping tomorrow? Yes, I **will**. No, I **won't**.

**Note**
'll = will
won't = will not

**- Choose the correct answer.**

1. ........................................ you go shopping tomorrow?
   a) Did b) Is c) Will d) Are
2. Malak ........................................ her aunt next week.
   a) visit b) visits c) visiting d) will visit
3. We ........................................ burn fossil fuels.
   a) are b) have c) won't d) is



Help your child identify the future simple tense.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف علي زمن المستقبل البسيط.

## "If" ( First conditional) (إذا-لو) الحالة الشرطية الأولى)

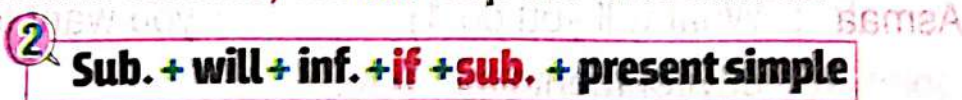
### Form



**If + sub. + present simple, sub. + will + inf.**

➪ Note: The use of the comma

- If we use electric vehicles, we will help the environment.



**Sub. + will + inf. + if + sub. + present simple**

➪ Note: No comma here

- We will help the environment if we use electric cars.

### Usage

We use the first conditional to talk about something that is possible in the future. تستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى لتدل على شئ محتمل الحدوث في المستقبل.

- If it rains, there will be a flood.

### Choose the correct answer.

1. I will .................................... an electric car.
   a) buys b) buy c) buying d) bought
2. If she .................. fossil fuels, she won't help the environment.
   a) use b) uses c) used d) using
3. ........... our cities have more bike paths, people will exercise more.
   a) While b) Will c) Can d) If
4. I ................... the environment if I use solar panels on my roof.
   a) help b) will help c) helps d) helping
5. Tarek will buy an electric car if he ................ enough money.
   a) save b) saves c) will save d) saved
6. If I run, I ........................................ the bus.
   a) catch b) catches c) will catch d) catching
7. If Mona has shorter showers, she .................. a lot of water.
   a) save b) will save c) saves d) saved
8. If it .................... rain soon, we will have a water shortage.
   a) didn't b) don't c) can't d) doesn't

# Activities

## 1 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

won't - if - will - electricity

Asmaa : What will you do 1) .................... you want to help the environment.

Jana : I 2) .................................................. burn fossil fuels.

Asmaa : What else will you do?

Jana : I 3) .......................................... put solar panels on my roof.

Asmaa : Why?

Jana : To make my own 4) .............. and help the environment.

## 2 Choose the correct answer.

1. He ............................................ his sister if she needs help.
   a) help b) helps c) will help d) helping
2. I ............................................ go to school tomorrow.
   a) don't b) won't c) haven't d) am not
3. Adel will ............................................ football next Friday.
   a) play b) plays c) playing d) played
4. ............................................ Malak visit the desert next holiday?
   a) Does b) Is c) Will d) Has
5. If the polar ice caps melt, sea levels ............................................ .
   a) rise b) rises c) will rise d) rising
6. They will travel ............................................ .
   a) yesterday b) tomorrow c) last week d) always



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

7. If it ............................................................, there will be a flood.
   a) rain  b) rains  c) raining  d) rained
8. If we ........................ ecofriendly energies, our cities will be cleaner.
   a) use  b) uses  c) used  d) using
9. We ................................................ the planet if we recycle old things.
   a) save  b) saves  c) will save  d) saved
10. I won't ................................................................ fossil fuels.
   a) use  b) uses  c) using  d) used
11. If Mazen studies hard, he ............................................... succeed.
   a) will  b) do  c) has  d) would
12. If you plant trees, you will ........................................ the environment.
   a) helps  b) help  c) helping  d) helped
13. We will ................................................................ to the park next week.
   a) goes  b) go  c) going  d) went

## 3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. rain - tomorrow - It - will - .

..............................................................................................................

2. will - the - Malak - visit - desert - .

..............................................................................................................

3. you - Will - newspapers - these - recycle - old - ?

..............................................................................................................

4. will - environment - I - the - help - .

..............................................................................................................

Lesson (3)

# NATIONS WORKING TOGETHER

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| document | وثيقة | several | عديد - كثير |
| planet | كوكب | goals | اهداف |
| nations | أمم | headline | عنوان رئيسي |
| newspaper | جريدة | leaders | زعماء - قادة |
| agreement | اتفاقية | meeting | اجتماع |
| lead-in | افتتاحية / تقديم | global | عالمي |
| topic | موضوع | caption | تعليق على الصورة |
| coal | الفحم | report | تقرير |
| greenhouse gases | غازات مسببة للاحتباس الحراري | complicated | مُعقَّد |
| reporter | صحفي | companies | شركات |
| serious effort | جهد كبير | together | معًا |
| global warming | الاحتباس الحراري | immediately | في الحال |
| international | عالمي / دولي | | |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Present | Past | Present | Past |
|---|---|---|---|
| summarize يلخص | summarized | reduce يقلل | reduced |
| define يحدد - يعرف | defined | meet يقابل | met |
| create يخلق - يكوّن | created | become يصبح | became |



Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| at home | بالمنزل | one way | طريق ذو اتجاه واحد |
| agree to | يوافق أن | in fact | في الواقع (الحقيقة) |
| decide to | يقرر أن | make a plan | يخطط |

## Definitions

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **conference** | a formal meeting where people meet to talk about a topic | مؤتمر |
| **pact** | a formal agreement between two people or groups of people | ميثاق |
| **party** | a group of people who have the same goals and beliefs | حزب |
| **treaty** | a formal written agreement between two or more countries | معاهدة |
| **the lead-in** | this is one or two sentences that summarize the report | افتتاحية |
| **the headline** | this is the title of the report | العنوان الرئيسي |
| **the body of the report** | this is the long part you read | موضوع التقرير |
| **a caption** | this is a description of a picture | تعليق على صورة |

## Did you know ?

The foundation Youth Love Egypt (YLE) has planted thousands of trees along the Nile and canals.

قامت مؤسسة (شباب يحب مصر) بزراعة آلاف الأشجار على طول نهر النيل والقنوات.



Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

## Listen and read.

*Global Climate News* → The name of the newspaper

Nations Work Together to slow Climate Change → The headline

by *Dareen Shabrawi* → The reporter's name

Climate change affects everyone living on our planet, so we need to try to slow it by working together. Nations are now making plans to work on this problem. → The lead-in

يؤثر تغير المناخ على كل من يعيش على كوكبنا، لذا يتعين علينا أن نحاول إبطائه من خلال العمل معًا. وتقوم الأمم الآن بوضع خطط للعمل على هذه المشكلة.

If we all help, we can slow climate change. We can recycle paper, plastic, and glass at home, but what can nations do? → The body of the report

إذا ساعدنا جميعا. يمكننا أن نبطئ تغير المناخ. يمكننا إعادة تدوير الورق والبلاستيك والزجاج في المنزل، ولكن ماذا يمكن للأمم أن تفعل؟

A picture

Last week, leaders from every country in the world met for the United Nations Climate Change Conference (called COP26) in Glasgow, Scotland. They talked about what they can do to slow climate change, but this was not the first time they met. In fact, it was their 26th meeting.

في الأسبوع الماضي، اجتمع زعماء من كل دولة في العالم لحضور مؤتمر الأمم المتحدة لتغير المناخ (المسمى COP26) في جلاسكو، اسكتلندا. وتحدثوا عما يمكنهم فعله لإبطاء تغير المناخ، لكن هذه لم تكن المرة الأولى التي التقت الدول فيها. في الواقع، كان هذا هو اجتماعهم السادس والعشرون.

Leaders from all over the world met in Glasgow, Scotland.

A caption

On December 12th, 1995, world leaders had a very important meeting. 196 parties signed the Paris Agreement. The parties agreed to reduce global warming to less than 2 degrees Celsius. To do this, countries agreed to start reducing greenhouse gases immediately. This was the first time that so many nations made a serious effort to slow global warming.



Help your child listen and read.

في الثاني عشر من ديسمبر عام 1995، كان لزعماء العالم اجتماع مهم للغاية. 196 عضوًا وقعوا على اتفاق باريس. واتفقت جميع الأطراف على خفض ظاهرة الاحتباس الحراري إلى أقل من درجتين مئويتين. وللقيام بذلك، اتفقت البلدان على البدء في خفض الغازات المسببة للاحتباس الحراري على الكوكب على الفور. وكانت هذه هي المرة الأولى التي تبذل فيها العديد من الدول جهودًا جادة لإبطاء ظاهرة الاحتباس الحراري.

Another important meeting was COP25 in Madrid, Spain in 2019. Greta Thunberg, a teenager from Sweden, asked leaders to do more to slow climate change. After that, Thunberg became famous all over the world.

وكان الاجتماع المهم الآخر هو مؤتمر الأمم المتحدة المعني بتغير المناخ (COP25) في مدريد بإسبانيا في عام 2019. حيث طلبت غريتا ثونبرج، وهي مراهقة من السويد، من القادة بذل المزيد من الجهد لإبطاء تغير المناخ. بعد ذلك، أصبحت ثونبرج مشهورة في جميع أنحاء العالم.

This year at COP26, leaders signed a new document: the Glasgow Climate Pact. In this new pact, countries agreed to do several things. First, they decided to continue with the Paris Agreement. They also decided to stop using coal, a fossil fuel. Burning coal creates 40% of carbon dioxide emissions every year, so people must stop using it.

هذا العام، في مؤتمر الأمم المتحدة المعني بتغير المناخ (COP26)، وقع القادة على وثيقة جديدة: وثيقة جلاسكو للمناخ. وفي هذا الميثاق الجديد، اتفقت الدول على القيام بعدة أشياء. أولاً، قرروا الاستمرار في اتفاق باريس. كما قرروا التوقف عن استخدام الفحم، وهو وقود أحفوري. ويؤدي حرق الفحم إلى توليد ٪40 من انبعاثات ثاني أكسيد الكربون كل عام، لذا يتعين على الناس التوقف عن استخدامه.

Another important topic at the meeting was transportation. Car companies agreed to stop making vehicles that use fossil fuels by 2040 so they will make more electric vehicles. We must all slow climate change. Treaties like the Paris Agreement are one way for nations to work together to do this.

وكان النقل موضوع آخر مهم في الاجتماع. اتفقت شركات السيارات على التوقف عن تصنيع المركبات التي تستخدم الوقود الأحفوري بحلول عام 2040 حتى تتمكن من تصنيع المزيد من السيارات الكهربائية. يجب علينا جميعا أن نعمل على إبطاء تغير المناخ. تعد المعاهدات مثل اتفاقية باريس إحدى الطرق التي تعمل بها الدول معًا للقيام بذلك.

# Conjunctions الروابط

**A conjunctions:** is a word that joins words and sentences.

أداة الربط هي كلمة تربط الكلمات والجمل ببعض.

## and و

- **To connect two similar ideas:** تستخدم (and) لربط فكرتين متشابهين.

- My family recycles paper and glass.

## but لكن

- **To connect two different or contrasting ideas:**

تستخدم (but) لربط فكرتين مختلفين أو متناقضين.

- The leaders went to a conference, but they didn't sign a treaty.

## or أو

- **To express choices:** تستخدم (or) للتعبير عن الاختيارات.

- Do they use solar energy or do they burn coal?

## so لذلك

- **To connect cause / reason and results:** تستخدم (so) لربط السبب والنتائج.

- My dad was at the conference so he is really tired.

## 1 Choose the correct answer.

1. The parties agreed to reduce air pollution .......... plastic waste.
   a) so b) or c) but d) and
2. We need to stop pollution now .......... it will be late.
   a) or b) so c) and d) but
3. All countries must reduce air pollution .......... water pollution.
   a) and b) but c) or d) so
4. I went to the meeting, .......... I didn't find anyone.
   a) so b) or c) but d) and

## 2 Fill in the spaces with:

and - but - or - so

1. Do they use coal .......... solar energy?
2. I like English .......... Arabic.
3. I went to school, .......... no one came.
4. I ran quickly .......... I caught the bus.



Help your child identify conjunctions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الروابط.

# Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. On ...... 12th 1995, world leaders had a very important meeting.
   a) April b) March c) May d) December
2. 196 parties signed the ........................ Agreement.
   a) Cairo b) Paris c) Aswan d) Louxor
3. The parties agreed to ........................ global warming.
   a) reduce b) increase c) write d) use
4. Countries agreed to start reducing ........................ gases.
   a) leaders b) greenhouse c) parties d) agreements

## 2 Choose the correct answer.

1. When we burn fossil fuels, it is ............ for the environment.
   a) good b) bad c) important d) helpful
2. All countries must reduce air pollution ............ water pollution.
   a) but b) so c) and d) or
3. The leaders had a conference, ............ they couldn't agree to anything.
   a) or b) so c) but d) and
4. The ........................ is a short description of a picture.
   a) lead-in b) reporter's name c) caption d) headline
5. Do you use solar energy ........................ coal?
   a) but b) because c) or d) so

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

6. Sara was ill ................................ she didn't go to school.
   a) but   b) so   c) and   d) or
7. The long part you read in a newspaper report is called the ..............
   a) body   b) headline   c) caption   d) picture
8. One or two sentences that summarize the report is/are called the ................................ .
   a) picture   b) lead-in   c) body   d) caption
9. The leaders went to the conference .............. they didn't sign a treaty.
   a) and   b) or   c) but   d) so
10. The ........................ means the person who wrote the report.
   a) headline   b) reporter's name
   c) picture   d) body of the report

## 3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. change - is - Climate - problem - a dangerous - .

................................................................................

2. very - It's - to - important - recycle- .

................................................................................

3. agreement - is - a formal - A pact - .

................................................................................

4. must - People - stop - fossil - using - fuels - .

................................................................................

5. change - What - causes - climate - ?

................................................................................


Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## 4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Nations work together to slow climate change. If we all help, we can slow climate change. We can recycle paper, plastic, and glass at home, but what can nations do? Last week, leaders from every country in the world met in Glasgow, Scotland. They decided to stop using coal. Burning coal creates 40% of carbon dioxide emissions every year, so people must stop using it. Another important topic was transportation. Car companies agreed to stop making vehicles that use fossil fuels by 2040 so they will make more electric cars. We must all slow climate change.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. Climate .................................................. is a dangerous problem.

   a) change    b) chance    c) chase    d) charger

2. We must .................................................. climate change.

   a) show    b) share    c) slow    d) draw

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. How much pollution can burning coal create?

   ..........................................................................................

4. Where did the leaders meet?

   ..........................................................................................

## 5 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words.

**Climate change**

Guiding words:

( affects - slow - recycle )

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

Lesson (4)

# WRITING

## A newspaper report

### Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| emergency | الطوارئ | replace | يستبدل |
| keep...clean | يحافظ على النظافة | imagine | يتخيل |
| for example | على سبيل المثال | daily | يومي |
| international | عالمي | discuss | يناقش |
| deforestation | إزالة الغابات | opinion | رأي |
| in fact | في الواقع | gasoline | بنزين - غازولين |
| useful | مفيد - نافع | news | أخبار |

### Writing skill

**Newspaper report** تقرير صحفي

- **When we write a newspaper report, we use facts and not opinions.**
عندما نكتب تقريرًا في إحدى الصحف، فإننا نستخدم الحقائق وليس الآراء.

| Fact حقيقة | Opinion رأي |
|---|---|
| When we burn fossil fuels, we make global warming worse. | It isn't very important to recycle. |
| عندما نحرق الوقود الحفري، فإننا نجعل الاحتباس الحراري أسوأ. | ليس من المهم جدًا إعادة التدوير. |

- **You can use these useful phrases when you write a newspaper report.**
يمكننا استخدام هذه العبارات المفيدة عند كتابة تقرير صحيفة إخبارية.

- In fact, it was their 26th meeting.
- For example, the parties agreed to reduce global warming to less than 2 degrees Celsius.



Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

# A newspaper report model

**name of newspaper:**

## GLOBAL NEWS

**headline:** WORLD LEADERS MEET IN CAIRO FOR CONFERENCE

**by:** Allam El-Saeed

**lead-in:** Deforestation is a global emergency. The world's leaders must act quickly to replace the world's forests.

**picture:**



**caption:** Deforestation in the Amazon

**body:** The world's leaders met today at a conference in Cairo to discuss the growing problem of deforestation. More than 25 leaders signed a treaty agreeing to plant billions of trees over the next five years.

# Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and complete.

1. The Suez Canal ........ the Red Sea and the Mediterranean Sea.
2. It's the .................................................. important canal in the world.
3. .................................................. go through the Suez Canal.
4. The ships travel to many ................................ all over the world.

## 2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. a global - Deforestation - is - emergency - .

..................................................................................................

2. newspaper - the - report - Who - wrote - ?

..................................................................................................

3. must - the - We - clean - keep - air - .

..................................................................................................

4. need - we - Why - do - trees - more - ?

..................................................................................................

## 3 Write a newspaper report about (what causes climate change and how people work together to stop climate change).

**name of newspaper:**

**headline:**

**by:**

**lead-in:**

**picture:**

**caption:**

**body:**



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتحامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة






# - THE FOOD WE EAT
# - PROJECT



**Look, listen and read.**






lentils
عدس



beef
لحم بقري



rice
أرز



koshari
كشري



ketchup
كاتشب



falafel
فلافل (طعمية)



burger
برجر



cheese
جبن



wheat
قمح



chickpeas / hummus
حمص

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| favorite | مفضل / محبوب | food supplies | مؤن الطعام |
| conversation | محادثة | shopping list | قائمة تسوق |
| dishes | اطباق - اكلات | ingredients | مكونات |
| an appetizer | طبق فاتح للشهية | main course | الطبق الرئيسي |
| dessert | الحلو (بعد الأكل) | menu | قائمة طعام |
| plant-based meal | وجبة مكوناتها الرئيسية النباتات | drinks | مشروبات |

## Study the following.

### Foods from plants

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| spaghetti | إسباجتي | rice | أرز | crisps | مقرمشات |
| French fries | بطاطس مقلية | pasta | مكرونة | lentils | عدس |
| ketchup | كاتشب | falafel | فلافل | spices | توابل |
| oat milk | شوفان بالحليب | bread | خبز | chickpeas / hummus | حمص |
| popcorn | فشار | garlic | ثوم | olive oil | زيت زيتون |

### Foods from animals

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| yogurt | زبادي | meat balls | كرات اللحم | cheese | جبن |
| milk | لبن | honey | عسل النحل | meat | لحم |
| beef | لحم بقري | butter | زبدة | burger | برجر |
| omelette | الأومليت / عجة البيض | eggs | بيض | chicken | دجاج |

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

# Listen and read.

**Nagwa** : I'm hungry. Can we have a burger this evening, please, Mom?

أنا جائعة. هل يمكننا تناول البرجر هذا المساء، من فضلك يا أمي؟

**Mom** : No, Nagwa. I'm making some koshari. It's healthier than a burger, and also better for the environment.

لا يا نجوى. أنا أعد بعض الكشري. إنه صحي أكثر من البرجر، كما أنه أفضل للبيئة.

**Nagwa** : Why is it better for the environment?

لماذا هو أفضل للبيئة؟

**Mom** : Well, some of the food that you can buy comes from different countries. The bread in a burger is made from wheat. Egypt gets most of its wheat from Russia, and that is a long way from Egypt! And a lot of the meat in a burger comes from South America. That is a very long way!

حسنًا، بعض الأطعمة التي يمكنك شراؤها تأتي من بلدان مختلفة. الخبز الموجود في البرجر مصنوع من القمح. تحصل مصر على معظم احتياجاتها من القمح من روسيا، وهذا بعيد عن مصر! والكثير من اللحوم الموجودة في البرجر تأتي من أمريكا الجنوبية. وهذا طريق طويل جدًا!

**Nagwa** : How does it get here? كيف يصل إلى هنا؟

**Mom** : Usually by ship or by plane. عادة عن طريق السفينة أو بالطائرة.

**Nagwa** : Ah yes, and that is bad for the environment.

آه نعم، وهذا مضر للبيئة.

**Mom** : That's right. But koshari is different. Do you remember what is in koshari?

صحيح. لكن الكشري مختلف. هل تتذكرين ما في الكشري؟

**Nagwa** : Yes! It's made with rice, lentils, chickpeas, pasta and er ... tomatoes and onions.

نعم! إنه يتكون من الأرز والعدس والحمص والمكرونة و .... والطماطم والبصل.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Mom : That's right. I can buy most of these things from the local market. And the market gets all the vegetables and plant-based food from local farmers. So everything comes from Egypt.

صحيح. يمكنني شراء معظم هذه الأشياء من السوق المحلية. ويحصل السوق على جميع الخضروات والأغذية النباتية من المزارعين المحليين. لذلك كل شيء يأتي من مصر.

Nagwa : I understand now. I'm happy that we're having koshari this evening! And I'll remember that it is healthier and better for the environment than a burger.

فهمت الآن. أنا سعيدة لأننا سنتناول الكشري هذا المساء! وسأتذكر أنه صحي وأفضل للبيئة من البرجر.

# Activities

## 1 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

ingredients - meal - koshari - chickpeas

Anas : What's your favorite dish?
Seif : I like 1)........................ very much.
Anas : What are the 2)........................ of koshari?
Seif : Rice, pasta, lentils, onions and 3)........................
Anas : Is it a useful dish?
Seif : Yes, it is.
Anas : What kind of food is it?
Seif : It is a plant-based 4)........................

## 2 Choose the correct answer.

1. There is no meat in ........................ .
   a) beef b) burger c) koshari d) steak
2. A/An ........................ is a small dish that you eat at the beginning of a meal.
   a) drink b) dessert c) appetizer d) main course



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3. What's your favorite .................................................... ? - Koshari.
   a) spoon    b) dish    c) fork    d) knife
4. My mom bought the ............... for koshari from the supermarket.
   a) cheese    b) ingredients    c) form    d) recipe
5. Umm Ali is my favorite ..............................................................
   a) dessert    b) animal    c) book    d) food

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Last week I went to a famous restaurant with my friends. We all wanted to eat our favorite meals. I like koshari because it is a plant-based meal. The ingredients of koshari are rice, macaroni, lentils and chickpeas. My friend Anas likes burger very much because it comes from meat. My friend Seif likes pizza because it comes from wheat. My friend Safia likes fish because it is healthy. After the meal we had a dessert and drank juice. We had a wonderful time there.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. I like .................................................... because it is a plant-based meal.
   a) pizza    b) koshari    c) fish    d) steak
2. Anas likes burger because it comes from ..............................
   a) wheat    b) beans    c) meat    d) milk

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. Where did you go last week? ..............................................................
4. Why does Safia like fish? ..............................................................

## 4 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words.

**Your favorite meal**

Guiding elements:
1- What is it?
2- What are the ingredients?
3- Who cooks it?
4- Where do you have it? With whom?

# Review on Unit (12)

## Vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| water shortage | نقص المياه | rocks | صخور | lentils | عدس |
| climate change | تغير المناخ | drought | جفاف | wheat | قمح |
| for example | على سبيل المثال | treaty | معاهدة | leader | قائد / زعيم |
| eco-friendly | صديق للبيئة | youth | الشباب | stones | أحجار |
| newspaper report | تقرير صحفي | appetizer | طبق فاتح للشهية | flood | فيضان |
| fossil fuels | الوقود الحفري | geology | علم الجيولوجيا | pact | ميثاق |
| agreement | اتفاقية | limestone | حجر جيري | marble | رخام |
| foundation | مؤسسة | document | وثيقة | habitat | موطن |
| ingredients | مكونات الطعام | acid rain | مطر حمضي | body | موضوع (التقرير) |
| main course | الطبق الرئيسي | newspaper | جريدة | in fact | في الواقع |
| agriculture | الزراعة | complicated | معقد | dish | طبق / أكلة |
| headline | عنوان رئيسي | diversity | تنوع - اختلاف | news | أخبار |
| dessert | الحلو (بعد الأكل) | caption | تعليق على صورة | global | عالمي |
| weather | الطقس | erosion | تآكل التربة / انجراف | glacier | نهر جليدي |
| food waste | مخلفات الطعام | lead-in | افتتاحية / تقديم | nations | الأمم |
| tsunami | تسونامي (موجة البحر الهائلة) | landslide | انزلاق التربة | process | عملية |
| conference | مؤتمر | chickpeas | حمص | party | حزب |



Help your child revise unit (12).
ساعد طفلك على مراجعة الوحدة الثانية عشر.



# Language

## The Future Simple Tense

زمن المستقبل البسيط

### Form

**Subject (الفاعل) + will + inf. (مصدر الفعل)**

- The drought will cause a water shortage.
- It will rain tomorrow.

### Usage

We use the future simple to talk about "**future predictions**"

يستخدم زمن المستقبل البسيط للتحدث عن التنبؤات المستقبلية.

### Keywords:

| | |
|---|---|
| tomorrow غداً | soon قريباً |
| in the future في المستقبل | next (week-Friday-summer-year) القادم |
| in + (a future period) (2030 - 2050) | |

### Negative:

**Subject (الفاعل) + will + not + inf. (مصدر الفعل)**

- We will not burn fossil fuels.
- It won't rain tomorrow.

### Yes/No question:

**Will + Subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?**

- Will you go shopping tomorrow?

Yes, I will. No, I won't.

**Note** 'll = will
won't = will not

Help your child revise unit (12).
ساعد طفلك على مراجعة الوحدة الثانية عشر .




## Erosion

Erosion is a natural process. It happens when rock and soil is moved from one place to another by water, wind or flows. The waves and currents in the sea can erode beaches and rivers can erode riverbanks. Humans can cause erosion too. Heavy agriculture is one way that people do.

## Drought

Drought happens where there isn't enough rain for a long time. When this happens, rivers and lakes become dry. Farmers cannot grow food and nature is in danger. When people don't have all the water that they need, we say that there is a water shortage.

## Climate Change

Climate change affects everyone living on our planet, so we need to try to slow it by working together . If we all help, we can slow climate change. We can recycle paper, plastic and glass at home, but what can nations do? Leaders from different countries from all over the world meet every year. They are trying to find solutions to this dangerous problem. In their last conference, they decided to stop using fossil fuels. In addition, car companies agreed to stop making cars that use fossil fuels by 2040.

# Activities on Unit (12)

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .............................................. happens where there is not enough rain.
   a) Drought  b) Erosion  c) Flood  d) Glacier
2. Farmers can't grow .............................................. during the drought.
   a) clothes  b) food  c) stones  d) seeds
3. During the drought, rivers and lakes become ..............................
   a) rain  b) hot  c) dry  d) wet
4. When people don't have enough water. It is called ..................
   a) drought  b) water shortage  c) tsunami  d) flood

## 2 Listen and complete.

1. Tarek wants to make his .............................................. more ecofriendly.
2. Tarek uses electricity from solar ..............................................
3. He will buy an .............................................. car.
4. He will help the ..............................................

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

shade - environment - be - plant

We can help the 1).............................. by planting more trees. If we 2).............................. more trees in our cities, the air will be cleaner. The streets will have 3).............................. and the buildings will be cooler. They will 4).............................. prettier, too.

## 4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Climate change affects everyone living on our planet, so we need to try to slow it by working together. Nations are now making plans to work on this problem. If we all help, we can slow climate change. We can recycle paper, plastic, and glass at home, but what can nations do? On December 12th, 1995, world leaders had a very important meeting. 196 parties signed the Paris Agreement. The parties agreed to reduce global warming to less than 2 degrees Celsius. To do this, countries agreed to start reducing greenhouse gases immediately. This was the first time that so many nations made a serious effort to slow global warming.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. If we all help, we can ........................ climate change.
   a) slow b) increase c) make d) throw
2. Paper and plastic can be ........................ at home.
   a) burnt b) recycled c) eaten d) thrown

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What will happen if we all help? ........................
4. How could countries reduce global warming? ........................

## 5 The Reader

### A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Grandma volunteered to help Amir. ( )
2. Grandma sew some clothes for helping. ( )

### B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

3. The seagull had two ........................
   a) babies b) adults c) cousins d) dads
4. The friends are ........................ to help in the village.
   a) sad b) happy c) worried d) sorry



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## 6 Choose the correct answer.

1. If it doesn't rain soon, we .................................... a water shortage.
   a) have  b) will have  c) has  d) are having
2. They can recycle paper .................................................... glass.
   a) and  b) but  c) as  d) so
3. If the climate ......................... hotter, there will be more droughts.
   a) get  b) got  c) gets  d) getting
4. We need to stop pollution .................................... it will be too late.
   a) or  b) and  c) so  d) but

## 7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. burn - We - fuels - won't - fossil - .

..................................................................................................................

2. cars - help - Electric - will - the environment - .

..................................................................................................................

## 8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words.

**How to help the environment**

Guiding words:

( coal - fossil fuel - electric cars - recycle - plant trees )

..................................................................................................................

..................................................................................................................

..................................................................................................................

..................................................................................................................

..................................................................................................................

# Listening Texts

## Unit (7)

### Lesson(1)

**1) Listen and complete.**

There are lots of trees, plants, and flowers in the rainforest. Lots of animals live in these places. For example, there are insects, birds, reptiles, and mammals. It often rains there and the temperature is hot.

### Lesson(4)

**1) Listen and complete.**

Iceland is a cold country, but it has more than 600 hot springs and 200 volcanoes. There is a lot of hot water underground, and this is used to heat homes and to make electricity.

### Activities on unit (7)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

What can our country do to help the environment? I think our country can help by using more renewable energy. It would be a good way to use less fossil fuel. It's a good idea to plant more trees and protect the forests we have.

**2) Listen and complete.**

It is very dry in the desert. The animals and plants that live there have to find clever ways to survive without a lot of water. You can find these environments on every continent, and they can be hot or cold.

## Unit (8)

### Lesson(2)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Aya was visiting her grandma. Grandma was making a meal, and Aya was sitting in the kitchen looking carefully at grandma's books. Grandma cooked very well and she had her own cook book.

**2) Listen and complete.**

Hawawshi is delicious. It is made with bread and beef or lamb. The meat is cooked with onion, herbs, and spices. The bread is pressed together around the meat and cooked. We sometimes eat it with salad.

### Lesson(4)

**1) Listen and complete.**

Egypt is a fantastic country to visit. In all parts of the country, you can see amazing sights, eat delicious food and meet friendly people.

Egyptians are very hospitable and generous. Some Egyptian festivals have traditional food,too.

### Activities on unit (8)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

The spring festival of Sham El-Nessim is my favorite festival. We have picnics in the park with our families and we eat special food. We paint and decorate eggs. It's fun!

My favorite Egyptian dishes are the ones we eat at festivals! We eat a delicious meal called fatta at Eid Al-Adha and special cookies called kahk at Eid Al-Fitr!

**2) Listen and complete.**

Long ago, the king asked an important man to leave Egypt for a special job. The man traveled with many other sailors, but he wasn't successful. When he returned, he was frightened about what the king would say. His servant told him to tell the truth,

## Unit (9)

### Lesson(2)

**1) Listen and complete.**

khufu is famous for building the Great Pyramid at Giza. The statue shows the pharaoh sitting on a throne. It is the smallest piece of Egyptian royal sculpture ever discovered. It was found in 1903. He built the solar boat. It was a wooden boat. It is about 4600 years old. It's 42 meters long. It was found in Giza.

### Lesson(3)

**1) Listen and complete.**

Saqqara is one of the biggest sites in Egypt. It has many tombs, including one of the oldest pyramids in Egypt. Builders made this for King Djoser in about 2630 BCE. It is the Step Pyramid,and it is one of the oldest stone monuments.

### Activities on unit (9)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Lots of people visit Egypt every year because of its amazing archaeological sites. Tourists want to see large monuments,pyramids, and temples. It is incredible to think that ancient Egyptians were building these amazing structures over 4000 years ago, when civilizations in other countries were much simpler.

Archaeologists have found lots of artifacts such as tools,pottery,vases,maskes.

**2) Listen and complete.**

When people think about Egypt, they think of the Pyramids and the Sphinx at Giza. They are famous all over the world. Archaeologists think that the ancient Egyptian built the Sphinx to protect the Pyramids. They carved it from one huge piece of stone.

## Review (3)

**1) Listen and complete.**

In Ramadan we are having a meal in the evening at sunset. There's always lots of delicious food! Last week my mom made kunafa, with sweet pastry. We had it with soft cheese. I was helping her in the kitchen when I dropped the sugar!

**2) Listen and complete.**

The world needs lots of trees because they take carbon dioxide out of the air and make our air cleaner. Sometimes people cut down trees and forests to build homes or make farms, but it's important to plant more trees.

## Unit (10)

### Lesson(1)

**1) Listen and complete.**

A blog is a special kind of website. It usually belongs to one person who posts information there regularly for others to read. There are blogs about many different topics like sports or cooking.

### Lesson(4)

**1) Listen and complete.**

1- I like English and Arabic.

2- I go to school in the morning.

3- I like football matches,but I don't play it.

4-I'd like to create an after-school writer's club.

### Activities on unit (10)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

I'm very tired today. Last night I played board games with my sister for an hour . Then I had dinner and I watched TV. Then I did my homework and I went to bed late. I went to school late.







2) Listen and complete.

I love playing football. I really want to join the school team. They are choosing the team next month and I think they might choose me. My friends don't like football. They don't want me to play on the team.

## Unit (11)

### Lesson(3)

1) Listen and complete.

The invention of the steam engine changed transportation. Ships with steam engines could travel much faster than using people or the wind to move boats. The first steam train was in Wales in the 1800s.The train made trips between rural and urban areas faster and safer.

### Lesson(4)

1) Listen and complete.

My city is located on the Nile River. There are new homes, schools, and a hospital. There is also a large park where people can go for walks and play sports. I believe that parks are important for everyone.

### Activities on unit (11)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

There is a lot of traffic in my neighborhood. The trip to my school takes an hour. I always get into a traffic jam. The traffic lights colors for "Go" is green and " Stop" is red. I get up early so I am always on time for school.

2) Listen and complete.

In the past, people used animals and small boats for transportation. Farmers used to transport their goods in wagons and carts. Ships with steam engines could travel faster than sail boats. The first subway train opened in London in 1863. Today airplanes can fly to different continents in one day.

## Unit (12)

### Lesson(3)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

On December 12th, 1995, world leaders had a very portant meeting. 196 parties signed the Paris Agreement. The parties agreed to reduce global warming to less than 2 degrees Celsius. To do this, countries agreed to start reducing greenhouse gases immediately. This was the first time that so many nations made a serious effort to slow global warming.

### Lesson(4)

1) Listen and complete.

The Suez Canal links the Red Sea and the Mediterranean Sea. It's the most important canal in the world. Many ships go through the Suez Canal. The ships travel to many countries all over the world. Thousands of ships cross it every year.

### Activities on unit (12)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Drought happens where there is not enough rain for a long time. When this happens, rivers and lakes become dry. Farmers cannot grow food and nature is in danger. When people do not have all the water that they need, we say that there is a water shortage.

2) Listen and complete.

Tarek wants to make his house more ecofriendly. Tarek uses electricity from solar energy. He will save money. What will he do with all that extra money? Tarek will buy an electric car. If he buys an electric car, Tarek will help the environment.


AL-BAHER
2024
CONNECT
PLUS
Final Revision
4th
Primary
Second Term
Parents' Guide
بتصريح و تحت إشراف
MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TECHNICAL EDUCATION
وزارة التربية والتعليم والتعليم الفني

# FICTION READER
# AMIR TAKES ACTION

أمير يتخذ إجراء

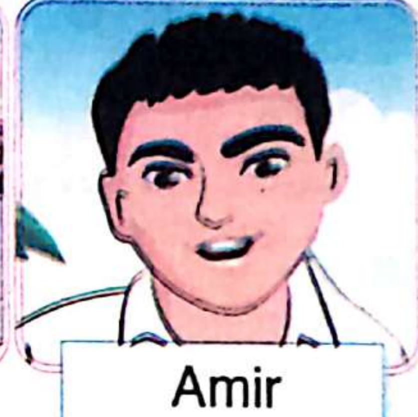
BY SCOT ESPOSITO
ILLUSTRATED BY MIKE LACEY



**The Story** **AMIR TAKES ACTION**

# The Characters


Grandma


Amir

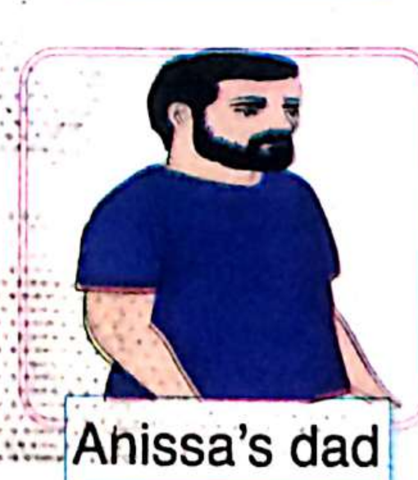

Anissa


Waleed


Waleed's dad


Dalia




Anissa's dad


The seagull


the baby seagulls

Help your child identify the characters of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على شخصيات القصة.

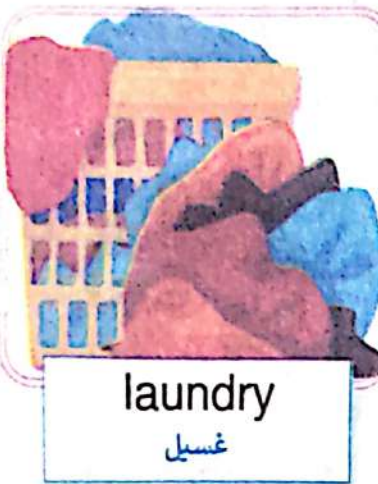




# PICTURE DICTIONARY



check
يفحص / يختبر



laundry
غسيل



washing machine
غسالة



seagull
طائر النورس





nest
عُش



land
تهبط الطائرة



roof
سطح



cloth bag
حقيبة قماش



biodegradable bags
حقائب قابلة للتحلل



Help your child identify these words..

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



# The plot حبكة القصة

## The main idea: الفكرة الرئيسية للقصة:

- It's important to identify the cause of the problems.
  من المهم أن نحدد أسباب المشكلة.
- We should work together and take actions to solve problems.
  يجب أن نعمل معا ونتخذ الإجراءات اللازمة لحل المشكلات.

## The Beginning: بداية القصة:

- Amir checked the washing machine. قام أمير بفحص الغسالة.
- Amir took the laundry up to the roof. أخذ أمير الغسيل إلى السطح.
- Amir saw plastic bottles floating down the river.
  رأى أمير زجاجات بلاستيكية تطفو في النهر.
- Amir saw a large seagull in the nest. رأى أمير طائر نورس كبير في العش.

## The middle: منتصف القصة:

- There was a plastic bag around the seagull's leg.
  كان هناك كيس من البلاستيك حول ساق النورس.



- Amir was sad for the seagull. كان أمير حزينا على النورس.
- Amir sent a photo to his friends to help the seagull.
  أرسل أمير صورة لأصدقائه لمساعدة النورس.
- Amir wanted to take action. أراد أمير أن يتخذ إجراء.

## The End: نهاية القصة:

- The friends met at Amir's house. التقى الأصدقاء في منزل أمير.
- Grandma volunteered to help. تطوعت الجدة للمساعدة.
- Waleed wanted his dad to stop using plastic bags in his grocery store.
  أراد وليد أن يتوقف والده عن استخدام الأكياس البلاستيكية في محل البقالة الخاص به.



- Anissa asked her dad for help and he will ask fishermen to take the plastic out of the river.
  طلبت أنيسة المساعدة من والدها وهو سيطلب من الصيادين إخراج البلاستيك من النهر.
- Dalia sent an email to all her cousins.
  أرسلت داليا بريدًا إلكترونيًا إلى جميع أبناء عمومتها.

Help your child identify these words..
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.





# The Beginning



"Amir, can you check the washing machine? I think the wash is finished."

"Yes, it's finished, Grandma. I'll take the clothes out for you."

- قالت الجدة لأمير «أمير، هل يمكنك أن تفحص الغسالة؟ أعتقد أن دورة الغسيل انتهت.»

قال أمير «نعم لقد انتهت سأقوم بإخراج الملابس لكِ»



Amir took the laundry up to the roof.

From there, he could see the beautiful Nile and the village below him.

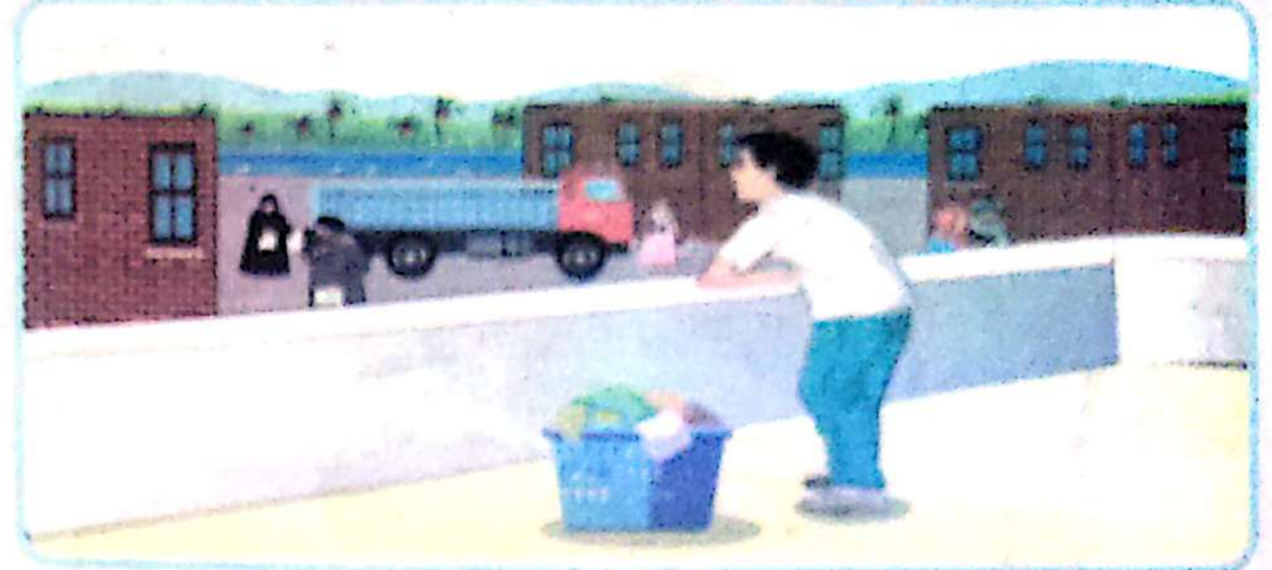
أخذ أمير الغسيل إلى أعلى السطح، واستطاع أن يرى النيل الجميل والقرية من على السطح.



Help your child read the story and have fun.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة ويستمتع بها





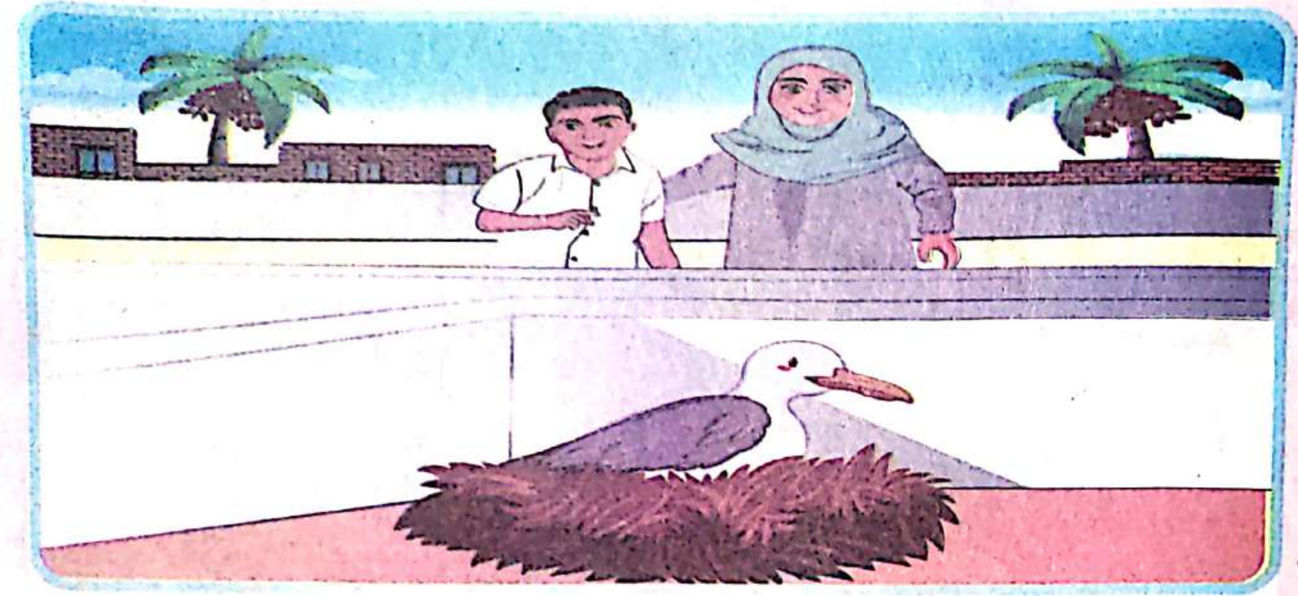
Amir looked down. Trucks transported plastic bottles of water and women carried their shopping home from the market in plastic bags. He could also see plastic bottles floating down the river.

نظر أمير لأسفل. نقلت الشاحنات زجاجات المياه البلاستيكية وحملت النساء سلع التسوق التي جلبوها من السوق في حقائب بلاستيكية. واستطاع أن يرى الزجاجات البلاستيكية طافية في النهر.



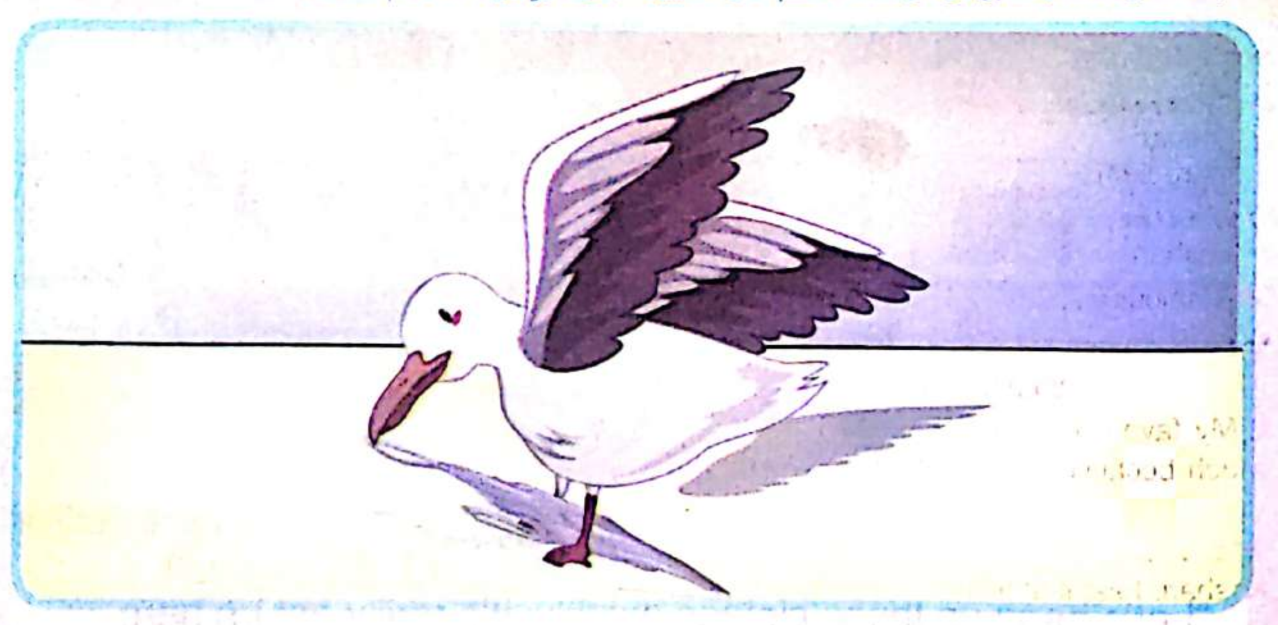
"Let's hang up these clothes quickly. It's really hot up here today," said Grandma.

قالت الجدة لأمير « هيا نقوم بنشر الغسيل بسرعة. فالجو حار هنا اليوم».



A large seagull landed in a nest on top of the neighbor's building. "Look at the seagull, Grandma! She's so beautiful", said Amir. Grandma nodded her head. "Yes, she is," Grandma answered. "All of nature is beautiful. We must respect it."

هبط طائر النورس الكبير في عش أعلى مبنى الجار. قال أمير للجدة «انظري إلى طائر النورس يا جدتي. إنها جميلة جدًا » أومأت الجدة برأسها و قالت « نعم ، كل الطبيعة جميلة ويجب أن نحترم ذلك.»



Amir then noticed something horrible: there was a plastic bag around the seagull's leg. "Oh no! She's in trouble," said Amir.

ثم لاحظ أمير شيئًا فظيعًا: فقد كانت هناك حقيبة بلاستيكية في ساق طائر النورس. وقال « أوه ، لا! إنها في ورطة»



Help your child read the story and have fun.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة ويستمتع بها.



# Activities

## 1 Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. Amir lives in a village. ( )
2. Amir doesn't help his Grandma. ( )
3. Amir took the laundry to the car. ( )
4. Trucks transported plastic bottles of water. ( )
5. It is hot today. ( )
6. Grandma thinks that the seagull is ugly. ( )
7. There was a plastic bag around the seagull's leg. ( )

## 2 Choose the correct word.

1. Amir took the (bags - laundry - dishes - birds) up to the roof.
2. Amir lives in a (boat - school - village - city).
3. Amir could see the beautiful (Nile - beach - sea - lake) from the roof.
4. Women use (plastic - metal - paper - gold) bags for their shopping.
5. A large (eagle - parrot - seagull - chicken) landed in a nest.
6. The seagull is so (ugly - bad - awful - beautiful).
7. There was a plastic bag around the seagull's (neck - leg - hand - eyes).
8. The seagull was (good - kind - in trouble - happy).
9. We must (play - waste - respect - walk) nature.
10. Amir noticed something (good - horrible - nice - kind) with the bird.

# The Middle



Amir's tablet was on the table where he sometimes does his homework in the evening. He picked it up and took a picture of the poor bird. Amir felt sad.

كان تابلت أمير على المنضدة حيث كان أحيانًا يقوم بعمل الواجب المدرسي في المساء. التقط أمير التابلت وأخذ صورة للطائر المسكين. شعر أمير بالحزن.



Grandma saw how Amir was feeling. She put her arm around him. "It'll be OK , Amir." "No, it won't. We have to do something to help. People  are using too much plastic and it's harming the birds." "You're a smart boy, Amir. How can we help other people understand this?" his grandma asked him.

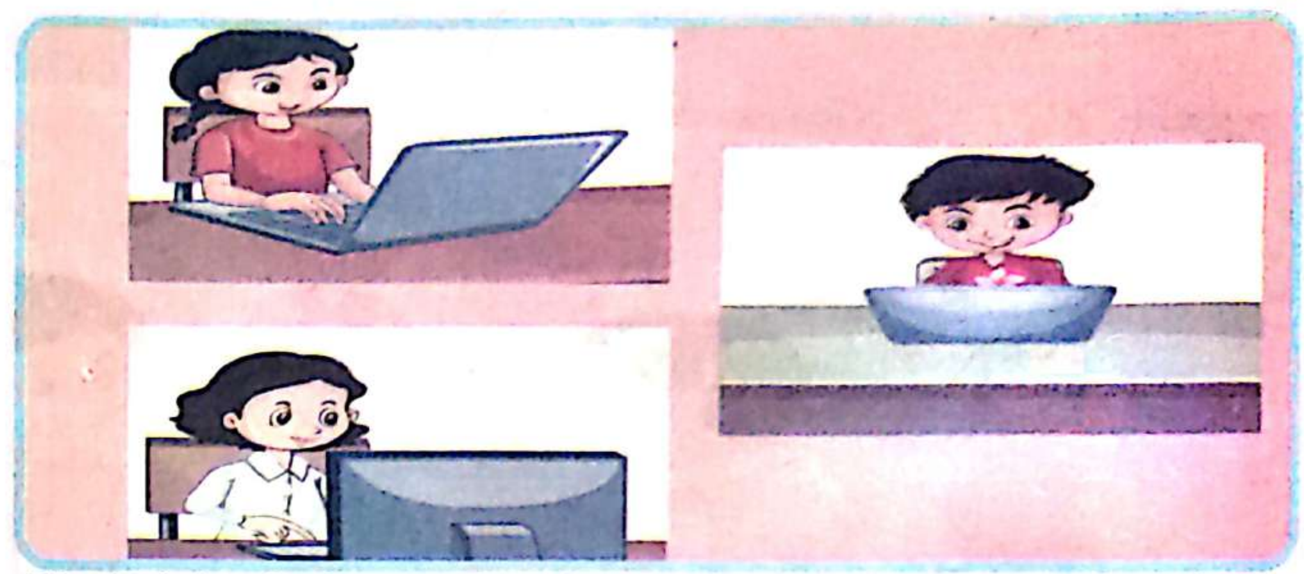
رأت الجدة أمير حزينًا فوضعت ذراعها حوله وقالت « سيكون الطائر بخير يا أمير»
فرد أمير قائلًا « لا ، لن يكون بخير، يجب أن نفعل شيئًا لمساعدته. الناس يستخدمون الكثير من البلاستيك و هذا ضار جدًا للطيور.» قالت الجدة « أنت ولد ذكي يا أمير.» وسألته قائلة «كيف يمكننا أن نساعد الناس أن يفهموا ذلك؟»



Help your child read the story and have fun.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة ويستمتع بها.





That night, Amir sent the picture of the seagull to some of his friends from school. They were all very worried about the bird. "We need to help her," his friend Waleed texted back. "But what can we do?"

وفي تلك الليلة أرسل أمير صورة طائر النورس لبعض أصدقائه من المدرسة. وكانوا جميعًا قلقين بشأن ذلك الطائر. ورد وليد صديق أمير برسالة عليه قائلًا» نحن نريد مساعدتها، لكن ماذا يمكننا أن نفعل لها؟




Amir wanted to take action. He started researching on the internet and discovered that people use billions of plastic bags and bottles in Egypt every year. A lot of them end up in the Nile or the sea. So, he sent a message to his friends.

أراد أمير أن يتخذ إجراء. وبدأ في البحث عبر الإنترنت واكتشف أن الناس يستخدمون المليارات من حقائب وزجاجات البلاستيك في مصر كل عام. و ينتهي بها المطاف في نهر النيل أو البحر. لذلك أرسل رسالة إلى أصدقائه.









The next day,Amir ,Waleed, and some other friends met at Amir's house.

They talked about different things that they could do. Amir took notes on his tablet:

في اليوم التالي، اجتمع أمير و وليد وبعض الأصدقاء في منزل أمير.

وتحدثوا عن أشياء مختلفة يمكنهم القيام بها. ودَوَّن أمير بعض الملاحظات على التابلت الخاص به.

- Use cloth bags. We can give them to people at the market.

  استخدم حقائب مصنوعة من القماش. ويمكن أن نعطي تلك الحقائب للناس في السوق.

- Use biodegradable bags. Waleed's dad can use them at his store.

  استخدم حقائب قابلة للتحلل. ويستطيع والد وليد استخدامها في متجره.

- Clean up the riverbanks. Anissa's dad can ask the fishermen to help us.

  نظِّف ضفاف النهر. ويستطيع والد أنيسة أن يطلب من الصيادين مساعدتنا.

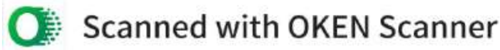
- Contact children in other towns. Dalia can send emails to her cousins.

  اتَّصِل بالأطفال في المدن الأخرى. تستطيع داليا أن ترسل بريد إلكتروني لأبناء عمها.



Help your child read the story and have fun.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة ويستمتع بها.



# Activities

## 1 Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. Amir's friends didn't want to help him with his plan. ( )
2. Dalia took a picture of the seagull and sent them to her friends. ( )
3. Amir wanted to take action. ( )
4. Amir made a new volunteer group. ( )
5. Amir is a bad boy. ( )
6. Amir took a picture of the seagull with his tablet. ( )
7. The plastic bottles are harming the birds. ( )
8. A lot of plastic bags and bottles end up in the Nile and the sea. ( )

## 2 Choose the correct word.

1. Amir took a picture of the poor bird with his (camera - cellphone - tablet - computer).
2. Amir was (sad - happy - delighted - pleased) about the poor bird.
3. Amir sent the picture of the seagull to his (dad - mum - grandma - friends).
4. Amir and his friends talked about their (plane - plan - school - food) to save the Nile.
5. The friends can give people (paper - metal - cloth - plastic) bags at the market.
6. Waleed's dad can use biodegradable bags at his (house - ship - store - car).
7. Dalia can send emails to her (friends - children - boys - cousins).
8. Anissa's dad can ask the (fishermen - old men - policemen - women) to help him.

# The End



Amir explained his ideas to his grandma. She volunteered to help, too. "I have some old cotton cloth,Amir. I can sew some shopping bags for you. Will that help?'
"Yes, Grandma. Thank you! That will help a lot'

شرح أمير أفكاره لجدته. وتطوعت الجدة من أجل المساعدة أيضًا وقالت لأمير «لدي بعض الأقمشة القطنية القديمة. يمكنني أن أقوم بخياطة بعض حقائب التسوق من أجلك. هل هذا سيساعد؟»
قال أمير « نعم يا جدتي، أشكرك. هذا سيساعد كثيرًا»



Waleed went to his dad's grocery store. "Dad, please help us. Let's stop using plastic bags in our store. We can use biodegradable ones instead." "Waleed, why should we do that?" his father asked. Waleed, showed him Amir's picture of the seagull. His dad looked sad. "OK. Waleed. I'll help you. We'll start using these biodegradable bags. We must help the river."

ذهب وليد إلى متجر البقالة الخاص بوالده و قال له « أبي من فضلك ساعدنا. هيًا نتوقف عن استخدام الحقائب البلاستيكية في متجرنا. ونستخدم الحقائب القابلة للتحلل بدلًا منها.»
ردّ والده سائلًا « لِمَ ينبغي أن نفعل ذلك؟» عرض وليد صورة طائر النورس التي التقطها أمير. بدا على والده الحزن وقال: « نعم ، يا وليد سأساعدك. سنبدأ في استخدام تلك الحقائب القابلة للتحلل. يجب أن نساعد في نظافة النهر.»

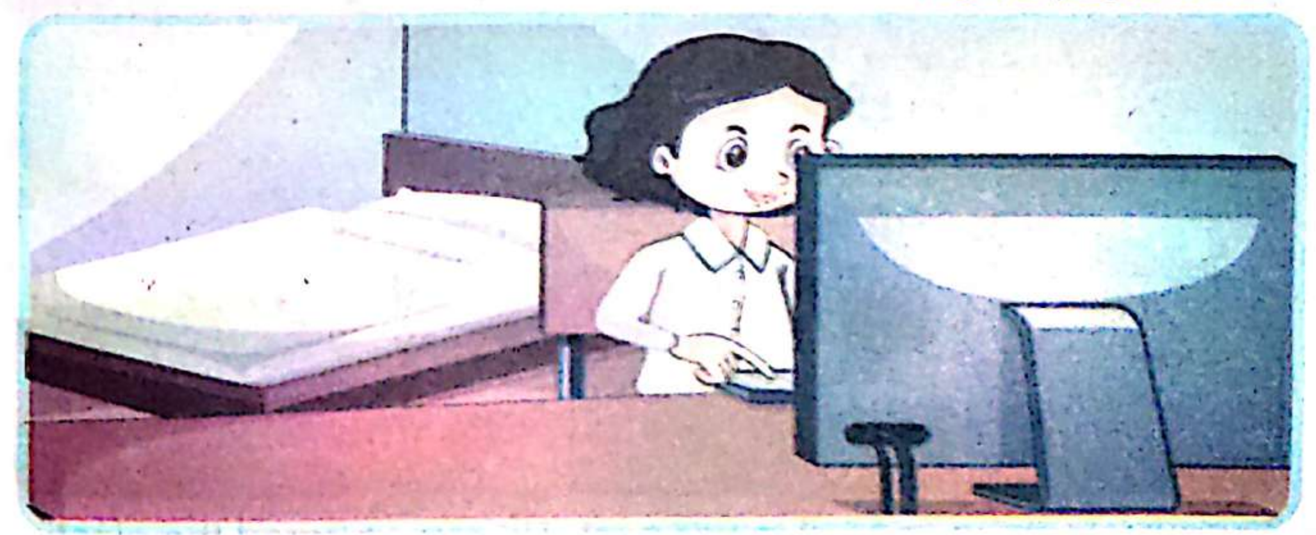






Anissa's dad works at the market. She showed him Amir's picture of the seagull and told him all about their plans." I'll ask the fishermen to help us take the plastic out of the river. They'll help us. The water is important for all of us," he said.

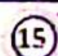
يعمل والد أنيسة في السوق. عرضت أنيسة على والدها صورة طائر النورس التي التقطها أمير و أخبرته عن كل خططهم. قال لها والدها «سأطلب من الصيادين أن يساعدونا في إخراج البلاستيك من النهر. وسيساعدونا في ذلك. فماء النهر مهم لنا جميعًا».



Dalia sent emails to all her cousins. They lived in other villages around Egypt. "Dalia, this is a great idea," her cousin Mariam wrote back. "We will be happy to help in our village,too."

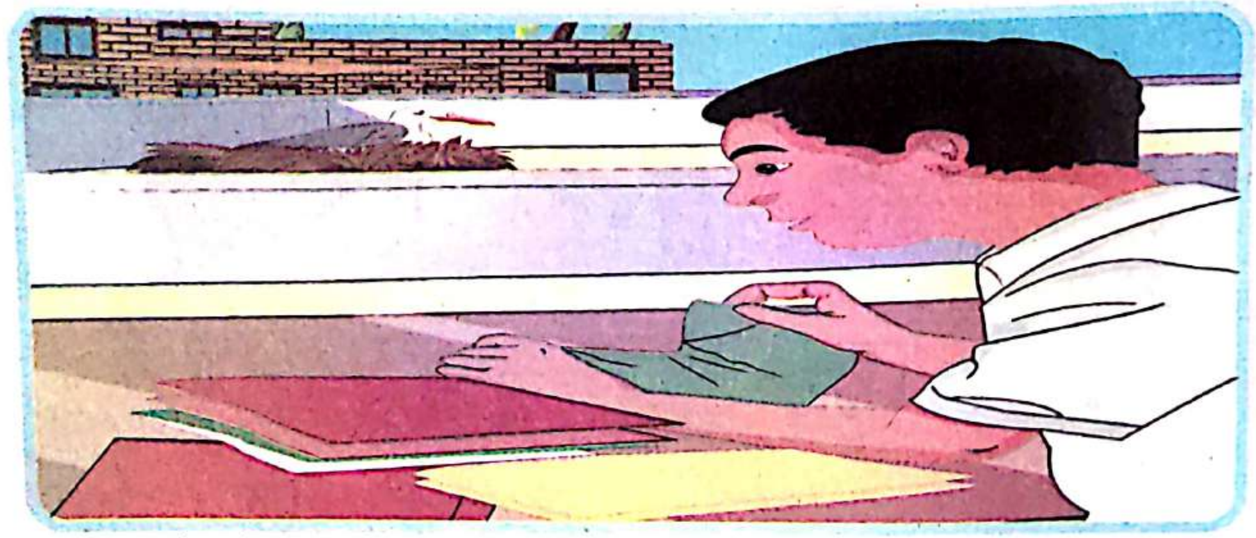
قامت داليا بإرسال بريد إلكتروني لأبناء عمها .

يعيش أبناء عمها في قرى أخرى في أنحاء مصر. ردت ابنة عمها مريم برسالة قائلة « هذه فكرة رائعة. سوف نكون سعداء لمساعدة قريتنا أيضا.»





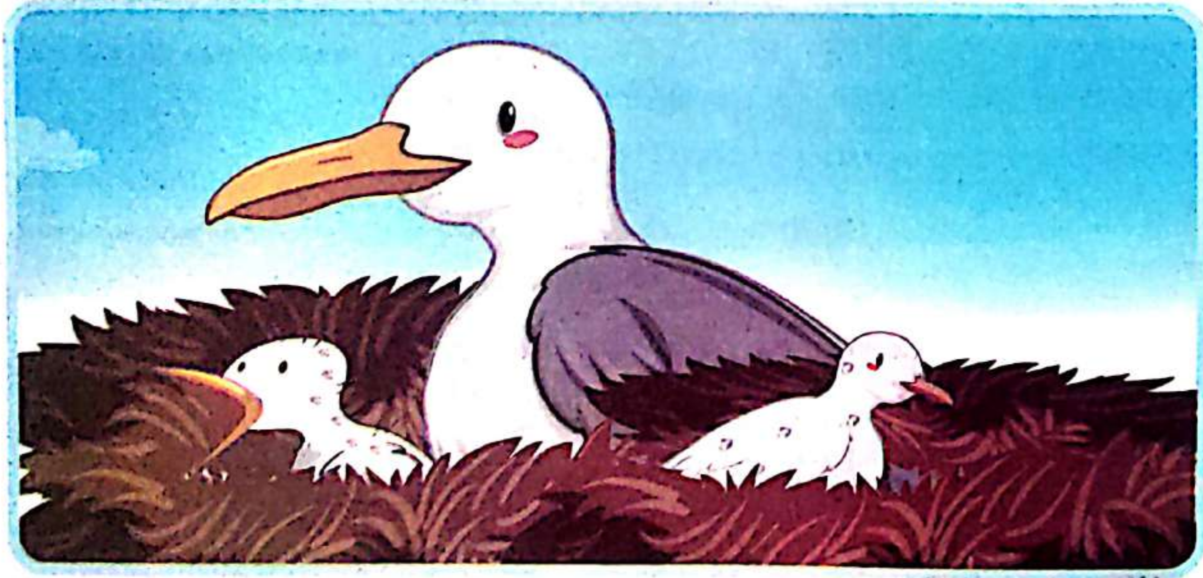




A couple days later, Amir went onto his grandma's roof to get her laundry. He saw the colorful cloth she was going to use to sew the cotton shopping bags. He started folding it and putting it in the laundry basket.

وبعد يومين صعد أمير إلى سطح بيت جدته لجمع الغسيل.

ورأى القماش الملون التي ستستخدمه الجدة في خياطة حقائب التسوق القطنية. وبدأ في طيّها في سلة الغسيل.



Then he saw the seagull in her nest. He remembered the plastic around her leg. Suddenly, two baby seagulls put their heads out of the nest. Amir smiled. He knew that he and his friends together could make a change.

ثم رأى أنثى طائر النورس في عشها. فتذكر البلاستيك الذي كان حول ساقها وفجأة طل صغار النورس برأسيهما من العش. ابتسم أمير. وعلم حينها أنه وأصدقائه يمكنهم إحداث تغيير.



Help your child read the story and have fun.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة ويستمتع بها.

# Activities

## 1 Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. Mariam is one of Dalia's cousins. ( )
2. Grandma volunteered to help. ( )
3. Anissa's dad works at school. ( )
4. The water isn't important for us. ( )
5. The seagull has two babies. ( )
6. Amir's grandma used some old pieces of cotton cloth to make biodegradable shopping bags. ( )

## 2 Choose the correct word.

1. The friends met at Amir's (house - street - school - club).
2. Anissa's dad works at the (ship - market - school - workshop).
3. Waleed's dad stopped using (metal - cloth - paper - plastic) bags at his store.
4. Waleed showed his dad the (babies - picture - book - roof) of the seagull.
5. The fishermen can help taking the plastic out of the (sky - land - ground - river).
6. The water is (bad - unhappy - useless - important) for all of us.
7. Dalia sent emails to all her (babies - cousins - sisters - brothers).
8. The children will be (sad - unhappy - happy - unkind) to help their village.
9. The seagull is in her (net - nut - nest - web).
10. The seagull has two (babies - sisters - brothers - cousins).

# Unit (7) All around the world

## Environments البيئات

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| coastal | ساحلية | desert | صحراوية | urban | حضرية |
| mountainous | جبلية | rural | ريفية | polar | قطبية |
| rainforest | غابة مطيرة | temperature | درجة الحرارة | difficult | صعب |

## Pollution التلوث

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| air pollution | تلوث الهواء | water pollution | تلوث الماء |
| fossil fuels | وقود حفري | climate change | تغير المناخ |
| carbon dioxide | ثاني أكسيد الكربون | emissions | انبعاثات |

## Energy الطاقة

| Renewable | متجددة | Non-renewable | غير متجددة |
|---|---|---|---|
| wind energy | طاقة الرياح | coal | فحم |
| solar energy | الطاقة الشمسية | gas | غاز |
| tidal energy | طاقة المد و الجزر | oil | بترول |
| geothermal energy | الطاقة الحرارية | | |

## Other words

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| generate (d) | يولد | store (d) | يخزن | absorb (ed) | يمتص |
| hydroelectricity | طاقة كهرومائية | release (d) | يطلق | heat | حرارة |
| waterwheels | السواقي | take out | يخرج | turbine | توربين |

## Large Numbers

| | |
|---|---|
| 1,000 (one thousand) | 10,000 (ten thousand) |
| 100,000 (one hundred thousand) | 1,000,000 (one million) |
| 10,000,000 (ten million) | 100,000,000 (one hundred million) |
| 1,000,000,000 (one billion) | |



Help your child revise unit (7).

ساعد طفلك على أن يراجع الوحدة السابعة.



# Language

## The Present Continuous Tense

زمن المضارع المستمر

### Form:

Subject + (am / is / are) + (v + ing)

e.g. I'm walking to school.

### Usage:

To express an action that is happening now.

### Key words:

| now الآن | Listen! استمع! | at the moment في هذه اللحظة |
|---|---|---|
| Look! انظر! | today اليوم | at present في الوقت الحاضر |

### Negative:

Subject + (am / is / are) + not + (v+ing)

e.g. I am not using recycled bags.

### Yes / No question:

Is + (he / she / it / a singular noun) + (v+ing)...?

e.g. Is he walking to school? Yes, he is. No, he isn't.

Are + (they / we / you / a plural noun) + (v+ing)...?

e.g. Are they watching a TV program?

Yes, they are. No, they aren't.

### Wh- question:

Q.W + (is /are) + subject + (v+ing)...?

e.g. What is he doing now?

- He is driving an electric car.

# General Activities

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The world needs lots of ............................................ .
   a) animals b) sweets c) land d) trees
2. Trees take out ............................................ from the air.
   a) carbon dioxide b) carbon c) oxygen d) water
3. People cut down trees to build ............................................ .
   a) school b) zoos c) homes d) towers
4. It's ............................................ to plant new trees.
   a) important b) wrong c) useless d) unhappy

## 2 Listen and complete.

1. The urban environment is ............................................ populated.
2. ............................................ people live in this environment.
3. There are a lot of ............................................ in this environment.
4. There can be a lot of ............................................, too.

## 3 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

keep - doing - garbage - creating

Wael : What are you 1)............................................, Amal?

Amal : I am 2)........................ a website about pollution on Mount Everest.

Wael : How are people helping to 3)........................ the environment clean there?

Amal : They don't leave any 4)........................ on the mountain.

Wael : They're amazing.



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



## 4 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

resources - pollution - electricity - released

When we burn non-renewable, fuels like coal, gas and oil, carbon dioxide is 1)................. into the atmosphere. This causes air 2).................. and makes climate change worse. Renewable energy from natural 3).................. is better for the environment and it doesn't run out. Some countries have a lot of coastal environments and they make 4).................. using the movement of the sea. We can get solar energy from the sun.

## 5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

### Karahnjukar Hydroelectricity plant

karahnjukar is a hydroelectricity plant in eastern Iceland. The hydroelectric plant is the largest power plant in Iceland. It took five years to build, from 2003 to 2007. Five dams were built across two rivers. This created three large reservoirs of water. Water from the reservoirs travels through 73 kilometers of underground water tunnels. Then it goes down a deep tunnel to the underground power station. The karahnjukar Dam is the largest of the five dams. It is 193 meters high and 730 meters long. It generates more than 690.000 kilowatts of power a year. The power isn't used to heat homes. It is used for an industrial metal plant.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The karahnjukar hydroelectric plant is in ..........................
   a) Egypt  b) America  c) Iceland  d) France
2. There are .......................................... dams across two rivers.
   a) five  b) four  c) six  d) two

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. How high is the karahnjukar Dam? ..........................................
4. What is the power from the karahnjukar Dam used for? ..................





## 6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. Vocabulary

1. There are high mountains in a ………………………… environment.
   a) urban b) rural c) mountainous d) polar
2. It's very cold in ………………………… environment.
   a) rainforest b) polar c) rural d) desert
3. There are lots of ………………………… in a rainforest.
   a) rivers b) sand c) beaches d) trees
4. The ………… environment is where the land is next to the sea.
   a) rainforest b) rural c) coastal d) urban
5. There are lots of trees in a ………………………… environment.
   a) rural b) polar c) rainforest d) urban
6. There can be a lot of traffic in ………………………… areas.
   a) rural b) polar c) mountainous d) urban
7. It's very ………………………… in a desert environment.
   a) cold b) snowy c) dry d) warm
8. ………………………… is something we burn to make heat or power.
   a) Recycling b) Fuel c) Carbon dioxide d) Reuse
9. ………………………… are made by factories, cars and trucks.
   a) Oxygen b) Fuel c) Emissions d) Wind
10. Emissions can cause air ………………………… .
    a) recycling b) heating c) pollution d) planting
11. It's important to ………………………… plastic.
    a) throw b) eat c) drop d) recycle
12. Fossil fuels are things like coal, ………………………… and oil.
    a) water b) sun c) gas d) snow
13. A ………………………… environment can get a lot of ice.
    a) polar b) desert c) coastal d) rainforest



Help your child deal with such questions

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

14. .................... is when the weather and temperature change over a long period of time.

a) Pollution b) Climate change
c) Carbon dioxide d) Recycling

15. .................... energies don't make pollution.

a) Non-renewable b) Carbon dioxide
c) Fossil fuels d) Renewable

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. Grammar

1. We are .................... our bikes to school.
   a) ride b) rides c) riding d) rode
2. Sarah .................... to school today.
   a) walk b) walked c) walking d) is walking
3. They aren't .................... up garbage on the beach today.
   a) picking b) pick c) picks d) picked
4. We .................... about emissions at school.
   a) was learning b) learning c) are learning d) is learning
5. .................... reading an article about climate change?
   a) You are b) Do you c) Are you d) Does he
6. Jasmine isn't .................... the TV program about forest fires.
   a) watching b) watch c) watched d) watches
7. I .................... an essay about plastic pollution.
   a) am writing b) writing c) is writing d) writes
8. That woman is .................... plastic bags.
   a) collecting b) collect c) collects d) collected
9. Look! They .................... to keep the environment clean.
   a) helps b) helped c) are helping d) helping
10. What are you ....................?
    a) do b) does c) doing d) did

11. Are you .................................... to school?
a) going b) goes c) go d) went
12. What is he .................................... ?
a) reads b) reading c) read d) are reading
13. We are .................................... plastic bottles.
a) recycled b) recycle c) recycles d) recycling
14. Mum .................................... listening to the podcast.
a) isn't b) aren't c) don't d) doesn't
15. Look! They .................................... trees.
a) is planting b) plants c) are planting d) planted
16. What is he .................................... ?
a) watched b) watch c) watching d) watches

## 7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. kind of - live - **What** - do - you - environment - in - ?

....................................

2. are - **There** - lots of - trees - a rainforest - in - .

....................................

3. comes - natural - **Geothermal** - energy - from - sources - .

....................................

4. help - the - **Trees** - protect - to - environment - .

....................................

5. cold - **Iceland** - is - country - a - .

....................................

6. is - **Why** - it - important - recycle - to - ?

....................................

7. can - do - **What** - to - we - help - environment - the - ?

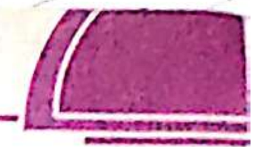
....................................



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.







## 8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

**Water pollution**

**Guiding words:**

(important - keep - plastic - bottles - garbage - chemicals)

..........................................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................................

## 9 Correct the underlined word.

1. I **walk** to school now. (..........................)
2. Today we're **talk** about pollution. (..........................)
3. Look! He **wait** for the bus. (..........................)
4. We are **learn** about climate change. (..........................)
5. At the moment Hana **watch** a TV program. (..........................)
6. The girls **listen** to music now. (..........................)
7. What are you **read**? (..........................)
8. Are you **help** the environment? (..........................)
9. What **is** fossil fuels? (..........................)
10. It doesn't **going** into the sea. (..........................)





# Unit (8) Customs and traditions

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| festival | عيد | fast (v) | يصوم |
| celebration | احتفال | feast | وليمة |
| charity | جمعية خيرية | sacrifice | يضحي |
| creation | خلق | sunrise | الشروق |
| fairgrounds | الملاهي - ساحات الألعاب | sunset | الغروب |
| prayer | صلاة - دعاء | beans | فول |
| grateful | شاكر | garlic | ثوم |
| olive oil | زيت زيتون | herbs | أعشاب |
| buttons | أزرار | spices | توابل |
| galabeya | جلابية | vinegar | خل |
| hizam | حزام | sleeves | أكمام (الجلابية) |
| linen | كتان | sandals | صندل |
| loose | واسع - فضفاض | guest | ضيف |
| striped | مقلم | host | مضيف |
| shipwreck | حطام سفينة | generous | كريم |
| pastry | فطيرة (معجنات) | sights | معالِم |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| celebrate with | يحتفل مع | make a meal | يعد وجبة | play music | يعزف موسيقى |
| her own book | الكتاب الخاص بها | make...with | يصنع....بـ | go down | تغيب - تغرب |
| make a lantern | يصنع فانوسا | get ready | يستعد | come up | تشرق |
| in different colors | بألوان مختلفة | at sunrise | عند شروق الشمس | give information | يقدم معلومات |



Help your child revise unit (8). ساعد طفلك على أن يراجع الوحدة الثامنة .



# Language

## The Present Simple Tense

زمن المضارع البسيط

### Form:

| | |
|---|---|
| I / We / You / They / A plural noun | + inf. |
| He / She / It / A singular noun | + inf. + v + (s / es / ies) |

e.g. Men often wear the galabeya.
Sara wears a skirt every day.

### Negative:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| I / We / You / They / A plural noun | + | don't + inf. |
| He / She / It / A singular noun | + | doesn't + inf. |

e.g. I don't wear kaftan.
She doesn't wear hizam.

### Yes, No question:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Do + (I / they / we / you / a plural noun) | + | inf. ...? |
| Does + (he / she / it / a singular noun) | + | inf. ...? |

e.g. Do you usually wear sandals?
Yes, I do. No, I don't.

e.g. Does he wear loose clothes?
Yes, he does. No, he doesn't.

### Wh- question:

Q.W + (do / does) + subject + inf...?

e.g. What do you wear to do sports?
I wear a T-shirt and shorts.





# General Activities

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Eid Al-Adha lasts for .................................................. days.
   a) two   b) three   c) four   d) six
2. Many people sacrifice a .................................................. .
   a) cow   b) sheep   c) horse   d) cat
3. We give out .................................................. to our family.
   a) fish   b) clothes   c) money   d) meat
4. We go to the .................................................. for prayers.
   a) mosque   b) school   c) club   d) market

## 2 Listen and complete.

1. Abu Simbel Temples are near .................................................. .
2. Outside the temples, there are some very big .................................. .
3. Nefertari is Ramses' .................................................. .
4. Light from the sun at ............ shines all the way inside the main.

## 3 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

Grandma - celebrate - going

Omar : Hello, Sara. Where are you 1).................................................?
Sara : I'm going to my 2).................................................. .
Omar : Why?
Sara : To3).................................................. her birthday.
Omar : You look beautiful in this dress.
Sara : Thank you.



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



## 4 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

spring - eggs - traditional - celebrating

I love 1)………… Sham El-Nessim with my family. The festival is for the start of 2)……………………and it is very old. Before the day of the festival, we spend time preparing lots of different 3)………………… food, often until sunset. We also paint and decorate 4)…………………………… in different colors.

## 5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I think Egypt is a great country to visit. You can visit the pyramids of Giza. The Library in Alexandria, or the beautiful Temple of Hatshepsut in the Valley of the Kings. There are so many things to see. It's a fantastic place to have a holiday. You can take a boat trip down the Nile or go camping in the desert or you can go scuba diving in the Red Sea. The spring festival of Sham El-Nessim is my favorite festival. We have picnics in the park with our families and we eat special food. We paint and decorate eggs. It's fun! My favorite Egyptian dishes are the ones we eat at festival! We eat a delicious dessert called kunafa at Eid Al-Adha and special cookies called kahk at Eid Al-Fiter!

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The pyramids are at ………………………………………………………….
   a) Cairo b) Giza c) Alexandria d) Luxor
2. The main idea of the text is about ……………………………………….
   a) USA b) Egypt c) China d) France



**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What temple can you visit? ……………………………………………………
4. Which festival do people celebrate in spring?……………………………





## 6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. Vocabulary

1. Eid .................................................... is during the month of Zu Elhijja.
   a) Al-Adha b) Al-Fitr c) Sham El-Nessim d) Easter
2. Children go to .................................................... to have fun on the rides.
   a) schools b) hospitals c) fairgrounds d) beaches
3. People go to mosques for .................................... during Eid Al-Adha.
   a) prayers b) eating c) players d) sleeping
4. Farmers go to work at ...................... and go home in the afternoon.
   a) noon b) night c) sunrise d) sunset
5. We are .................................................... that we are healthy.
   a) bad b) grateful c) useful d) well
6. .................................................... is made with beef or lamb.
   a) Hawawshi b) Fatta c) Ful medames d) Pizza
7. We always eat .................................................... at Eid Al-Adha.
   a) sayadeya b) fish c) hawawshi d) fatta
8. Ancient Egyptians wore clothes made of ....................................
   a) cotton b) plastic c) linen d) silk
9. Linen keeps people ....................................................
   a) hot b) cool c) warm d) sunny
10. Kunafa is a delicious ....................................................
    a) dessert b) juice c) sandwich d) desert
11. People usually make .................................................... at Ramadan.
    a) lambs b) glasses c) lanterns d) clothes
12. Give .................................................... is to offer something.
    a) out b) in c) up d) to
13. Muslims go to the ................................ during the month of Zu Elhijja.
    a) funfair b) prayers c) pilgrimage d) festival



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

14. Fatta takes a long time to ............, so we don't eat it very often.
    a) eat b) digest c) drink d) cook

15. Grandma shares ........................ from her cook book with friends.
    a) photos b) pictures c) recipes d) pens

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. Grammar

1. People don't ............... eat fatta because it's difficult to digest.
   a) often b) always c) never d) now
2. Press the bread ............... around the meat to make hawawshi.
   a) careful b) easily c) carefully d) easy
3. People ............................................ eat ful medames with bread.
   a) always b) never c) yet d) ever
4. Sayadeya is ............... made by people who live near the coast.
   a) never b) ever c) sometimes d) always
5. Grandma loves cooking and she cooks ....................................
   a) good b) well c) bad d) badly
6. Today, I ............................................ kahk with my mom and dad.
   a) make b) makes c) am making d) are making
7. We always ........................................ fesikh at Sham El-Nessim.
   a) eat b) eats c) are eating d) eating
8. I ................................................................ colorful clothes.
   a) wear usually b) wear often
   c) usually wear d) wear always
9. Fares is in the garden with his dad. Fares ..................... him now.
   a) help b) helps c) is helping d) helped

10. Dina's mom .................................................. in an office every day.
a) works b) work c) is working d) worked

11. I always .................................................. loose clothes.
a) wear b) wears c) is wearing d) am wearing

12. Today, we .................................................. Eid Al-Fitr.
a) celebrate b) celebrates c) are celebrating d) celebrated

13. Look at these! I ...................... some eggs for Sham El-Nessim.
a) paint b) painted c) am painting d) paints

14. Fares .................................................. in an apartment near the coast.
a) live b) lives c) is living d) living

15. My brother can run ..................................................
a) quick b) quickly c) easy d) good

## 7 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. is - country - **Egypt** - to visit - a fantastic - .

..................................................................................................

2. some - **There** - very - are - statues - big - .

..................................................................................................

3. do - on - **What** - special - wear - you - days - ?

..................................................................................................

4. keeps - cool - **Linen** - you - .

..................................................................................................

5. a very - Islamic- **Eid Al-Adha** - festival - is - important - .

..................................................................................................



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



## 8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

**A visit to the pyramids**

**Guiding words:**

(Giza - Great - friends - Sphinx - enjoyed)

..................................................................................................................................

..................................................................................................................................

..................................................................................................................................

..................................................................................................................................

..................................................................................................................................

..................................................................................................................................

## 9 Correct the underlined word(s).

1. He always wear sandals. (..............................)
2. Do you eating hawawshi now? (..............................)
3. My mom cooks good. (..............................)
4. People often don't eat fatta. (..............................)
5. What are you do at the moment? (..............................)
6. We always go to school on Fridays. (..............................)
7. Nadia living in Luxor with her family. (..............................)
8. What are you usually wear on the weekend? (..............................)
9. Today, I help my mum at home. (..............................)
10. Look careful before you cross the road. (..............................)

# Unit (9) Our culture

## Vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| cultural heritage | تراث ثقافي | agriculture | زراعة | irrigation | الري |
| identity | الهوية | ancient Egypt | مصر القديمة | monuments | آثار |
| archaeologist | عالم آثار | temple | معبد | calendar | تقويم |
| site | موقع أثري | civilization | حضارة | cruise | جولة نيلية |
| artifacts | مصنوعات يدوية | board game | لعبة لوحية | mask | قناع |
| engravings | نقوش | bury | يدفن | perfume | عطر |
| carve | ينحت | pottery | أواني فخارية | counter | بيدق (قطعة شطرنج) |
| clay | صلصال | tool | أداة يدوية | vase | زهرية |
| horizontal | أفقي | vertical | رأسي | bar chart | تمثيل بياني بالأعمدة |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| historical site | موقع تاريخي | lead to | يؤدي إلى |
| a long white dress | فستان أبيض طويل | proud of | فخور بـ |
| The Step Pyramid of Djoser | هرم زوسر المدرج | find out | يكتشف |
| The Temple of Karnak | معبد الكرنك | walk away | يمشي بعيدًا |
| Qaitbay Citadel | قلعة قايتباي | because of | بسبب |
| International Museum Day | اليوم العالمي للمتاحف | look for | يبحث عن |
| The Statue of Amenhotep III | تمثال أمنحتب الثالث | connect to | يرتبط بـ |
| Tutankhamun's Mask | قناع توت عنخ آمون | a piece of | قطعة من |
| Pharaoh Khufu's solar boat | مركب الشمس للفرعون خوفو | go up | يصعد لأعلى |

## Workbook Vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| advanced | متقدم | canal | قناة ري | bring (brought) | يحضر |
| invent (ed) | يخترع | turn (ed) on | يشغل | Abydos | تمثال أبيدوس |
| online | متصل بالنت | throne | العرش | sculpture | تمثال منحوت |
| transportation | نقل | royal | ملكي | papyrus | ورق البردي |



Help your child revise unit (9).

ساعد طفلك على أن يراجع الوحدة التاسعة.



# Language

## The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

**Form:** The second form of the verb.

✗ يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل (أي بإضافة d, ed, ied للفعل المنتظم و غير المنتظم يحفظ)

e.g. I visited Luxor last week.

e.g. They saw the lion in the zoo.

**Usage:**

✗ يدل على حدث انتهى في الماضي.

e.g. I went to school late yesterday.

**Negative:**

Subject + didn't + inf.

e.g. We didn't watch TV yesterday.

**Yes / No question:**

Did + subject + inf. ?

e.g. Did you study English yesterday?

Yes, I did. No, I didn't.

**Wh- question:**

Q.W + (did) + subject + inf...?

e.g. Where did you go yesterday?

I went to the club.

**Keywords:**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| yesterday أمس | last الماضي | ... ago منذ |
| in (2010) في عام ٢٠١٠ | in the past في الماضي | |

# The Past Continuous Tense

## Form:

زمن الماضي المستمر

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| I / He / She / It / A singular noun | + was | + v + (ing) |
| They / You / We / A plural noun | + were | |

e.g. He was sitting under a tree.

## Negative:

Subject + (wasn't / weren't) + v + ing?

e.g. We weren't watching TV yesterday morning.

## Yes / No question:

Was / Were + subject + v + ing?

e.g. Were they playing tennis?

Yes, they were. No, they weren't.

## Wh- question:

Q.W + (was / were) + subject + v + ing?

e.g. What were you doing at 4 p.m yesterday?

I was watching TV.

## Keywords:

| yesterday morning | yesterday evening | at 3 a.m yesterday |
|---|---|---|

## Usage:

To express an action that was happening at a certain past time.

يستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر ليعبر عن حدث كان مستمرًا لفترة محددة في الماضي.

e.g. They were having dinner yesterday evening.





# General Activities

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You can visit the Temple of Karnak in .................................................. .
   a) Aswan b) Giza c) Luxor d) Cairo
2. The ancient Egyptian .................................. their kings and queens.
   a) waved b) killed c) buried d) visited
3. Many tourist visit Luxor from a ............................ on the Nile River.
   a) cruise b) plane c) taxi d) train
4. The ancient Egyptians carved the Sphinx from one piece of ..........
   a) wood b) stone c) glass d) gold

## 2 Listen and complete.

1. One of the oldest stone monuments in Egypt is in .......................... .
2. The Step Pyramid belongs to King .................................................. .
3. Alexandria used to be the ...................................................... of Egypt.
4. Qaitbay Citadel is in ...................................................................... .

## 3 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

Library - interesting - Alexandria - doing

Omar : Where were you yesterday, Nabil?

Nabil : I was in 1)...................................................................... .

Omar : What were you 2)............................................ there?

Nabil : I was visiting Alexandria 3)....................................... .

Omar : Was your visit 4)................................................................?

Nabil : Yes, it was.

## 4 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

seasons - civilization - fertile - flood

Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's heritage. The Nile used to 1)........... every year making the soil more 2)...................... This is why ancient Egyptians could farm the land and it led to a growth in 3)..................... There were three 4)............................... of farming in ancient Egypt which were all connected to the Nile.

## 5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

The ancient Egyptians were able to farm the land because of the River Nile. Every year the Nile flooded during the flooding season. The Egyptians couldn't farm the land because the fields were full of water. The flooding season lasted from June to September. After the flood water went away, the soil was fertile and good for farming.

The growing season lasted from October to February. During this time, farmers planted their crops. They dug canals to carry water from the river to the fields. During the harvesting season, farmers cut and stored their crops. It lasted from March to May.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The Nile flooded during the .................................................. season.
   a) harvesting b) flooding c) growing d) planting
2. The flooding season lasted four .................................................... .
   a) 3 months b) 4 months c) 5 months d) 2 months



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. When did the farmers plant their crops?

..........................................................................................

4. How long is the harvesting season?

..........................................................................................

## 6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. Vocabulary

1. A country's ............... comes from its history and traditions.
   a) sport b) heritage c) pyramid d) irrigation
2. Heritage includes arts, buildings, music and dancing from the ......
   a) past b) present c) future d) certain time
3. ........... and monuments are an important part of Egyptian heritage.
   a) Temples b) Libraries c) Hospitals d) Schools
4. People in ancient Egypt ............... agriculture and calendars.
   a) broke b) grew c) developed d) ate
5. The ancient Egyptians were an advanced ............................ .
   a) civilization b) site c) season d) location
6. Archaeologists explore historical ........ to learn about the past.
   a) music b) sites c) plants d) food
7. A country's history and traditions are part of its ..................... .
   a) crops b) seasons c) identity d) economy
8. A ........................... shows us the twelve months of the year.
   a) field b) calendar c) map d) site
9. In the past the Nile ..................... during the flooding season.
   a) rained b) snowed c) flooded d) blew
10. The soil was fertile and good for farming in the .......... season.
    a) flooding b) growing c) harvesting d) snowing
11. During the ................ season, farmers cut and stored crops.
    a) harvesting b) flooding c) growing d) raining





12. The ancient Egyptians built the Step Pyramid for .......... Djoser.
    a) Prince b) Queen c) King d) Princess
13. Archaeologists think that the Sphinx was built to .......... the pyramids.
    a) destroy b) break c) protect d) cut
14. Many tourists travel down the Nile on a ..........................................
    a) bike b) cruise c) train d) car
15. You can show artifacts in a/an ..........................................
    a) drawer b) exhibition c) bedroom d) kitchen

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. Grammar

1. Sara and her parents .............. at the Egyptian artifacts in the museum.
   a) looks b) has looked c) were looking d) looking
2. Sara ....... some information to her parents from the museum brochure.
   a) have read b) was reading c) reading d) were reading
3. Archaeologists ............................ a senet game in Egyptian tombs.
   a) finds b) was finding c) found d) finding
4. Sara ................................... on her phone and started to look online.
   a) were turning b) turned c) will turn d) turning
5. My mum ................................................ on a chair yesterday morning.
   a) was sitting b) sits c) will sit d) sitting
6. The ancient Egyptians .............................. their kings and queens.
   a) will bury b) bury c) buried d) buries
7. Did the ancient Egyptians ...................... the Sphinx from a stone?
   a) carved b) carve c) were carving d) carves
8. The ancient Egyptians .................................................. pots from clay.
   a) make b) will make c) made d) makes
9. What .......................................................................... at 5 pm yesterday?
   a) you were doing b) do you do c) were you doing d) have you done


Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

10. Where ........................................ you born?

a) was b) are c) were d) is

11. They ........................................ the senet game.

a) was playing b) were playing c) plays d) playing

12. The archaeologist .................... when she found an old box.

a) were digging b) was digging c) will dig d) digs

13. Sami .................... cookies when his dad came home.

a) made b) were making c) was making d) make

14. Mona and Salma ........................................ a museum.

a) visits b) were visiting c) was visiting d) visiting

15. When I .................... Fares, I was studying in the library.

a) saw b) see c) was seeing d) sees

## 7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. did - find - What - you - artifacts - ?

........................................................................

2. has - design - museum - new - to - Adam - a - .

........................................................................

3. a bar chart - show - Mazen - to - used - information - his - .

........................................................................

4. a country's - a - heritage - of - Agriculture - part - is - .

........................................................................

5. watching - home - came - I - while - was - TV - Ali - .

........................................................................

## 8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

**A historical site**

**Guiding words:**

**Sphinx - Pyramids - culture - Egypt - heritage**

........................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................

## 9 Correct the underlined word(s).

1. Archaeologists <u>find</u> tombs last year. (..............................)
2. What was he <u>do</u> yesterday evening? (..............................)
3. Ali <u>did</u> his homework when he saw a bird. (..............................)
4. Dina <u>were</u> visiting the museum. (..............................)
5. <u>Did</u> you happy yesterday? (..............................)
6. The children <u>are</u> playing a game at 7 pm yesterday. (..............................)
7. My friend <u>sits</u> under a tree last week. (..............................)
8. What <u>you were</u> doing at 6 pm yesterday? (..............................)
9. Ottah <u>take</u> out some counters from his bag yesterday. (..............................)
10. Ottah sat down with Akil and <u>show</u> him a long wooden box. (..............................)



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



# Unit (10) Connecting the world

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| cyber friends | أصدقاء عبْر الإنترنت | access | تسجيل الدخول |
| instant message | رسائل فورية | adventure | مغامرة |
| electronic device | جهاز إلكتروني | prepare | يعد/ يجهز |
| email | إيميل- بريد إلكتروني | type | يكتب /يطبع |
| presentation | عرض - تقديم | keyboard | لوحة المفاتيح |
| vlog | مدونة فيديو | publish | ينشر |
| website | موقع على الإنترنت | checklist | قائمة التدقيق |
| nasty comment | تعليقات كريهة / بغيضة | technology | تكنولوجيا |
| electric car | سيارة كهربائية | digital | رقمي |
| scrubber | مدخنة لتنقية الغازات والأبخرة | blog | مدونة |
| smog- free tower | برج تنقية الهواء | fossil fuels | وقود حفري |
| global community | مجتمع عالمي | smoke signals | إشارات الدخان |
| social media account | حساب على مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي | social media platform | منصة التواصل الاجتماعي |
| means of communication | وسائل الاتصال | | |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| talk about | يتحدث عن | instead of | بدلًا من | look at | ينظر إلى |
| share with | يتشارك مع | need to | يحتاج أن | ask for help | يطلب المساعدة |
| similar to | مشابه لـ | help with | يساعد في | use for | يستخدم لـ |
| belong to | يخص | hand to | يُسلم لـ | set up | يؤسس |
| make fun of | يسخر من | turn off | يغلق / يقفل | for fun | للمتعة |
| interested in | مهتم بـ | lots of | كثير من | contact with | يتصل بـ |

# Language

## Giving advice (should - shouldn't)

Subject + should + inf.

We use **"should + inf"** to say that something is a good idea.

*e.g.* You should choose a title for your story.

Subject + shouldn't + inf.

We use **"shouldn't + inf"** to say that something is a bad idea.

*e.g.* You shouldn't forget your homework.

# Conjunctions

| | |
|---|---|
| **and** | We use (and) to connect two similar ideas. |

- I like Arabic and English.

| | |
|---|---|
| **or** | We use (or) instead of and in negative sentences or to express choices. |

- I don't like meat or fish.
- I could write short stories or articles.

| | |
|---|---|
| **but** | We use (but) to connect two different or contrasting ideas. |

- He is fast, but he doesn't win the race.

## Punctuations

- We put a period (.) at the end of a sentence.
- We put commas (,) after "First, - Dear Editor,"
- We put a question mark (?) at the end of a question.





# General Activities

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Nahla has a/an .................................................. social media account.
   a) ancient  b) old  c) new  d) young
2. Nahla posts photos of ................................ ,trees, birds and animals.
   a) books  b) flowers  c) cats  d) tables
3. Her friends always write ................................................................ comments.
   a) nice  b) nasty  c) bad  d) awful
4. Nahla posted her first video on her account ..................................
   a) today  b) tomorrow  c) yesterday  d) last year

## 2 Listen and complete.

1. Adam's mom is a ............................................ at the local newspaper.
2. The story boy goes on a great adventure around ............................ .
3. Adam's mom got home at ........................................................ o'clock.
4. Adam was working on a new ....................................................... .

## 3 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

solve - causes - pollution - factories

Sara : Do you learn about 1)..........................................................................?

Toka : Yes, of course.

Sara : What 2)............................................................................ pollution?

Toka : Airplanes, traffic and 3)..........................................................................

Sara : How do we 4).................................................................. this problem?

Toka : We can plant more trees.





## 4 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

devices - smoke - technology - messages

There are different ways to send 1)................ from one place to another place. In the past people used 2)................ signals or birds to send messages to each other. Today we use 3)................ like electronic 4)................ to help us send messages.

## 5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Air pollution is one of the biggest problems for people's health. Air pollution is created by airplanes, traffic, factories, and power plants. When we burn fossil fuels and use strong cleaning chemicals to clean our houses, it also creates pollution. However, there are some new and exciting ways to solve the problem of air pollution. We have learned about scrubbers and smog-free towers that help to clean gases and pollution produced by factories and industry. Another method which is becoming popular is called greening. Greening is growing a wall of plants on the side of a building.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. ................ pollution is created by airplanes, traffic, factories, and power plants.
   a) Air b) Water c) Land d) River
2. The general idea of the text is " ................ ".
   a) Plants b) Animals c) Transportation d) Air pollution

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. How can we solve the air pollution problem? ................
4. What does "greening" mean? ................

 Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



## 6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. Vocabulary

1. A .................. is a way to share information with other people by talking about it.
   a) vlog b) website c) presentation d) digital
2. A/An .................................................. is a digital form of a letter.
   a) blog b) vlog c) email d) website
3. Nahla has a new social media ..................................................
   a) account b) photos c) videos d) access
4. Air .............. is one of the biggest problems for people's health.
   a) location b) pollution c) resolution d) presentation
5. A .................................................. is similar to a blog.
   a) website b) vlog c) device d) web
6. People post videos they make instead .................. written texts.
   a) at b) by c) of d) in
7. Abdelrahman is a perfect typist. He can type without looking at the ..................................................
   a) mouse b) screen c) keyboard d) email
8. You should share your ideas .................................. others.
   a) by b) for c) with d) in
9. I also made some .................................................. online.
   a) cyberfriends b) doctors c) enemies d) vets
10. You shouldn't write ......................... comments on social media.
    a) good b) nasty c) kind d) happy
11. .................................................. is my favorite hobby.
    a) Pictures b) Photography c) Paints d) Photos
12. Some of my friends are also interested ...... writing after school.
    a) on b) at c) in d) about

13. The .................................... make air pollution worse.
a) fossil fuels b) rain c) sun d) moon

14. This is an .................................... story, I can't believe it.
a) credible b) incredible c) good d) bad

15. A .................................... is a home page on the World Wide Web.
a) blog b) vlog c) website d) email

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.** **Grammar**

1. You .................................... waste your time.
a) should b) shouldn't c) can d) must

2. You .................................... check your spelling while writing.
a) shouldn't b) can't c) should d) mustn't

3. You shouldn't .................................... any spelling or grammar mistakes.
a) has b) had c) having d) have

4. You shouldn't .................................... the punctuation while writing.
a) forget b) forgets c) forgot d) forgotten

5. You .................................... work too long without a break.
a) should b) shouldn't c) can d) must

6. You .................................... choose a title for your story.
a) can't b) shouldn't c) should d) mustn't

7. You should .................................... your homework before dinner.
a) do b) does c) doing d) did

8. I can write short stories .................................... articles.
a) but b) as c) or d) so

9. There aren't any after-school clubs .................................... our school.
a) at b) on c) in d) or

10. There's a newspaper, .................................... there isn't a magazine.
a) and b) but c) or d) because


Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

10 You shouldn't write (good - nasty - kind - happy) comments on social media.
11 (Pictures - Photography - Photos - Paints) is my favorite hobby.
12 Some of my friends are also interested (on - in - at - about) writing after school.
13 The (fossil fuels - rain - sun - moon) make air pollution worse.
14 This is an (credible - incredible - good - bad) story, I can't believe it.
15 A (blog - vlog - website - email) is a home page on the World Wide Web.

## Choose the correct word (Grammar).

1 You (should - shouldn't - can - must) write your story by hand.
2 You (shouldn't - can't - should - mustn't) check your spelling while writing.
3 You shouldn't (has - had - having - have) any spelling or grammar mistakes.
4 You shouldn't (forget - forgets - forgot - forgotten) the punctuation while writing.
5 You (should - shouldn't - can - must) work too long without a break.
6 You (can't - shouldn't - should - mustn't) choose a title for your story.
7 You should (do - does - doing - did) your homework before dinner.
8 I'll could write short stories (but - as - or - so) articles.
9 There aren't any after-school clubs (at - on - in - or) our school.
10 There's a newspaper, (and - but - or - because) there isn't a magazine.
11 I'll go to a photography club (but - as - or - so) a sports club.
12 You (should - shouldn't - can't - mustn't) go to bed early. You have an exam tomorrow.





Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

13 You shouldn't (is - being - are - be) afraid to ask your teacher for help.

14 You should (wears - wearing - wear - wore) a coat if the weather is cold.

15 You (should - shouldn't - can - must) write nasty comments online.

## 6 Read and match.

1 A blog is a special
2 What do you need
3 You should check
4 This is an

a your work while writing.
b incredible story.
c kind of website.
d to send an email?

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( ) 4- ( )

## 7 Correct the underlined word.

1 I go to school at the morning. (..........)
2 Ali was on school yesterday. (..........)
3 I don't like science and math. (..........)
4 I like milk, or I don't like coffee. (..........)
5 I'd like a pen but a pencil. (..........)
6 You should be afraid to ask for help. (..........)
7 You shouldn't check your work while writing. (..........)
8 You should eat in class. (..........)
9 You shouldn't listen carefully to your teachers. (..........)
10 I do my homework on the evening. (..........)

## 8 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets.

1 Study hard to succeed. (should)

..................................................

2 Don't be afraid to ask for help. (shouldn't)

..................................................

3 Don't eat in class. (shouldn't)

..................................................

4 Get up early. (should)

..................................................

5 Help the poor. (should)

..................................................

Unit (11)

# ON THE ROAD!

## Vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| garbage | قمامة | destination | وجهة الوصول | airplane | طائرة |
| streetcar | ترام | volunteer | متطوع - يتطوع | mule | بغل |
| traffic jam | ازدحام مروري | transportation | النقل و المواصلات | cab | سيارة أجرة |
| wagon | عربة نقل | plan | خطة | canal | قناة |
| waterway | ممر مائي | on time | في الوقت المحدد | canoe | زورق |
| subway | مترو الأنفاق | steam train | قطار بخاري | rocket | صاروخ |
| recycle | يعيد تدوير | traffic lights | إشارات المرور | traffic | المرور |
| reuse | يعيد استخدام | bike path | مسار للدراجات | reduce | يقلل |
| roof | سقف - سطح | green spaces | مساحات خضراء | walking | المشي |
| residents | السكان | recycling bins | صناديق إعادة التدوير | trash | قمامة |
| ferry | عبّارة | water vapor | بخار الماء | trip | رحلة |
| highway | طريق سريع | | | | |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| go with | يذهب مع | learn a lot about | يتعلم كثيرًا عن | fly through | يطير عبر (خلال) |
| need to | يحتاج أن | along the river | بطول النهر | on foot | سيرًا على الأقدام |
| use for | يستخدم لـ | up and down | ذهابًا و إيابًا | on time | في الوقت المحدد |
| a lot of | كثير من | other types of | أنواع أخرى من | is located on | يقع في |
| run on | يدار بـ | much faster than | أسرع كثيرًا من | come from | يأتي من |
| bad for | ضار لـ | on my way to | في طريقي إلى | no more than | ليس أكثر من |
| transport...to... | ينقل... إلى... | move from...to.... | يتحرك من...إلى... | | |



Help your child revise unit (11). ساعد طفلك على أن يراجع الوحدة الحادية عشرة.




## Comparative Adjectives




adj. (الصفة) + er + than

The coast is greener than the desert.




more / less + adj. (الصفة) + than

Gold is more expensive than silver.

## Superlative Adjectives




the + adj. (الصفة) + est

e.g. The Nile is the longest river in the world.




the most / the least + adj. الصفة

e.g. This is the most interesting film.




- **un = not:** **e.g.** Kareema is unhappy.
- **dis = not:** **e.g.** I dislike playing tennis, but I like football.
- **re = again:** **e.g. You can** recycle old things.



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer.

1. Humans watched (ducks - birds - penguins - ostriches) and wanted to fly through skies.
2. We are even able to send people to the moon in (cars - trains - planes - rockets).
3. Fossil fuels are (good - better - bad - kind) for the environment.
4. (Teachers - Drivers - Doctors - Engineers) are designing greener airplanes.

## 2 Listen and complete.

1. The invention of the .................... engine changed transportation.
2. The first car that ran on .................... also appeared in the 1800s.
3. The first steam .................................................. was in Wales in 1800s.
4. The ............................ in London opened 1863.

## 3 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

major - transportation - skiff - highway

Seif : Can you tell me about ......... (1) ................ in ancient Egypt?

Safia : Yes, the most important ..................... (2) .................... was the River Nile.

Seif : Why did the Egyptians travel along the river?

Safia : Because all the .................... (3) ......................... cities were along the River Nile.

Seif : What kind of boat did they use?

Safia They used a small boat called a ................... (4) .................... .



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

## 3 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

snowmobile - bike - canoe - island

Ezz : Where do you live ?

Reham : On a small ........... (1) ........... in lake Michigan in the US.

Ezz : What do tourists like to do on the lake?

Reham : They like to take ..................... (2) ..................... trips.

Ezz : How do you go to school in summer?

Reham : I go to school by ..................... (3) .....................

Ezz : How do you travel to school in winter?

Reham : I love traveling to school by ................. (4) .....................

## 4 Choose the correct word (Vocabulary).

1. The train will reach its (destination - country - factory - city) in about an hour.
2. All the cars and trucks in the city cause a lot of (population - pollution - translation - celebration).
3. Dad likes walking so he always goes to work on (a train - foot - a bus - a car).
4. Anas is never on (seconds - minutes - time - hours).
5. Our car is in a traffic (gym - jam - bread - yogurt). We are moving very slowly.
6. You must stop at the traffic (candles - lamps - lights - balloons) when the light is red.
7. Put your plastic bottles in the recycling (baskets - bins - bags - pins).
8. (Green - Red - Yellow - Pink) spaces keep the air clean in our cities.
9. Over 1,000 (volunteers - pilots - residents - vets) live in my neighborhood.
10. We should (recycle - reduce - reuse - exercise) the traffic in our cities.

11 There is too much (garbage - scenery - green space - trees) in the street. It looks very messy.

12 Don't (reuse - reduce - replay - rewrite) this plastic bottle. It's got a hole in it.

13 We can (reduce - reuse - recycle - redo) plastic, paper and glass at the recycling center.

14 A lot of (volunteers - chairs - bins - bags) helped at the beach clean up.

15 In the past, farmers used to transport their goods in (airplanes - subway - wagons and trucks - rockets) .

## Choose the correct word (Grammar).

1 What is the (cheap - cheapest - cheaper - more cheap) form of renewable energy?

2 We need to create a (cleaner - cleanest - clean - cleaner than) urban environment for everyone.

3 Our cities should be (much green - greener - greenest - less green) with more trees and plants.

4 Benban Solar Park in Egypt is the (larger - large - largest - larger than) solar park in Africa.

5 I think the wind energy is the (good - better - best - well) form of renewable energy.

6 Solar energy is (more - most - least - little) ecological than fossil fuels.

7 The (bad - worse - worst - better) things we can do about climate change is to burn fuels.

8 Alexandria is (busy - busier - busiest - the busiest) than Tanta.

9 The Sahara is the (big - bigger - biggest - much bigger) desert in the world.



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

10 Tigers are (large - larger - largest - the largest) than cats.

11 To (reduce - reuse - recycles - redo) somethings is to make it less.

12 I like tennis but I (disconnect - dislike - disagree - accept) handball.

13 (Disconnect - Appear - Dislike - Disappear) the TV when you leave the room.

14 Sweets are (unhappy - unfriendly - unhealthy - healthy).

15 Menna lost her bag. She is (unhealthy - unhappy - unfriendly - unkind) .

## 5 Read and complete the sentences with words in the box:

rural - ferry - electric - transport

1 What kinds of goods do people .................................... by plane?

2 Farmers still use wagons and carts in .................................... areas.

3 There are .................................... buses in my town.

4 I can cross the Nile on a .................................... .

## 6 Read and complete the sentences with words in the box:

bigger - slowly - jam - streetcar

1 Residents travel around the city in a .................................... .

2 We always get into traffic .................................... .

3 Drive .................................... . Children are playing.

4 Elephants are .................................... than polar bears.

## 6 Read and match.

1. Ancient Egyptians used
2. Farmers still transport
3. Rockets can take
4. Airplanes are faster

a. their goods in wagons.
b. than trains.
c. boats for transportation.
d. people to the moon.

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( ) 4- ( )

## 7 Correct the underlined words:

1. Safia is crying. She is happy. (..................)
2. Anas is tall than Seif. (..................)
3. The car is fastest than a bike. (..................)
4. Sweets and fats are healthy. (..................)
5. Drive slow. Children are playing. (..................)
6. Be careless. There are animals on the road. (..................)
7. You mustn't wear your seat belt. (..................)
8. Solar energy is less ecological than fossil fuels. (..................)
9. A gold medal is worse than a silver medal. (..................)
10. Dad likes walking so he goes to work on a bus. (..................)

## 8 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets.

1. Anas is older than Seif. (younger)

..................................................................................................

2. Nobody is taller than Ali. (the tallest)

..................................................................................................

3. The desert is green. The coast is greener. (than)

..................................................................................................

4. No animal is bigger than the elephant. (biggest)

..................................................................................................

5. I don't like playing tennis. (dislike)

..................................................................................................



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

## 9 Read the following text and answer the questions.

In ancient Egypt the most important highway was the River Nile. The Egyptians traveled mostly along the river because all the major cities were along the River Nile. So boats and ships were the most important forms of transportation. Most Egyptians used a small boat called a skiff. They made this simple boat from papyrus and rope. People could travel short distances in these boats, or they could use it for fishing. They used oars to make the boats move. They made larger boats and ships from wood. These ships had a large sail to catch the wind and they used oars to move and control the direction.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The most important highway was the (lake - canal - River Nile - sea).
2. They made larger boats and ships from (glass - wood - metal - steel).
3. They used (oars - papyrus - seeds - plants) to make the boats move.

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why did the ships have a large sail?

..........................................................................................

5. What was the first small boat called?

..........................................................................................

## 10 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. the biggest - in - The Sahara - the world- is- desert- .

..........................................................................................

2. medal - better - is - A gold- a silver- than- medal- .

..........................................................................................

3. more ecological - fossil fuels - than - is- Solar energy- .

..........................................................................................

4. is - the world - Tutankhamun - famous - the most - in - pharaoh - .

..........................................................................................

5. polar bears - than - larger - Elephants - are - .

..........................................................................................



## 11 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"Transportation in ancient Egypt"

Guiding words:

highway - River Nile - boat - skiff - oars

.......................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................

## 12 Punctuate the following sentences.

- what did they make the larger ships from

.......................................................................................................

- we have good public transportation

.......................................................................................................

- dont continue driving

.......................................................................................................

- what did you learn

.......................................................................................................

- the first streetcar was in london

.......................................................................................................

- how do you get to school every day

.......................................................................................................



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

# Unit (12) A GLOBAL CHALLENGE

## Vocabulary Listen and repeat.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| geology | علم الجيولوجيا | global | عالمي | newspaper report | تقرير صحفي |
| treaty | معاهدة | news | أخبار | lentils | عدس |
| rocks | صخور | newspaper | جريدة | chickpeas | حمص |
| stones | أحجار | pact | ميثاق | wheat | قمح |
| erosion | تآكل التربة | agreement | إتفاقية | dish | طبق / أكلة |
| drought | جفاف | leader | قائد / زعيم | appetizer | فاتح الشهية |
| flood | فيضان | foundation | مؤسسة | ingredients | مكونات |
| glacier | نهر جليدي | youth | الشباب | dessert | الحلو (بعد الأكل) |
| landslide | إنزلاق التربة | headline | عنوان رئيسي | party | حزب |
| tsunami | تسونامي | lead-in | المقدمة | water shortage | نقص المياه |
| agriculture | الزراعة | caption | تعليق (على صورة) | climate change | تغير المناخ |
| conference | مؤتمر | nations | أمم | | |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| move from..to.. | ينتقل إلى | a piece of | قطعة من |
| result in | يتسبب في | agree to | يوافق أن |
| for a long time | لفترة طويلة | decide to | يقرر أن |
| in danger | في خطر | in fact | في الحقيقة |
| made of | مصنوع من | for example | على سبيل المثال |



# Language

## The Future Simple Tense

**Form:** Sub + will +inf.

*e.g.* The drought will cause a water shortage.

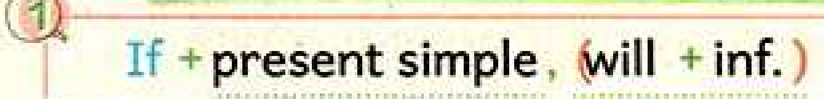
**Usage:** We use the future simple to talk about " future predictions"

**Keywords:**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| tomorrow غدا | soon قريبا | in the future في المستقبل |
| next... (week - summer - year) | | (الأسبوع - الصيف - العام) ..... القادم |
| in + (a future period) in (2030 - 2050) | | |

**Negative:** Sub + will + not (won't) + inf.

*e.g.* We will not burn fossil fuels.



## "If..." (First Conditional)

**Form**

1. If + present simple , (will + inf. )

e.g. If we use electric vehicles, we will help the environment.

2. Sub. + (will + inf. ) + if + present simple

e.g. We will help the environment if we use electric cars.

**Usage**

We use the first conditional to talk about somethings that is possible in the future.

e.g. If it rains, there will be a flood.




## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer.

1. The two friends were at the (cinema - park - club - pool).
2. They were (singing - playing - dancing - crying) football.
3. They heard the sound of a (donkey - cow - cat - bird).
4. The bird was very (hungry - unhappy - sad - small).

## 2 Listen and complete.

1. The High Dam in ............................ helps the people a lot.
2. It brings the irrigation to ..................... in Egypt and the Sudan.
3. It helps the ................ to grow crops which need lots of water.
4. Its reservoir is very ............................................ .

## 3 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

erosion - doing - reading - bout

Sama : What are you ..........(1).......................... ?

Rodyna : I'm ..........................(2)................ a book.

Sama : What is it ..................(3).......................... ?

Rodyna : It's about..................(4).......................... .

## 4 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

too - food - koshari - like

Ahmed : What's your favorite.......(1)........................................ ?

Ali : I like ..............................(2).......... . What about you?

Ahmed : I.........................................(3)........................ burger.

Ali : Me, .......................................(4)................................ .

## 4 Choose the correct word (Vocabulary).

1. When it doesn't rain for a long time, there is sometimes a (landslide - tsunami - drought - glacier).
2. Too much rain in one area can cause a (flood - landslide - water shortage - tsunami).
3. When a volcano explodes under the sea, this creates a huge wave called (drought - flood - landslide - tsunami)
4. A (glacier - tsunami - flood - drought) is a huge ice flow that moves very slowly across the land.
5. The (atmosphere - tsunami - flood - drought) is made of oxygen, carbon dioxide, and other gases.
6. When chemicals from air pollution mix with water and sunlight, it creates (acid rain - tsunami - flood - drought).
7. Climate change affects everyone living on our (plant - plan - planet - plate).
8. A (party - pact - treaty - conference) is a group of people who have the same goals.
9. A (treaty - conference - pact - party) is a formal meeting where people meet to talk about a topic.
10. A (pact - conference - treaty - party) is a formal written agreement between two or more countries.
11. A (pact - conference - treaty - party) is a formal agreement between two people or groups of people.
12. The (lead-in - headline - caption - body) is one or two sentences that summarize the report.
13. The (caption - headline - lead-in - body) is the title of the report.
14. The (headline - caption - body - lead-in) is a description of a picture.
15. Erosion is a (chemical - medical - natural - industrial) process.


Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

## Choose the correct word (Grammar).

1. It (rain - rains - raining - will rain) tomorrow.
2. We (don't - won't - aren't - haven't) go to the beach next Friday.
3. Will he (buy - buys - buying - bought) an electric car?
4. Will you go shopping this afternoon? Yes, I (do - will - have - am).
5. We will (go - goes - going - went) to the museum.
6. If it doesn't rain, we (have - are having - will have - has) a water shortage.
7. Polar bears (lose - lost - will lose - loses) their habitat if the polar ice caps continue to melt.
8. If we (recycle - recycles - recycled - will recycle) plastic and glass, we will produce less waste.
9. If we plant more trees, the air (is - was - are - will be) cleaner.
10. It (help - helping - helped - will help) the environment if we stop using plastic.
11. If the climate (get - gets - getting - will get) hotter, there will be more droughts.
12. The parties agreed to reduce air pollution (but - so - and - or) plastic waste.
13. We need to stop pollution now (and - but - so - or) it will be too late.
14. Traffic wasn't a problem 50 years ago, (and - but - so - or) now it's very serious.
15. The government decided to stop using fossil fuels (and - but - so - or) they built a wind farm.

10. It .................................... the environment if we stop using plastic.
    a) help b) helping c) helped d) will help
11. If the climate ........................ hotter, there will be more droughts.
    a) get b) gets c) getting d) will get
12. The parties agreed to reduce air pollution .......... plastic waste.
    a) but b) so c) and d) or
13. We need to stop pollution now ........................... it will be too late.
    a) and b) but c) so d) or
14. Traffic wasn't a problem 50 years ago, ............. now it's very serious.
    a) and b) but c) so d) or
15. The government decided to stop using fossil fuels, .......... they built a wind farm.
    a) and b) but c) so d) or

## 7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. change - everything - Climate - our - affects - planet - on - .

   ..............................................................................................................

2. had - meeting - leaders - important - World - a very - .

   ..............................................................................................................

3. favorite - What's - food - your - ?

   ..............................................................................................................

4. is - process - Erosion - a natural - .

   ..............................................................................................................

5. ingredients - What - you - do - need - ?

   ..............................................................................................................

## 8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

**Food**

**Guiding words:**

**(plants - animals - wheat - cheese)**

........................................................................................................

........................................................................................................

........................................................................................................

........................................................................................................

........................................................................................................

## 9 Correct the underlined word.

1. If we <u>uses</u> electric cars, our cities will be cleaner. (..............................)
2. He is poor, <u>and</u> he is happy. (..............................)
3. Ali was ill <u>or</u> he didn't go to school. (..............................)
4. I will <u>visits</u> the zoo. (..............................)
5. Sameh <u>doesn't</u> go to school tomorrow. (..............................)
6. You <u>will</u> save electricity if you don't turn off your computer at night. (..............................)
7. I got up early, <u>and</u> I went to school late. (..............................)
8. If I have enough money, I <u>buy</u> a car. (..............................)
9. If we <u>aren't</u> burn fossil fuels, the air will be cleaner.

(..............................)


Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

# Exam (1)

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Rahma likes ..................................................................................... .
   a) Arabic  b) English  c) French  d) Maths
2. Eman is in primary ..................................................................................... .
   a) three  b) six  c) five  d) four
3. Eman goes to school ..................................................................................... .
   a) by bus  b) by car  c) by taxi  d) on foot
4. Rahma's favourite game is ..................................................................................... .
   a) volleyball  b) football  c) tennis  d) basketball

## 2 Listen and complete.

1. Nothing can live without ..................................................................................... .
2. Most of the energy we use, still comes from .............................. fuels.
3. Fossil fuels are things like ..................................................................................... .
4. Coal, oil and gas are formed from the ..................................................................... .

## 3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

(learn - agriculture - sites - heritage)

Egypt built many amazing temples and monuments, this is an important part of our 1)...................... . They also developed agriculture and some of the first calendars. Archaeologists have learned lots of interesting things about the civilization of ancient Egypt by exploring historical 2)...................... at places like Abu Simbel, Luxor and Giza. I visit museums with my parents to 3)...................... about things people did in the past.

## 4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Last month was Ramadan. Abdu Allah made a special lantern to celebrate Ramadan. After Ramadan comes the 10th month of Shawwal. Shawwal is a celebratory month, with Eid Al-Fitr taking place from the first to the third day. Lots of food and gifts are exchanged during Shawwal. Many people fast the six days in Shawwal. Eid Al-Fitr is very important Islamic festival. We wear our best clothes for the celebration and we visit our family and friends. We give each other presents and we have a feast together.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. After Ramadan we celebrate ................................................ .
   a) Eid Al-Adha b) Eid- Al Fitr c) Sham El- Nessim d) Flooding
2. Eid Al- Fitr lasts for ................................................ days.
   a) three b) four c) five d) seven

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What did Abdu Allah do last Ramdan?

................................................................................................

4. How do Muslems celebrate Eid Al-fitr?

................................................................................................

## 5 The Reader

**A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).**

1. Amir and his friends couldn't make change. ( )
2. Waleed's dad would use plastic bags instead of biodegradable ones. ( )

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

3. Amir took the laundry up to the ................................................ .
   a) ground b) roof c) Nile d) garden
4. Grandma volunteered to ................................................ .
   a) swim b) go c) sleep d) help



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## 6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Today, we ........................................ our English exam.
   a) take b) took c) taking d) are taking
2. Nada always ........................................ to school early by bus.
   a) go b) goes c) went d) is going
3. ........................................ you happy yesterday? Yes, I was.
   a) Was b) Are c) Did d) Were
4. We ........................................ waste our time.
   a) shouldn't b) must c) should d) aren't

## 7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Egyptian - clay - Ancient - made - from - pottery vases - .
   ........................................................................................................
2. plant - How - Egypt - trees - did - many - ?
   ........................................................................................................

## 8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

**Your trip to Alex**

**Guiding words:**

(Last summer - Alex - sea - family - hotel - enjoyed)

........................................................................................................
........................................................................................................
........................................................................................................
........................................................................................................
........................................................................................................
........................................................................................................

# Exam (2)

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Nothing can live without ........................................ .
   a) energy b) flowers c) wood d) metal
2. Machines need energy to ........................................ .
   a) live b) work c) play d) eat
3. Fossil fuels are ........................................ source.
   a) renewable b) clean c) non-renewable d) inexpensive
4. When we burn fossil fuels, a lot of .................... is released into the atmosphere.
   a) oxygen b) water c) wind d) carbon dioxide

## 2 Listen and complete.

1. Egypt is a special ........................................ .
2. Every year, many .................... come to Egypt.
3. Abu Simbel is a ........................................ .
4. Egyptians are very .................... to visitors.

## 3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

families - chemicals - games - spring

Sham El-Nessim is an old Egyptian festival. It is the start of 1)..................... . Ancient Egyptians celebrated it. The weather at Sham El-Nessim is sunny. Most 2)..................... enjoy going to parks, gardens and beaches. They wear colourful clothes. Young children play 3)..................... like hide and seek. People color boiled eggs and eat salted fish. It is a wonderful day.



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



## 4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Adel is from Cairo. He began swimming lessons a few months ago. He likes swimming very much. He often went to the swimming pool in the club near his house. He went with his parents for two or three hours every day. His parents were very pleased with him because he was swimming well. They decided to take him to the sea in Alexandria to swim there. When Adel saw the sea, he looked at it for a long time. But he was not very happy. He turned to his parents and said, " I think the swimming pool is much safer than the sea!"

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Adel enjoys .................................................. in the swimming pool.
   a) swimming b) eating c) walking d) drawing
2. He went to the sea in .................................................. .
   a) Port Said b) Alexandria c) Matrouh d) Tanta

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. Why were Adel's parents pleased with him?

..................................................................................................

4. How was Adel when he looked at the sea?

..................................................................................................

## 5 The Reader

**A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).**

1. Amir was sad for the bird's problem. ( )
2. Amir's father can sew some shopping bags for him. ( )

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

3. There was a plastic bag around the seagull's .................................. .
   a) beak b) wing c) leg d) feather
4. We should clean the .................................................. to save the Nile.
   a) roofs b) riverbanks c) nests d) beaches





## 6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. What are you .................... now?
   a) do  b) does  c) doing  d) did
2. It always .................... in winter.
   a) raining  b) rains  c) rain  d) rained
3. Adam .................... cookies when his dad came home.
   a) was making  b) were making  c) makes  d) made
4. Grandma loves cooking and she cooks .................... .
   a) often  b) never  c) careful  d) well

## 7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. from - energy - Solar - the - sun - comes - .

....................................................................

2. the - How - is - season - harvesting - long - ?

....................................................................

## 8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

**Your favorite dish.**

**Guiding words:**

(delicious - mom - cook - eat )

....................................................................

....................................................................

....................................................................

....................................................................

....................................................................

....................................................................

# Exam (3)



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Many tourists visit .................................... from a Nile River cruise.
   a) London b) Madrid c) Luxor d) Rome
2. Tourists can see the ..... of Karnak and the Valley of the Kings.
   a) Sculpture b) Temple c) Hotel d) Monument
3. Ancient Egyptians ...................... their kings and queens here for thousands of years.
   a) made b) played c) buried d) cooked
4. You can see lots of paintings and ........................... in the temples.
   a) photos b) graves c) engravings d) pictures

## 2 Listen and complete.

1. Visitors often like to learn about Egyptian ...... before they come.
2. Egyptian people are famous for ....... visitors with food and drink.
3. It's a good idea to bring a ......... if you are invited to an Egyptian family.
4. The host usually doesn't ......... the present at the time when they get it.

## 3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

trees - caused - pollution - solutions

Air pollution is one of the most dangerous problems we face these days. It is 1)...................... by smoke from cars and factories. We must find 2).................... to this problem. We can plant more 3)................................ because they can absorb carbon dioxide and give us oxygen.





## 4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Mazen is a pupil in fourth year primary. He gets up at six o'clock. First he washes his face. Then he eats his breakfast. He goes to school at 7 o'clock. He goes to school by car. He finishes his school at one o'clock. He arrives home at 2 o'clock. He does his homework. He helps his mom. He watches a film. He goes to bed at 9 o'clock.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Mazen is in primary .................................................. .

a) five b) six c) four d) three

2. Mazen goes to school by .................................................. .

a) bus b) car c) train d) metro

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. When does Mazen get up?

..................................................................................................

4. What meal does he eat before school?

..................................................................................................



## 5 The Reader

**A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).**

1. Amir didn't help his Grandma.

2. Waleed's dad stopped using plastic bags in his store.

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

3. Grandma .................................................. to help Amir.

a) refused b) disagreed c) volunteered d) shouted

4. .................................................. texted back Amir.

a) Grandma b) Waleed c) Mariam d) Fishermen



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## 6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Today we ................................................ about pollution.
   a) talk  b) talks  c) are talking  d) talking
2. I love ................................................ Sham El-Nessim with my family.
   a) playing  b) reading  c) going  d) celebrating
3. Yesterday Akil ................................................ his goats walking away.
   a) see  b) saw  c) seeing  d) sees
4. A ................................................ is a special kind of website.
   a) phone  b) blog  c) device  d) presentation

## 7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. is - a fantastic - Egypt - visit - country - to - .

   ..............................................................................................

2. many - How - do - tourists - to - Luxor - travel - ?

   ..............................................................................................

## 8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

**Alexandria**

**Guiding elements:**

1. Where is Alexandria?
2. What places can you see there?
3. What is Alexandria famous for?
4. What can you make on the beaches?

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

# Exam (4)

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Adam gets up at .................................................. o'clock.
   a) four  b) five  c) six  d) three
2. Adam likes .................................................. and science.
   a) Arabic  b) English  c) math  d) art
3. All teachers love Adam because he is kind and .................................
   a) bad  b) impolite  c) polite  d) sad
4. He goes to bed ..................................................
   a) early  b) late  c) now  d) then

## 2 Listen and complete.

1. The problem with transportation that uses ........................ is that it burns fossil fuels.
2. People are developing .................................................. forms of transportation like electric cars.
3. There are even electric buses that use some ........................ energy from solar panels on their roofs.
4. ........................ are designing greener airplanes and ships, too.

## 3 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

train - Where - Luxor - Temple

Khaled : Hello, Ali. Where do you live?
Ali : I live in 1) ..................................................
Khaled : Luxor! It is a nice place. What can you see there?
Ali : I can see the 2) .................................................. of Karnak.
Khaled : How can I go there?
Ali : By 3) ..................................................



## Read the following text and answer the questions.

Nadia lives in Luxor with her family. Today she is celebrating Eid Al-Fitr with her family. She wears her best dress and new shoes. She usually goes to school on Thursdays, but today is a holiday. The whole family is together. Grandpa and Grandma sit in the living room. Nadia's brother Khaled gives his grandparents some special cakes. Eid Al-Fitr is Nadia's favorite festival!

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Nadia lives in .................................... with her family.

   a) Aswan  b) Luxor  c) Hurghada  d) Cairo

2. .................................... is Nadia's favorite festival.

   a) Ramadan  b) Eid Al-Fitr  c) Sham El-Nessim  d) Eid Al-Adha

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What does Khaled give his grandparents?

   ....................................................................................

4. What does Nadia wear?

   ....................................................................................



## The Reader

**A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).**

1. Anissa's dad works at the market. ( )
2. Amir lived in a village. ( )

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

3. Amir sent the picture of the .................... to his friends.

   a) grandma  b) seagull  c) bottle  d) bag

4. The fishermen could help take the .................... out of the river.

   a) seagull  b) plastic  c) nets  d) pictures

## 6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. There are lots of trees, plants and flowers in ............... environment.
   a) polar  b) desert  c) mountain  d) rainforest
2. What are they ............................................... now?
   a) wear  b) wears  c) wearing  d) wore
3. There are a lot of ........................................ in the museum.
   a) cats  b) artifacts  c) bags  d) doors
4. You ................................................ look directly at the sun.
   a) should  b) shouldn't  c) can  d) may

## 7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. a machine - is - A turbine - that - makes - energy - .

...........................................................................................

2. statue - What - is - made - this - of - ?

...........................................................................................

## 8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

**Helping the environment**

**Guiding words:**

(trees - cleaner - carbon - oxygen - important - happier )

...........................................................................................

...........................................................................................

...........................................................................................

...........................................................................................

...........................................................................................

...........................................................................................



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

# Exam (5)

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. When heavy rain moves soil, it creates ................................................ .

a) version b) occasion c) erosion d) pollution

2. During a ................................................................ there isn't enough rain.

a) tsunami b) drought c) landslide d) flood

3. ................................ can't grow food or feed their animals during drought.

a) Doctors b) Teachers c) Mechanics d) Farmers

4. During a drought rivers and lakes become ................................................ .

a) wet b) dry c) hot d) cold

## 2 Listen and complete.

1. One of the oldest stone monuments in Egypt is in ................................ .
2. The ancient Egyptians built the Step Pyramid for King ........................ in about 2630 BCE.
3. The Great Pyramid and the Sphinx are in ................................................ .
4. ................................ think that the Sphinx was built to protect the Pyramids.

## 3 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

reading - library - Where - read

Mazen : Hello, Hanin. Where are you going?
Hanin : I'm going to the 1) ................................................................ .
Mazen : Why are you going there?
Hanin : To 2) ................................................................ a book.
Mazen : Do you like 3) ................................................................ ?
Hanin : Yes, I do.



## 4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

In ancient Egypt, the most important highway was the River Nile. The Egyptians traveled mostly along the river because all the major cities were along the River Nile, so boats and ships were the most important form of transportation. Most Egyptians used a small boat called a skiff. They made this simple boat from papyrus and rope. People could travel short distances in these boats, or they could use it for fishing. They used oars to make the boats move. They made larger boats and ships from wood. These ships had a large sail to catch the wind and they used oars to move and control the direction.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a b c or d**

1. In ancient Egypt, the most important highway was the .............. .

a) car b) bus c) River Nile d) lake

2. They made larger ships and boats from .............................................. .

a) metal b) wood c) cotton d) linen

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. Why did they use oars? ..............................................................................

4. Why did the ships have large sails? ..................................................

## 5 The Reader

**A) Read and write T (True) or F (False)**

1. Waleed showed his father a picture of his friends. ( )

2. Grandma didn't like the seagull. ( )

**B) Choose the correct answer from a b c or d**

3. Dalia sent .............................................................. to all her cousins .

a) photos b) emails c) bags d) birds

4. Grandma sew some .............................................................................. bags.

a) plastic b) cotton c) metal d) wood



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## 6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Hana .............................................. a TV program now.
   a) watch b) watches c) watching d) is watching
2. To .............................................. is to spend time with others, being happy and having fun.
   a) operate b) decorate c) celebrate d) corporate
3. Akil and Ottah .............................................. happy yesterday.
   a) is b) are c) was d) were
4. A .............................................. is similar to a blog .
   a) presentation b) vlog c) website d) device

## 7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. is - headline - Your - good - very - .

..............................................................................................

2. food - What - can - eat - you - a feast - at - ?

..............................................................................................

## 8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

**Egypt**

**Guiding elements:**

1. What do you think of Egypt? 2. What places can you see there?
3. What are the Egyptians famous for?
4. What are the most famous Egyptian foods?

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................



# Exam (6)

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We need to make your page .................................................
   a) general b) for all c) private d) local
2. If you have nasty comments, you can turn ........ the comments.
   a) on b) by c) off d) at
3. I want to teach you some things about social ..............................
   a) media b) dish c) account d) treaty
4. If your page is private, people can't say .................. things about you.
   a) good b) glad c) bad d) bright

## 2 Listen and complete.

1. The invention of the ........................ engine changed transportation.
2. Ships with steam engines could travel much ............................ than using people or the wind to move boats.
3. The first steam train was in ........................................ in the 1800s.
4. The train made trips between ........ and urban areas faster and safer.

## 3 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

Aswan - saw - did - train

Sara : Where did you go last weekend?

Nora : I went to 1)..................................................................

Sara : How did you go?

Nora : By 2)..................................................................

Sara : What did you see?

Nora : I 3).................................................................. the High Dam.



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



## Read the following text and answer the questions.

Lots of people visit Egypt every year because of the amazing archaeological sites. Tourists want to see the large monuments, pyramids, and temples. It is incredible to think that ancient Egyptians were building these amazing structures over 4,000 years ago, when civilizations in other countries were much simpler. Archaeologists have found lots of artifacts such as tools, pottery, vases, and masks. These can tell us about how people lived in ancient Egypt.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The ancient Egyptians built amazing structures over ........ years ago.

   a) 4,000 b) 2,000 c) 3,000 d) 1,000

2. Archaeologists have found lots of ................................................ .

   a) facts b) artifacts c) jobs d) photos

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. Why do lots of people visit Egypt every year?

   ........................................................................................................

4. What do tourists want to see in Egypt?

   ........................................................................................................

## 5 The Reader

**A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).**

1. The friends together couldn't make a change. ( )
2. Amir helped his grandma cook dinner. ( )

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

3. The friends were ................................................ about the seagull.

   a) happy b) worried c) delighted d) pleased

4. Amir helped his ................................................ take out the clothes.

   a) sister b) Grandma c) cousin d) brother

## 6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We use a .................. to see what day, month or time of year it is.
   a) site b) temple c) calendar d) vase
2. To store is to .................................................. something.
   a) make b) take c) bake d) keep
3. Tarek .................................................. to a podcast now.
   a) listen b) is listening c) listens d) listened
4. You .................................. forget punctuation while writing.
   a) should b) shouldn't c) can d) must

## 7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. museum - visited - I - the - yesterday - .

...............................................................................................

2. need - Why - do - we - trees - more - ?

...............................................................................................

## 8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

**The Pyramids**

**Guiding words:**

(visited - bus - camels - Tourists - happy - enjoyed - nice )

...............................................................................................

...............................................................................................

...............................................................................................

...............................................................................................

...............................................................................................

...............................................................................................

# Exam (7)

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Long time ago, the only types of transportation for humans were .................................... , running and swimming.
   a) cars  b) buses  c) trains  d) walking
2. After that, humans began to use animals like........ and horses.
   a) cats  b) donkeys  c) monkeys  d) elephants
3. Canoes and boats are types of.............................. transportation.
   a) river  b) water  c) road  d) street
4. With carts.... could transport their goods to markets in cities easily.
   a) doctors  b) teachers  c) farmers  d) bakers

## 2 Listen and complete.

1. Sometimes when people think about Egypt, they think of the .................................................. and the Sphinx at Giza.
2. The Sphinx and Pyramids are .................................................. all over the world.
3. ................................ think that the ancient Egyptians built the Sphinx to protect the Pyramids.
4. They ................................ the Sphinx from one huge piece of stone.

## 3 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

Pyramids - where - visit - did

Ali : Welcome to Egypt, where are you from?
Tom : I am from England.
Ali : How1).................................................. you come here?
Tom : I came by plane.
Ali : What places will you2)................................................ .
Tom : The3).................................................. and the Citadel.

## 4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

People in ancient Egypt built many amazing temples and monuments, and this is an important part of our heritage. They also developed agriculture and some of the first calendars. Archaeologists have learned lots of interesting things about the civilization of ancient Egypt by exploring historical sites at places like Abu Simbel, Luxor, and Giza. I'm very interested in Egypt's heritage and I enjoy learning about it. I visit museums with my parents to learn about the things people did in the past. For example, did you know that the ancient Egyptians were one of the first civilizations to develop a system of writing? I'm very proud of my heritage.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. People in ancient Egypt built many amazing ........................ .

   a) factories   b) temples   c) houses   d) flats

2. I'm very interested in Egypt's ............... and I enjoy learning about it.

   a) heritage   b) trains   c) carriage   d) village

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. Where did archaeologists explore historical sites? ........................

4. Why does the writer visit museums with his parents? ....................

## 5 The Reader

**A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).**

1. Mariam is Dalia's cousin. ( )
2. The seagull has two babies. ( )

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

3. The plastic bag was around the seagull's ........................ .

   a) neck   b) hand   c) leg   d) eye

4. ........................ transported plastic bottles of water.

   a) Bags   b) Trucks   c) Planes   d) Trains



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## 6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We often ........................................ hawawshi with salad.
   a) eat b) eats c) ate d) eating
2. I don't have any free time today,.............. I'm free this weekend.
   a) so b) or c) and d) but
3. If Tarek buys an electric car, he .......................... the environment.
   a) helps b) helped c) will help d) is helping
4. ............................... is something we burn to make heat or power.
   a) Fuel b) Carbon c) Water d) Pollution

## 7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. of- Lots - people- Egypt- visit- year- every - .

..........................................................................................

2. of- What - is- moral- the- story - this - ?

..........................................................................................

## 8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

**A visit to the museum**

**Guiding words:**

(Sara- museum- mom- bus- artifacts- tourists- happy )

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

# Exam (8)

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. It's very .................................................... in the desert.
   a) cold b) snowy c) windy d) hot
2. Desert is a good place to get .................................... energy.
   a) solar b) tidal c) wind d) geothermal
3. Solar energy is a ................................ way to get electricity.
   a) dirty b) clean c) bad d) horrible
4. Solar energy is a good source of .................................. energy.
   a) non-renewable b) dirty c) renewable d) bad

## 2 Listen and complete.

1. Iceland is a ........................................................ country.
2. Iceland has more than ........................................ hot springs.
3. Iceland has 200 ........................................................ .
4. When water gets .......................................... ,it makes steam.

## 3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

homes - carbon dioxide - atmosphere - plant

The world needs lots of trees because they take carbon dioxide out of the 1)......................... and make our air cleaner. Sometimes people cut down trees and forests to build 2)..................... or make farms, but it's important to 3)................................ new trees.



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



## 4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

In Ramadan, we have a meal in the evening at sunset. There's always lots of delicious food! Last year my mom made. Kunafa, with sweet pastry. We had it with soft cheese. I was helping her in the kitchen when I dropped the sugar! We quickly cleaned up the mess and then finished cooking. There were lots of different things to eat, but kunafa was my favorite!

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. In Ramadan, we have a meal in the evening at .................................. .

a) sunrise b) noon c) sunset d) night

2. There's always delicious .................................................... in Ramadan.

a) colors b) food c) subjects d) books

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. Who were you helping in the kitchen?

..................................................................................................................

4. What was your favorite food?

..................................................................................................................

## 5 The Reader

**A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).**

1. Grandma could help Amir. ( )
2. Dalia couldn't send emails to her cousins. ( )

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

3. Amir took the laundry up to the .................................................... .

a) roof b) village c) kitchen d) bedroom

4. Amir was a .......................................................................................... boy.

a) bad b) ugly c) smart d) sad

## 6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Laila .................................. some cold water yesterday evening.
   a) is drinking b) was drinking c) drinks d) drank
2. Do you do the recycling .................................. the morning?
   a) on b) at c) and d) in
3. What are you .................................. now?
   a) does b) do c) doing d) did
4. If it doesn't .................................., the rivers won't have any water.
   a) rains b) raining c) rain d) rained

## 7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. always - made - People - vases - clay - from - .

..................................................................................................

2. never - The sun - in - shines - the evening - .

..................................................................................................

## 8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

**Water pollution**

**Guiding words:**

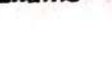
(important - plastic - garbage - bags - chemicals - keep - clean)

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة



# Listening Texts

## Unit (7)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

The world needs lots of trees because they take carbon dioxide out of the atmosphere, and make our air cleaner. Sometimes people cut down trees and forests to build homes or make farms, but it's important to plant new trees.

**2) Listen and complete.**

The urban environment is a metropolitan area which densely populated. Most people in the world live in this kind of environment. There are a lot of buildings, and there can be a lot of traffic, too.

## Unit (8)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Eid Al-Adha usually lasts for four days,and it is a very important Islamic festival. It celebrates the time when Ibrahim listened to God in a dream. At Eid Al-Adha, many people sacrifice a sheep and eat some of its meat in a traditional dish called fatta. We give out meat to our family and friends. During Eid Al-Adha, we go to the mosque for prayers and we are grateful for all the good things in our lives.

**2) Listen and complete.**

Near Aswan, you can see the Temples of Abu Simbel. Outside the temples, there are some very big statues of Ramses II and his wife Nefertari. Twice a year, people celebrate the Abu Simbel Sun Festival there, on February 22nd and October 22nd. On these days, light from the sun at sunrise shines all the way inside the main temple, to the rooms inside.

## Unit (9)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

You can visit the Temple of Karnak in Luxor. You can also visit the Valley of the Kings from the city. This is where the ancient Egyptians buried their kings and queens. Many tourists visit this city from a cruise on the Nile River.

The Great Pyramids and the Sphinx are in Giza. Archaeologists think that the Sphinx was built to protect the pyramids. The ancient Egyptians carved it from one piece of stone.

**2) Listen and complete.**

One of the oldest stone monuments in Egypt is in Saqqara. The ancient Egyptian built the Step Pyramid for King Djoser in about 2630 BCE. Alexandria used to be the capital of Egypt. There is an ancient Roman theatre there and the famous Qaitbay Citadel. Its ancient library was famous all over the world.

## Unit (10)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Nahla has a new social media account. Her older brother Faisal helped her to set up her account. She wants to be a wildlife photographer when she grows up. So,sheposts photos of flowers, trees, birds, and animals on her account. Nahla's account is private so only her friends and family can see it. Her friends like her photos and they always write nice comments about them. Nahla has started making a short video, too. She posted her first video on her account yesterday.

## 2) Listen and complete.

Adam got home from school, and sat down at his desk. He took his pencil, notebook, and eraser out of his backpack, and opened up his notebook. Adam loved to write. He was working on a new story about a boy who goes on a great adventure around Africa. Adam's mom is a writer at the local newspaper. She got home at 6 o'clock.

# Unit (11)

## 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

From the beginning of time, humans watched birds and wanted to fly through the skies.
Today, we fly from one continent to another in no more than one day. We are even able to send people to the moon in rockets. The problem with transportation that uses gasoline is that it burns fossil fuels, and these are bad for the environment. Engineers are designing greener airplanes and ships, too.

## 2) Listen and complete.

The invention of the steam engine changed transportation. The first steam train was in Wales in the 1800s. The train made trips between rural and urban areas faster and safer. The first car that ran on gasoline also appeared in the 1800s. People bought cars to make their lives easier. The subway in London opened in 1863.

# Unit (12)

## 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

My friend and I were in the park. We were running and playing football. Then, we had lunch. We heard a very unusual sound. It was a big colorful bird. It was very hungry.

## 2) Listen and complete.

The High Dam in Egypt helps the people a lot. Its reservoir is very big. It brings irrigation to people in Egypt and the Sudan. It helps the farmers to grow crops which need a lot of water.

# Exam (1)

## 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Hi! I'm Rahma. I'm in primary four. My sister Eman is in primary five. We go to school by bus. I like English. My favourite game is basketball.

## 2) Listen and complete.

Nothing can live without energy. Most of this energy, still comes from fossil fuels. Fossil fuels are things like coals, gas and oil.
Fossil fuels are formed from the remains of very old plants and animals that lived on earth along time ago.

# Exam (2)

## 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Nothing can live without energy. People, animals and plants need energy to live. Machines need energy to work. Most of the energy we use still comes from fossil fuels like coal, oil and gas. We call these non-renewable energy. When we burn them, a lot of carbon dioxide is released into the atmosphere.

## 2) Listen and complete.

Egypt is a special country. It is famous for its history. It has different environments and cultures. Every year, many visitors come to Egypt to enjoy its fine weather and learn more about Egyptian traditions.

In winter, they go to Aswan to enjoy warm weather and visit interesting places such as Abu Simple Temple. Egyptian are very friendly to visitors.





## Exam (3)

### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Many tourists visit Luxor from a Nile River cruise. They can see the Temple of Karnak and the Valley of the Kings. Ancient Egyptians buried their kings and queens here for thousands of years. You can see lots of paintings and engravings in the temples.

### 2) Listen and complete.

Visitors often like to learn about Egyptian traditions before they come. Egyptian people are famous for welcoming visitors with food and drink, and for inviting guests to their home. If you are invited to an Egyptian family house, it's a good idea to bring a present, for example chocolates or sweets. However, the host usually doesn't open the present at the time when they get it.

## Exam (4)

### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Adam is a clever pupil in primary four. He goes to school every day. He gets up at six o'clock. He likes English and science. He is kind and polite, so all his teachers love him. He does his homework regularly. He sometimes helps his mom make dinner. He goes to bed early at ten o'clock.

### 2) Listen and complete.

The problem with transportation that uses gasoline is that it burns fossil fuels, and these are bad for the environment. So today, people are developing cleaner forms of transportation like electric cars. There are even electric buses that use some solar energy from solar panels on their roofs. Engineers are designing greener airplanes and ships, too.

## Exam (5)

### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

When heavy rain or strong winds move soil from one place to another, it creates erosion. Human activities such as heavy agriculture can also create this. During a drought, there isn't enough rain, and rivers and lakes become dry. There isn't enough water and there is a water shortage. This affects the environment and farmers can't grow food or feed their animals.

### 2) Listen and complete.

One of the oldest stone monuments in Egypt is in Saqqara. The ancient Egyptian built the Step Pyramid for King Djoser in about 2630 BCE.The Great Pyramid and the Sphinx are in Giza. Archaeologists think that the Sphinx was built to protect the pyramids. The ancient Egyptians carved it from one piece of stone.

## Exam (6)

### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

I think there some things you need to learn about using social media,' she said. 'Sign into your account and go to the settings. First, we need to make your page private. That means only your friends can see your videos. Now let's turn off the nasty comments. That way people can't say bad things about you. If you want,you can turn them back on later.

### 2) Listen and complete.

The invention of the steam engine changed transportation. Ships with steam engines could travel much faster than using people or the wind to move boats. The first steam train was in Wales in the 1800s. The train made trips between rural and urban areas faster and safer.

## Exam (7)

### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Long time ago, the only types of transportation for humans were walking, running,and swimming. After that, humans began to use animals like mules, donkeys, horses. Then came small boats like canoes and other types of water transportations. Once they invented the wheel, people started to use small wagons and carts. Farmers in the country could transport their goods to markets in cities more easily.

### 2) Listen and complete.

Sometimes when people think about Egypt, they think of the Pyramids and the Sphinx at Giza. The Great Pyramids and the Sphinx are in Giza. They are famous all over the world.

Archaeologists think that the Sphinx was built to protect the Pyramids. The ancient Egyptians carved it from one piece of stone.

## Exam (8)

### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

It is very hot in the desert so it is a good place to get solar energy. This is a clean way to get electricity, and it is a good source of renewable energy.

### 2) Listen and complete.

Iceland is a cold country, but it has more than 600 hot springs and 200 volcanoes. When water gets hot, it makes steam. Engineers in Iceland can make holes down to the hot water underground.

# Book Answers

## Unit (7)

### Lesson (1)

#### Exercises

**1) Listen and complete.**

1- trees 2- animals
3- rains 4- temperature

**2) Read and complete the text with:**

1- rural 2- plants 3- sparsely 4- weather

**3) Read the passage then answer the questions.**

1- dry 2- ccstal
3- The Nile Delta - the Red Sea. 4- It's very dry.

**3) Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1- The rural environment is a quiet place to live.
2- There is always a beach in a coastal environment.
3- What kind of environment do you live in?

**4) Choose the correct word.**

1- desert 2- urban 3- polar
4- mountainous 5- rural

**5) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

**Rainforest environment**

There are lots of trees, plants and flowers in the rainforest. Lots of animals live in these places. For example, there are insects, birds, reptiles and mammals. It often rains and the temperature is hot.

### Lesson (2)

**1) Choose the correct word. P.18**

1- talking 2- are we 3- walking
4- is waiting 5- doing

**2) Look and write a sentence.**

- Hana is watching a TV programme.
- I am walking to school.
- Tarek is listening to a podcast.
- They are wearing gloves.

#### Exercises

**1) Read and complete the text with:**

1- picking 2- dirty 3- wearing 4- putting

**2) Choose the correct word.**

1- are finding 2- trying 3- am
4- are learning 5- driving 6- is watching
7- reading 8- wearing 9- Are you
10- putting 11- aren't
12- am traveling 13- reading 14- cleaning
15- discovering

**3) Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1- What are they discussing?
2- We are talking about pollution:
3- I am walking to school.
4- They are learning about climate change.
5- What is he doing to stop pollution?

**4) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

**Pollution**

There are many kinds of pollution such as air, water and land pollution. Old plastic or glass bottles can cause land and water pollution. Exhaust fumes of our cars and factories cause air pollution. We mus find solutions to get rid of pollution.

### Lesson (3)

**1) Complete the following dialog with:**

1- renewable 2- What
3- oil 4- remains

**2) Read the passage then answer the questions.**

1- kinds 2- wind
3- In hot deserts. 4- sun-water.

**3) Choose the correct word.**

1- non-renewable 2- sun 3- Tidal
4- store 5- turbines

**4) Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1- What are fossil fuels made from?
2- You can store electrical energy.
3- Renewable energy doesn't run out.
4- We can get renewable energy from natural resources.

**5) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

**Energy around us**

We have two kinds of energy: renewable and non-renewable energies. Renewable energy resources are clean and will never run out. Non-renewable energies are not clean and will run out like coal and gas.

### Lesson (4)

#### Exercises

**1) Listen and complete.**

1-cold 2-springs
3-hot 4-electricity

**2) Read and complete the text with:**

1-Hydroelectricity 2-electricity
3-waterwheels 4-High Dam

**3) Choose the correct word.**

1-title 2-Photos
3-facts and figures 4-steam 5-renewable
6-waterwheels 7-kilowatt 8-water
9-position 10-electricity

**4) Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1-Iceland is a cold country.
2-Iceland has more than 600 hot springs.
3-Why is the High Dam important?
4-How was hydroelectricity used in the past?
5-The High Dam was finished in1971.

**5) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

**Hydroelectricity**

People have used hydroelectricity for a long time. Hydroelectricity means using the energy from moving water to move machines or generate electricity. It is a clean renewable energy.

### Lessons (5&6)

#### Exercises

**1) Read and complete the text with:**

1-article 2-help 3-plant 4-take

**2) Choose the correct word.**

1-are 2-drop 3-to 4-absorb

**3) Choose the correct word.**

1-Why is it important to plant trees?
3-Forests help to protect the environment.

**4) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

**How to keep the environment**

We should keep our environment clean. We shouldn't drop garbage. We should use renewable energy sources to keep our air clean. We should protect our forests. We should turn off the light when we leave a room.

### Activities on Unit (7)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

1-more 2-less 3-plant 4-protect

**2) Listen and complete.**

1-dry 2-clever 3-hot 4-animals

**3) Read and complete the text with:**

1-absorb 2-take 3-billion 4-important

**4) Read the passage then answer the questions.**

1-non renewable 2-600
3-Holes down to the hot water underground.
4-They come from renewable sources.

**5) The Reader.**

1-False 2-True 3-river 4-laundry

**6) Choose the correct word.**

1-helping 2-is picking 3-are 4-wearing

**7) Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1-We are talking about pollution.
2-A turbine is a machine to make energy.

**8) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

**Polar environment**

There are two of these environments in the world: the Arctic and the Antarctic. It is cold and windy with a lot of ice. Some animals have found ways to live in these areas, but there aren't any trees or flower.

## Unit (8)

### Lesson (1)

#### Exercises

**1) Choose the correct word.**

1-spring 2-meat
3-Monday 4-sunrise
5-sheep 6-prayers 7-grateful 8-lantern
9-Nile 10-fairground

**2) Read and match.**

1-c 2-a 3-d 4-b

**3) Read and complete the text with:**
1- lasts 2- sacrifice 3- prayers 4- give

**4) Read the passage then answer the questions.**
1- Monday 2- fairgrounds
3- Sham El-Nessim. 4- Sunny and warm.

**5) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

**Your lantern**

Last year for Ramadan I made a special lantern. I used an empty glass jar and stuck bright pictures on the side. My brother gave me a small electric candle to put inside. I hung it on the balcony. It was pretty.

### Lesson (2)

**-) Choose the correct word.**
1- often 2- well 3- never
4- easily 5- always

#### Exercises

**1) Listen and circle correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**
1- grandma 2- kitchen 3- well 4- cook

**2) Listen and complete:**
1- delicious 2- beef 3- meat 4- salad

**3) Read and complete the text with:**
1- sayadeya 2- fish 3- olive

**4) Read and match.**
1- b 2- c 3- d 4- a

**5) Choose the correct word.**
1- often 2- share 3- always 4- fatta
5- carefully 6- well

**6) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

**Your favorite dish**

My favorite dish is fatta. I like eating it in Eid Al-Adha. Fatta has layers of rice and bread, with tomato sauce, vinegar, and meat. It takes a long time to digest, so we don't eat it very often.

### Lesson (3)

**1) Choose the correct word. P. 64**
1- am talking 2- wearing 3- help
4- Is 5- often eat

**2) Read and complete the text with the verbs in brackets.**
1- is wearing 2- wears 3- is 4- celebrates
5- is helping 6- eat 7- are making

#### Exercises

**1) Read and complete the dialog with:**
1- wearing 2- dress 3- is 4- birthday

**2) Read and complete the text with:**
1- cool 2- sleeves 3- leather 4- white

**3) Order the words to make correct sentences.**
1- What are you wearing now?
2- Some people prefer white clothes.
3- The galabeya has long sleeves.
4- Eid Al-Fitr is my favorite festival.

**4) Choose the correct word.**
1- is wearing 2- helps 3- is waiting
4- always gives 5- are celebrating
6- doesn't 7- do you 8- have
9- Are you waiting 10- rises

**5) Read the passage then answer the questions.**
1- Eid Al-Fitr 2- ful medames
3- A blue dress. 4- Vegetarian.

**6) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

**Eid Al-Fitr**

Eid Al-Fitr is a special festival. It comes at the end of Ramadan. I celebrate it with my family. We enjoy eating cookies. We have very good time.

### Lesson (4)

#### Exercises

**1) Listen and complete.**
1- Egypt 2- sights
3- hospitable 4- traditional

**2) Read and complete the text with:**
1- typical 2- generous
3- traditional 4- kahk

**3) Order the words to make correct sentences.**
1- Egypt is a fantastic country to visit.
2- There are four statues inside the temple.
3- Egyptians are very generous.

**4) Read the passage then answer the questions.**
1- Aswan 2- 4
3- On February 22nd and October 22nd.
4- Ramses, Ra, Amun and Ptah.

**5) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

**Egypt**

Egypt is a fantastic country to visit. You can see the famous pyramids. Egyptians are very generous people serve kahk in Eid Al-Fitr with sugar on top. They eat salted fish (fesikh) in Sham El-Nessim.

## Lessons (5&6)

### Exercises

**1) Choose the correct word.**

1-with 2-for 3-snake
4-for 5-setting

**2) Read and match.**

1-c 2-d 3-b 4-a

**3) Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1-I saw a giant snake in the waves.

2-I will send you many presents.

3-How long was the servant on the island.

**4) Read the passage then answer the questions.**

1-king 2-alone

3-The ship sank and the man swam to an island?

4-With the best sailors.

**5) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

**A tale of sailor**

I was a sailor. I went on a journey for the king with the best sailors in the country. But a storm came and our ship sank. I fell into the sea, and swam to an island. I was alone and frightened. Then, I looked for food, and the island had food, water, and everything i needed.

### Activities on Unit (8)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

1-Sham El-Nessim 2-eggs
3-Kahk 4-Fatta

**2) Listen and complete.**

1-king 2-sailors
3-successful 4-frightened

**3) Read and complete the text with:**

1-Egypt 2-pyramids
3-the Nile 4-The Red Sea

**4) Read the passage then answer the questions.**

1-four 2-mosque
3-Eid Al-Adha 4-A sheep

**5) The Reader.**

1-T 2-F 3-A seagull 4-clothes

**6) Choose the correct word.**

1-is reading 2-lives
3-am painting 4-play

**7) Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1-Ful medames never has any meat in it.

2-What are you wearing today?

**8) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

**Your favorite dish**

My favorite dish is ful Medames. I eat is every morning. I eat it with bread. It's made with lemon juice, onion and salt. It has no meat in it. Egyptians like it very much. It's very delicious.

## Unit (9)

### Lesson (1)

### Exercises

**1) Read and complete the dialog with:**

1-heritage 2-identity 3-history 4-past

**2) Choose the correct word.**

1-identity 2-temples 3-ancient
4-Archaeologists 5-site 6-calendar
7-civilization 8-monuments
9-flooding 10-harvesting 11-fertile
12-seasons 13-crops 14-growth

**3) Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1-All countries have their own heritage.

2-I visited the museum with my parents.

3-What do farmers grow in Egypt?

4-Are you interested in Egypt's heritage.

**4) Read and match.**

1-c 2-d 3-a 4-b

**5) Read the passage then answer the questions.**

1-flood 2-three
3-Agriculture.
4-The flooding, growing and harvesting seasons.

### Lesson (2)

**Exercises**

**1) Listen and choose the correct word.**

1- Great 2- throne 3- boat 4- Giza

**2) Read and complete the dialog with:**

1- did 2- museum 3- senet 4- old

**3) Read and complete the text with:**

1- goats 2- tree 3- tired 4- waved

**4) Choose the correct word.**

1- were playing 2- was digging
3- was studying 4- were visiting
5- was making 6- were taking
7- was 8- were 9- goats 10- winner
11- ordinary 12- artifacts 13- board

**5) Read and match.**

1- c 2- d 3- a 4- b

**6) Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1- Sara was reading some information.
2- The goats were walking away over the hill.
3- He was sitting under a tree.
4- What were the boys doing?

### Lesson (3)

**Exercises**

**1) Listen and choose the correct word.**

1- tombs 2- Builders 3- 2630 4- stone

**2) Read and complete the dialog with:**

1- Giza 2- tourists 3- Pyramids 4- carved

**3) Choose the correct word.**

1- monuments 2- pottery 3- clay
4- hold 5- perfume 6- protect 7- carved
8- sites 9- capital 10- cruise

**4) Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1- How do many tourists travel to Luxor?
2- The temple of Karnak is in Luxor.
3- Ancient Egyptians used lots of pottery.

**5) Read the passage then answer the questions.**

1- vases 2- perfume
3- To see the amazing archaeological, sites.
4- Tools, pottery, vases and masks.

**6) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

**Luxor**

Many tourists visit Luxor from a Nile River cruise. They can see the Temple of Karnak and Valley of the kings. Ancient Egyptians buried their kings and queens here for thousands of years. You can see lots of paintings and engravings in the temples. There are lots of other amazing things to see in Egypt. What would you like to visit?

### Lesson (4)

**Exercises**

**1) Read and complete the dialog with:**

1- chart 2- across 3- line 4- vertical

**2) Read and match.**

1- c 2- b 3- d 4- a

**3) Choose the correct word.**

1- bar 2- horizontal 3- y-axis
4- vertical

**4) Students Answer.**

**5) Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1- Let's get your paper and pens.
2- What do you have to do?

### Lessons (5&6)

**Exercises**

**1) Read and complete the dialog with:**

1- information 2- old
3- made 4- limestone

**2) Read and match.**

1- c 2- d 3- a 4- b

**3) Choose the correct word.**

1- old 2- made 3- long 4- believed
5- to 6- desert 7- map 8- for
9- from 10- for

**4) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

**Pharaoh Khufu's solar boat**

Khufu's solar boat is a wooden boat. It is about 4,600 years old. It is made of wood. It is 42 meters long. It is in Giza. Many people and tourists like to visit it.

### Activities on Unit (9)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

1- year 2- amazing

3-monuments 4-artifacts

**2) Listen and complete.**

1-Giza 2-famous 3-Sphinx 4-stone

**3) Read and complete the dialog with:**

1-were 2-Luxor
3-see 4-interesting

**4) Read the passage then answer the questions.**

1-Tourists 2-Nile

3-The Temple of Karnak and the valley of the kings.

4-In the temple.

**5) The Reader.**

1-T 2-F 3-tablet 4-sad

**6) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.**

1-archaeologists 2-engravings

3-growing 4-saw

**7) Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1-They used pottery vases to hold water.

2-We were visiting the museum.

3-Historians are interested in monuments.

**8) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

**A visit to Alexandria**

There are lots of things to see in this port city, including a Roman theatre, the old town, and Qaitbay Citadel. Alexandria used to be the capital of Egypt. It had the first Library of Alexandria, which is famous all over the world.

## Review (3)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

1-Ramadan 2-kunafa

3-kitchen 4-sugar

**2) Listen and complete.**

1-trees 2-air 3-forests 4-trees

**3) Read and complete the text with:**

1-cruise 2-Temple

3-buried 4-engravings

**4) Read the passage then answer the questions.**

1-Egypt 2-traditions

3-Welcoming visitors with food and drink.

4-The Pyramids, the old Luxor Temple and the Nile.

**5) The Reader.**

1-F 2-T 3-plastic 4-plastic

**6) Choose the correct word.**

1-visited 2-sink 3-were playing

4-cool

**7) Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1-Egypt is a fantastic country to visit.

2-A turbine is a machine to make energy.

3-People always made vases from clay.

**8) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

**Agriculture**

Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's heritage. The Nile used to flood every year, making the soil more fertile. This is why ancient Egyptians could farm the land and it led to a growth in civilization. There were three seasons of farming, flooding, growing and harveesting

## Unit (10)

### Lesson (1)

### Exercises

**1) Listen and complete.**

1-website 2-person 3-topics

**2) Read and complete the text with:**

1-website 2-topic 3-access

4-devices 5-laptops

**3) Choose the correct word.**

1-communication 2-signals 3-devices

4-email 5-account 6-platform

7-presentation 8-website 9-access

10-blog 11-vlog 12-pigeons

13-smartphone

**4) Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1-How can people access websites?

2-An email is a digital form of a letter.

3-What means of communication do you use?

**5) Read the passage then answer the questions.**

1-smoke 2-account

3-Means of communications.

4-They are different ways to send messages from one place to another.

**6) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

### Means of communication

Means of communication are different ways to send messages from one place to another. In the past people used smoke signals or birds to send messages to each other. Today we use technology like electronic devices to help send messages. An email is a digital form of letter. A blog is a special kind of website. A vlog is similar to a blog a site is a personal website.

## Lesson (2)

**1) Choose the correct word: P. 151**

1- should 2- choose 3- shouldn't
4- should 5- be 6- shouldn't

**2) Give your friend advice. Complete the sentences.**

2- should have a rest.
3- should ask your teacher for help.
4- shouldn't hide your writing.
5- should wear glasses.

### Exercises

**1) Read and complete the dialog with:**

1- feel 2- hungry 3- eat 4- should

**2) Choose the correct word.**

1- at 2- backpack 3- newspaper
4- with 5- keyboard 6- publish
7- for 8- shouldn't 9- should

**3) Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1- I made a checklist for you.
2- You shouldn't work too long without a break.
3- You should check your work.

**4) Read the passage then answer the questions.**

1- give 2- writer 3- Around Africa.
4- You should let more people read your story.

## Lesson (3)

### Exercises

**1) Read and complete the dialog with:**

1- social 2- for 3- bad
4- long 5- shouldn't

**2) Choose the correct word.**

1- nasty 2- cyberfriends
3- post 4- Photography
5- fun 6- for 7- Sign
8- private 9- Social 10- off

**3) Read the passage then answer the questions.**

1- after 2- bad
3- Photography. 4- He felt really sad.

**4) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

### Social media

Social media is very important for every one. These days. First you must have an account before using it. I made some cyberfriends online. You shouldn't write nasty comments on social media. If you have nasty comments sign into your account, go to the settings and turn it off.

## Lesson (4)

### Exercises

**1) Listen and complete.**

1- and 2- in 3- but
4- create

**2) Choose the correct word.**

1- create 2- improve 3- grade
4- in 5- in 6- and
7- or 8- at 9- in

**3) Read and correct the underlined words.**

1- I like football <u>and</u> handball.
2- He is poor, <u>but</u> he is happy.
3- I go to school <u>in</u> the morning.
4- I don't like meat <u>or</u> fish.

**4) Students answer**

**5) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

### Amira's school day

Amira gets up early every day. She goes to school by bus. She likes Maths and Science. She goes home at 2 o'clock with her friends. She does her homework before dinner.

She goes to bed at ten o'clock. Amira is a clever and polite girl. All her teachers love her.

## Lessons (5&6)

### Exercises

**1) Read and complete the dialog with:**

1- problem 2- Air pollution
3- causes 4- factories 5- solutions

**2) Choose the correct word.**

1- outdoor 2- fossil fuels 3- smog

4-eye 5-feet

**3) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

**Air pollution**

Air pollution is one of the biggest problems for people's health. It is created by air planes, traffic, factories and power plants. Smoke from these factories also cause pollution. We must work hard to find solutions to this big problem by planting more trees.

## Activities on Unit (10)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

1-tired 2-sister 3-watched 4-late

**2) Listen and complete.**

1-football 2-team 3-next 4-friends

**3) Read and complete the text with:**

1-website 2-topic 3-access 4-devices

**4) Read the passage then answer the questions.**

1-blog 2-one

3-From different electronic devices like, smartphones, tablets and laptops.

4-Means of communication.

**5) The Reader.**

1-T 2-T 3-house 4-worried

**6) Choose the correct word.**

1-website 2-shouldn't 3-nasty 4-should

**7) Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1-What do you need to send an email?

2-I have a different math test tomorrow.

**8) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

**Pros and cons of social media**

Social media has a lot of pros and cons. You can send messages if you have an account. You can chat your friends. As for cons social media wastes a lot of time. You shouldn't stay too long without having a break. Using social media affects your eyesight.

## Unit (11)

### Lesson (1)

### Exercises

**1) Read and complete the dialog with:**

1-traffic 2-jam 3-trip 4-always

**2) Choose the correct word.**

1-on 2-exciting 3-lights
4-belt 5-slowly 6-careful
7-destination 8-pollution 9-time
10-transportation

**4) Read the passage then answer the questions.**

1-near 2-jam 3-In a big city. 4-One hour.

**5) Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1-You must wear your seat belt.

2-Cities are exciting places to live.

3-Do you get to school on time?

**6) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

**Traffic**

I live in a big city. It's an exciting place. There is a lot of traffic in my neighbourhood. The trip to school takes an hour. I always get into a traffic jam. I am always late for school.

### Lesson (2)

**1) Choose the correct word. P. 189**

1-larger 2-more interesting
3-smaller 4-more 5-largest

**-) Choose the correct word. P. 190**

1-reuse 2-unhappy 3-dislike
4-rewrite 5-recycle
6-Disconnect 7-recycle

### Exercises

**1) Read and complete the dialog with:**

1-urban 2-spaces 3-recycle 4-paths

**2) Choose the correct word.**

1-reduce 2-recycling 3-green 4-volunteer
5-museum 6-longest 7-friendlier
8-youngest 9-than 10-more

**3) Read the passage then answer the questions.**

1-science museum 2-recycle

3-Creating a cleaner Urban environment.

4-For people to ride their bikes on.

**4) Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1-Cairo is busier than Damietta.

2-The Nile is the longest river in the world.

3-Cats are friendlier than tigers.

**5) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

**A cleaner urban environment**

To have a cleaner urban environment, we should have green spaces. They make people happier. We need to recycle every thing we can. We need bike paths for people to ride their bikes on. Residents should use recycling bins.

**Lesson (3)**

**Exercises**

**1) Listen and complete.**

1- transportation 2- ships
3- steam 4- faster

**2) Read and complete the dialog with:**

1- transportation 2- like
3- cheap 4- faster

**3) Choose the correct word.**

1- send 2- steam 3- Engineers
4- rural 5- solar 6- mules

**4) Read the passage then answer the questions.**

1- wheel 2- faster
3- Mules, donkeys and horses.
4- animals - ships - cars.

**5) Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1- The first steam train was in Wales.
2- People are developing new forms of transportation.
3- Farmers could transport their goods to markets.

**6) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

**Kinds of transportation**

A long time ago, the only types of transportation for humans were walking, running, and swimming. Then, people used to use animals like mules, donkeys and horses. Then, they used canoes on water. When the steam train was invented it made transportation easier, faster and safer. Then the subway came and became more popular.

**Lesson (4)**

**Exercises**

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

1- Nile River 2- new 3- park 4- important

**2) Choose the correct word.**

1- on 2- that 3- Personally
4- driverless 5- warm 6- better
7- generate 8- solar 9- warm air
10- louder

**3) Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1- The city uses green energy
2- The new buses produce water vapor
3- Parks are important for everyone.
4- What do the canals provide?

**4) Read the passage then answer the questions.**

1- think 2- bad
3- On the Nile River 4- On their roofs

**Lessons (5&6)**

**Exercises**

**1) Read and complete the dialog with:**

1- get 2- by 3- leave 4- subway

**2) Choose the correct word.**

1- metro 2- bikes 3- wet
4- on 5- ferry 6- fastest

**6) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

**How to get to school**

Every day I get up early. I wash my face and have breakfast. I leave for school. I take the subway. It is fast. It takes about an hour. It's safe and greener.

**Activities on Unit (11)**

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

1- an hour 2- into 3- green 4- always

**2) Listen and complete.**

1- goods 2- steam
3- subway 4- continents

**3) Read and complete the dialog with:**

1- located 2- coast 3- spaces 4- walks

**4) Read the passage then answer the questions.**

1- old 2- Nile
3- Because all the major cities were along the Nile.
4- They used oars

**5) The Reader.**

1- True 2- False 3- dad's 4- market

**6) Choose the correct word.**

1- cheapest 2- better 3- more 4- largest

**7) Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1- Which cities in Egypt have a subway?
2- They used oars to make the boats move.

**8)Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

**A plan for your ideal city**

My city is located on the Red Sea coast. There are many interesting places like cinemas, restaurants and clubs. We get electricity from solar panels on the roofs of our houses. For transportation we use green buses. We use them to protect the environment.

## Unit (12)

### Lesson (1)

#### Exercises

**1)Read and complete the dialog with:**

1-drought 2-rain 3-dry 4-farmers

**2)Read and complete the text with:**

1-dry 2-nature 3-water 4-shortage

**3)Choose the correct word.**

1-natural 2-rain 3-erode
4-agriculture 5-rise 6-shortage
7-limestone 8-down 9-tsunami
10-glacier

**4)Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1-Humans can cause erosion.
2-Burning fossil fuels causes climate change.
3-We don't have enough water.
4-The Sphinx is made of limestone.

**5)Read the passage then answer the questions.**

1-drought 2-dry
3-When people don't have all the water that they need.
4-Farmers can't grow food and nature is in danger.

**6)Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

**Erosion**

Erosion is a natural process. It happened when rock and soil is moved from one place to another. The waves and currents in the sea can erode beaches, and rivers can erode river banks. Heavy rains or winds can also cause the land to erode. Humans can cause erosion, too.

### Lesson (2)

**-)Choose the correct word. P. 228**

1-Will 2-will visit 3-won't

**-)Choose the correct word. P. 229**

1-buy 2-uses 3-If
4-will help 5-saves 6-will catch
7-will save 8-doesn't

#### Exercises

**1)Read and complete the dialog with:**

1-if 2-won't 3-will 4-electricity

**2)Choose the correct word.**

1-will help 2-won't 3-play
4-Will 5-will rise 6-tomorrow
7-rains 8-use 9-will save
10-use 11-will 12-help 13-go

**3)Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1-It will rain tomorrow.
2-Malak will visit the desert.
3-Will you recycle these old newspapers?
4-I will help the environment.

### Lesson (3)

**1)Choose the correct word. P.236**

1-and 2-or 3-and
4-but

**2)Fill in the spaces with**

1-or 2-and 3-but 4-so

#### Exercises

**1)Listen and circle the correct answer.**

1-December 2-Paris
3-reduce 4-greenhouse

**2)Choose the correct word.**

1-bad 2-and 3-but
4-caption 5-or
6-so 7-body 8-lead-in
9-but 10-reporter's name

**3)Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1-Climate change is a dangerous problem.
2-It's very important to recycle.
3-A pact is a formal agreement.
4-People must stop using fossil fuels.
5-What causes climate change?

**4)Read the passage then answer the questions.**

1-change 2-slow
3-40% of carbon dioxide. 4-In Glasgow.

**5) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

Climate change

Climate change affects everyone living on our planet, so we need to try to slow it by working together. Nations are now making plans to work on this problem. If we all help, we can slow climate change. We can recycle paper, plastic, and glass at home, but what can nations do?

**Lesson (4)**

**Exercises**

**1) Listen and complete.**

1- links 2- most
3- many ships 4- countries

**2) Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1- Deforestation is a global emergency.
2- Who wrote the newspaper report?
3- We must keep the air clean.
4- Why do we need more trees?

**3) Write a newspaper report about:**

Student's Answer

**Lessons (5&6)**

**Exercises**

**1) Read and complete the dialog with:**

1- koshari 2- ingredients
3- chickpeas 4- meal

**2) Choose the correct word.**

1- koshari 2- appetizer 3- dish
4- ingredients 5- dessert

**3) Read the passage then answer the questions.**

1- koshari 2- meat
3- A famous restaurant. 4- Because it is healthy.

**4) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

Your favorite meal

My favourite meal is koshari. I like it very much because it is a plant-based meal. The ingredients of koshari are rice, macaroni, lentils and chickpeas. My mothers cooks delicious koshari. I eat it at home with my family.

**Activities on Unit (12)**

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

1- Drought 2- food
3- dry 4- water shortage

**2) Listen and complete.**

1- house 2- panels
3- electric 4- environment

**3) Read and complete the text with:**

1- environment 2- plant
3- shade 4- be

**4) Read the passage then answer the questions.**

1- slow 2- recycled
3- Climate change.
4- By reducing green houses immediately.

**5) The Reader.**

1- T 2- F 3- babies 4- happy

**6) Choose the correct word.**

1- will have 2- and 3- gets 4- or

**7) Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1- We won't burn fossil fuels.
2- Electric cars will help the environment.

**8) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

How to help the environment

We have to help the environment. Fossil fuels like coal, gas and oil cause air pollution. Cars, buses, trains and other traffic increase carbon dioxide in the air. We can use electric cars to keep the environment clean. We should recycle plastic bags and bottles. Trees can reduce carbon dioxide in the air so we have to plant more trees.

# Final Revision Answers

## The Story

### Amir takes action

### Exercises (P. 9)

**1) Read and write T (True) or F (False):**

1-T 2-F 3-F 4-T
5-T 6-F 7-T

**2) Choose the correct answer.**

1-laundry 2-village 3-Nile
4-plastic 5-seagull 6-beautiful
7-leg 8-in trouble 9-respect
10-horrible

### Exercises (P. 13)

**1) Read and write T (True) or F (False):**

1-F 2-F 3-T 4-T
5-F 6-T 7-F 8-T

**2) Choose the correct answer.**

1-tablet 2-sad 3-friends
4-plan 5-cloth 6-store
7-cousins 8-fishermen

### Exercises (P. 17)

**1) Read and write T (True) or F (False):**

1-T 2-T 3-F 4-F
5-T 6-F

**2) Choose the correct answer.**

1-house 2-market 3-plastic
4-pictures 5-river 6-important
7-cousins 8-happy 9-nest 10-babies

## Final Revision

### Unit (7)

### Exercises

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

1-trees 2-carbon dioxide
3-homes 4-important

**2) Listen and complete.**

1-densely 2-Most 3-buildings 4-traffic

**3) Read and complete the dialog.**

1-doing 2-creating 3-keep 4-garbage

**2) Read and complete the text.**

1-released 2-pollution
3-resources 4-electricity

**5) Read the following text and answer questions.**

1-Iceland 2-Five
3-The Karahnjukar Hydroelectricity plant.
4-For an industrial metal plant.

**6) Choose the correct answer. (Vocabulary)**

1-mountainous 2-rainforest 3-trees
4-coastal 5-rainforest 6-urban
7-dry 8-Fuel 9-Emissions
10-pollution 11-recycle 12-gas
13-polar 14-Climate change
15-Renewable

**-) Choose the correct answer. (Grammar)**

1-riding 2-is walking 3-picking
4-are learning 5-Are you 6-watching
7-am writing 8-collecting
9-are helping 10-doing 11-going
12-reading 13-recycling 14-isn't
15-are planting 16-watching

**7) Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1-What kind of environment do you live in?
2-There are lots of trees in a rainforest.
3-Geothermal energy comes from natural resources.
4-Trees help to protect the environment.
5-Iceland is a cold country.
6-Why is it important to recycle?
7-What can we do to help the environment?

# Final Revision Answers

**8) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

It's important to keep the River clean. Water pollution affects the Nile badly. We shouldn't throw plastic bottles on the River. Garbage is also harmful to the river. It makes the water dirty. We shouldn't put chemicals in the river to keep it clean.

**9) Correct the underlined word.**

1- am walking 2- talking 3- is waiting
4- learning 5- is watching
6- are listening 7- reading 8- helping
9- are 10- go

## Unit (8)

### Exercises

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

1- four 2- sheep 3- meat 4- mosque

**2) Listen and complete.**

1- Aswan 2- statues 3- wife 4- sunrise

**3) Read and complete the dialog.**

1- going 2- Grandma 3- celebrate

**4) Read and complete the text.**

1- celebrating 2- spring
3- traditional 4- eggs

**5) Read the following text and answer questions.**

1- Giza 2- Egypt
3- Hatshepsut. 4- Sham El-Nessim.

**6) Choose the correct answer. (Vocabulary)**

1- Al-Adha 2- fairgrounds 3- prayers
4- sunrise 5- grateful 6- Hawawshi
7- fatta 8- linen 9- cool
10- dessert 11- lanterns 12- out
13- pilgrimage 14- digest 15- recipes

**-) Choose the correct answer. (Grammar)**

1- often 2- carefully 3- always
4- always 5- well
6- am making 7- eat
8- usually wear 9- is helping 10- works
11- wear 12- are celebrating
13- am painting 14- lives 15- quickly

**7) Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1- Egypt is a fantastic country to visit.
2- There are some very big statues.
3- What do you wear on special days?
4- Linen keeps you cool.
5- Eid Al-Adha is a very important Islamic festival.

**8) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

I went o the pyramids. I went with my family. I went by bus. They are in Giza. They are great. We took photos. We saw the sphinx. We enjoyed our time there. I enjoyed talking to tourists.

**9) Correct the underlined word.**

1- wears 2- Are 3- well
4- don't often 5- doing 6- never
7- lives 8- do
9- am helping 10- carefully

## Unit (9)

### Exercises

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

1- Luxor 2- buried 3- cruise 4- stone

**2) Listen and complete.**

1- Saqqara 2- Djoser
3- capital 4- Alexandria

**3) Read and complete the dialog.**

1- Alexandria 2- doing
3- library 4- interesting

**4) Read and complete the text.**

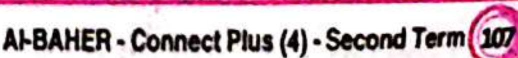
1- flood 2- fertile
3- civilization 4- seasons

**5) Read the following text and answer questions.**

1- flooding 2- 4 months
3- During the growing season.
4- Three months

**6) Choose the correct answer. (Vocabulary)**

1- heritage 2- past 3- Temples
4- developed 5- civilization 6- sites
7- identity 8- calendar 9- flooded
10- flooding 11- harvesting



12- King 13-protect 14-cruise
15-exhibition

**-) Choose the correct answer. (Grammar)**

1-were looking 2-was reading
3- found 4-turned
5-was sitting 6-buried 7-carve
8-made 9-were you doing
10-were 11-were playing
12-was digging 13-was making
14-were visiting 15-saw

**7) Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1-What artifacts did you find?
2-Adam has to design a new museum.
3-Mazen used a bar chart to show his information.
4-Agriculture is a part of a country heritage.
5-I came home while Ali was watching TV.

**8) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

The Sphinx is a very important historical site. It's at Giza. It's famous all over the world. Archaeologists think that the ancient Egyptians built it to protect the Pyramids. It's a part of Egypt's culture, it's a mark of Egypt's heritage.

**9) Correct the underlined word.**

1-found 2-doing 3-was
4-was 5-Were 6-were
7-sat 8-were you 9-took
10-showed

## Unit (10)

### Exercises

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

1-new 2-flowers 3-nice 4-yesterday

**2) Listen and complete.**

1-writer 2-Africa
3-six 4-story

**3) Read and complete the dialog.**

1-pollution 2-causes
3-factories 4-solve

**4) Read and complete the text.**

1-messages 2-smoke
3-technology 4-devices

**5) Read the following text and answer questions.**

1-Air 2-Air pollution
3-We have learned about scrubbers and smog-free towers that help to clean gases and pollution produced by factories and industry.
4-Greening is growing a wall of plants on the side of a building.

**6) Choose the correct answer. (Vocabulary)**

1-presentation 2-email 3-account
4- pollution 5-vlog 6-of
7-keyboard 8-with 9-cyberfriends
10-nasty 11-Photography 12-in
13-fossil fuels 14-incredible 15-website

**-) Choose the correct answer. (Grammar)**

1-shouldn't 2-should 3-have
4- forget 5-shouldn't 6-should
7-do 8-or 9-at
10- but 11-or 12-should
13-be 14-wear 15-shouldn't

**7) Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1-The smart phone is a form of technology.
2-You should check your spelling.
3-I'm going to making a new video.
4-Do you like writing stories?
5-What causes air pollution?

**8) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

A presentation and website are means of communications. A presentation is a way to share information with others. When you give a presentation, you share information about something or explain something by talking about it. A website is a home page on the World Wide Web. Websites are usually about one topic. Users can access websites from different electronic devices like smartphones, tables, and laptops.

**9) Correct the underlined word.**

1- in 2- at 3- or
4- but 5- or 6- shouldn't
7- should 8- shouldn't 9- should
10- in

## Unit (11)

### Exercises

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

1- birds 2- rockets
3- bad 4- Engineers

**2) Listen and complete.**

1- steam 2- train
3- gasoline 4- subway

**3) Read and complete the dialog.**

1- Transportation 2- highway
3- major 4- skiff

**4) Read and complete the text.**

1- bikes 2- canals
3- transportation 4- goods

**5) Read the following text and answer questions.**

1- River Nile 2- wood
3- To catch the wind. 4- It was called a skiff.

**6) Choose the correct answer. (Vocabulary)**

1- destination 2- pollution 3- foot
4- time 5- jam 6- lights
7- bins 8- Green 9- residents
10- reduce 11- garbage 12- reuse
13- recycle 14- volunteers
15- wagons and trucks

**-) Choose the correct answer. (Grammar)**

1- cheapest 2- cleaner 3- greener
4- largest 5- best 6- more
7- worst 8- busier 9- biggest
10- larger 11- reduce 12- dislike
13- Disconnect 14- unhealthy 15- unhappy

**7) Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1- The Sahara desert is the biggest in the world.
2- A gold medal is better than a silver.
3- Solar energy is more ecological than fossil fuels.
4- Tutankhamun is the most famous pharaoh in the world.
5- Elephants are larger than polar bears.

**8) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

In ancient Egypt the most important highway was the River Nile. The Egyptians traveled mostly along the river because all the major cities were along the River Nile. So boats and ships were the most important forms of transportation. Most Egyptians used a small boat called a skiff. They made this simple boat from papyrus and rope. People could travel short distances in these boats, or they could use it for fishing. They used oars to make the boats move.

**9) Correct the underlined word.**

1- unhappy 2- taller 3- faster
4- unhealthy 5- slowly 6- careful
7- must 8- more 9- better
10- foot

## Unit (12)

### Exercises

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

1- park 2- football
3- bird 4- hungry

**2) Listen and complete.**

1- Egypt 2- big
3- people 4- farmers

**3) Read and complete the dialog.**

1- doing 2- reading
3- about 4- erosion

**4) Read and complete the text.**

1- rivers 2- Farmers 3- danger 4- shortage

**5) Read the following text and answer questions.**

1- climate change 2- Coal
3- Our care. 4- Yes, it is.

**6) Choose the correct answer. (Vocabulary)**

1- drought 2- flood 3- tsunsmi
4- glacier 5- atmosphere
6- acid rain 7- planet 8- party
9- conference 10- treaty 11- pact

12-lead-in 13-headline 14-caption
15-natural

**-) Choose the correct answer. (Grammar)**

1-will rain 2-won't 3-buy
4-will 5-go 6-will have
7-will lose 8-recycle 9-will be
10-will help 11-gets 12-and
13-or 14-but 15-so

**7) Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1-Climate change affects everything on our planet.
2-World leaders had a very important meeting.
3-What is your favourite food?
4-Erosion is a natural process.
5-What ingredients do you need?

**8) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:**

Food is very important for all of us. We should eat healthy food. They are food from plants like wheat, oat and flour. There are a lot of food from animals like cheese and yougut.

**9) Correct the underlined word.**

1-use 2-but 3-so
4-visit 5-won't 6-won't
7-but 8-will buy 9-don't

**Exam (1)**

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

1-English 2-five
3-by bus 4-basketball

**2) Listen and complete.**

1-energy 2-fossil
3-coals, gas and oil
4-remains of very old plants and animals

**3) Read and complete the text with:**

1-heritage 2-sites 3-learn

**4) Read the following text and answer questions.**

1-Eid Al-fitr 2-three
3-He made a special lantern to celebrate Ramadan.
4-They wear best clothes for the celebration, visit there families and friends, gave each other presents.

**5) The Reader:**

1-False 2-False
3-roof 4-help

**6) Choose the correct answer.**

1-are taking 2-goes
3-Were 4-shouldn't

**7) Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1-Anciant Egyptian made pottery vases from clay.
2-How many trees did Egypt plant?

**8) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

Last summer I went to Alex. I went with my family. We stayed in a hotel. We went to the sea. We enjoyed our time there.

**Exam (2)**

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

1-energy 2-work
3-non-renewable 4-carbon dioxide

**2) Listen and complete.**

1-country 2-visitors
3-temple 4-friendly

**3) Read and complete the text with:**

1-spring 2-families 3-games

**4) Read the following text and answer questions.**

1-swimming 2-Alexandria
3-Because he was swimming well.
4-He was not very happy.

**5) The Reader:**

1-True 2-False
3-leg 4-riverbanks

**6) Choose the correct answer.**

1-doing 2-rains 3-was making 4- -well

**7) Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1-Solar energy comes from the sun.
2-How long is the harvesting season ?

**8) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

Fatta is my favorite dish. It has layers of rice and bread with tomato sauce, vinegars and meat. My mom cook it. We eat it together. It takes along time to digest, So we don't eat very often.

**Exam (3)**

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

1-Luxor 2-temple

3- buried 4- engravings

2) Listen and complete.

1- traditions 2- welcoming

3- present 4- open

3) Read and complete the text with:

1- caused 2- solutions 3- trees

4) Read the following text and answer questions.

1- four 2- car

3- At six o'clock. 4- Breakfast.

5) The Reader:

1- False 2- True

3- volunteered 4- Waleed

6) Choose the correct answer.

1- are talking 2- celebrating 3- saw

4- blog

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- Egypt is a fantastic country to visit.

2- How do many tourists travel to Luxor?

8) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

Alexandria is in the north of Egypt. I can visit Alexandria library, Qaitbay citadel and Montaza palace. Alexandria is famous for. Its exciting beaches and fine weather especially in summer. On the beaches, I can make sandcastles, enjoy my time, play and run. Really, Alexandria is an exciting place to live.

## Exam (4)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

1- six 2- English 3- polite 4- early

2) Listen and complete.

1- gasoline 2- cleaner 3- solar 4- Engineers

3) Read and complete the dialog.

1- Luxor 2- temple 3- train

4) Read the following text and answer questions.

1- Luxor 2- Eid Al-Fitr

3- Some special cakes.

4- Her best dress and shoes.

5) The Reader:

1- True 2- True 3- seagull 4- plastic

6) Choose the correct answer.

1- rainforest 2- wearing 3- artifacts

4- shouldn't

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- A turbine is a machine that makes energy.

2- What is this statue made of?

8) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

We should all hep the environment. We can plant more trees to make it a cleaner place to live. Plants give us oxygen and take out carbon dioxide. It's very important to help the environment and clean it. We will be happier if we keep the environment clean.

## Exam (5)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

1- erosion 2- drought

3- Farmers 4- dry

2) Listen and complete.

1- Saqqara 2- Djoser

3- Giza 4- Archaeologists

3) Read and complete the dialog.

1- library 2- read 3- reading

4) Read the following text and answer questions.

1- River Nile 2- wood

3- To move and control the direction.

4- To catch the wind.

5) The Reader:

1- False 2- False 3- emails 4- cotton

6) Choose the correct answer.

1- is watching 2- celebrate 3- were

4- vlog

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- Your headline is very good.

2- What food can you eat at a feast?

8) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

Egypt is a fantastic country to visit. There are many places to see in Egypt such as the Pyramids of Giza, the old Luxor Temple, the Red Sea and the River Nile. Egyptians are famous for welcoming visitors with food and drink and for inviting guests. Koshari and Fattah are the most Egyptian foods.

## Exam (6)

**1)Listen and circle the correct answer.**

1-private 2-off 3-media 4-bad

**2)Listen and complete.**

1-steam 2-faster
3-Wales 4-rural

**3)Read and complete the dialog.**

1-Aswan 2-train 3-saw

**4)Read the following text and answer questions.**

1-4000 2-artifacts

3-Because of the amazing archaeological sites.

4-The large monuments - pyramids and temples.

**5)The Reader:**

1-False 2-False 3-worried 4-Grandma

**6)Choose the correct answer.**

1-calendar 2-keep 3-is listening
4- shouldn't

**7)Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1-I visited the museum yesterday.

2-Why do we need more trees?

**8)Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

Last week, we visited the pyramids. We went by bus. We rode camels. We met a lot of tourists. We talked to them. We were very happy. We enjoyed our time there. We took a lot of pictures. Really, we had a nice time there.

## Exam (7)

**1)Listen and circle the correct answer.**

1-walking 2-donkeys
3-water 4-farmers

**2)Listen and complete.**

1-Pyramids 2-famous
3-Archaeologists 4-carved

**3)Read and complete the dialog.**

1-did 2-visit 3-pyramids

**4)Read the following text and answer questions.**

1-temples 2-heritage

3-At places like Abu Simbel, Luxor and Giza.

4-To learn about things people did in the past.

**5)The Reader:**

1-True 2-True 3-leg 4-Trucks

**6)Choose the correct answer.**

1-eat 2-but 3-will help
4- Fuel

**7)Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1-Lots of people visit Egypt every year.

2-What is the moral of this story?

**8)Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:**

Last week, Sara went to the museum. She went with her mom. She went by bus. She saw a lot of artifacts there. She met a lot of tourists she talked to them. She enjoyed her time there. She was very happy.

## Exam (8)

**1)Listen and circle the correct answer.**

1-hot 2-solar 3-clean 4-renewable

**2)Listen and complete.**

1-cold 2-600 3-volcanoes 4-hot

**3)Read and complete the text with:**

1-atmosphere 2-homes
3-plant

**4)Read the following text and answer questions.**

1-sunset 2-food 3-My mom. 4-Kunafa.

**5)The Reader:**

1-True 2-False 3-roof 4-smart

**6)Choose the correct answer.**

1-was drinking 2-in 3-doing 4-rain

**7)Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1-People always made vases from clay.
2-The sun never shines in the evening.

**8)Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:**

Water pollution is one of the most important problems. People always throw plastic bottles and bags in the river. Sometimes people throw garbage, it produces chemicals. We should work hard to keep our rivers clean to drink clear water.